

FIRST LESSONS IN AMERICAN HISTORY

• REVISED EDITION •

LAWTON B. EVANS



LIBRARY
OFFICE OF EDUCATION



LT

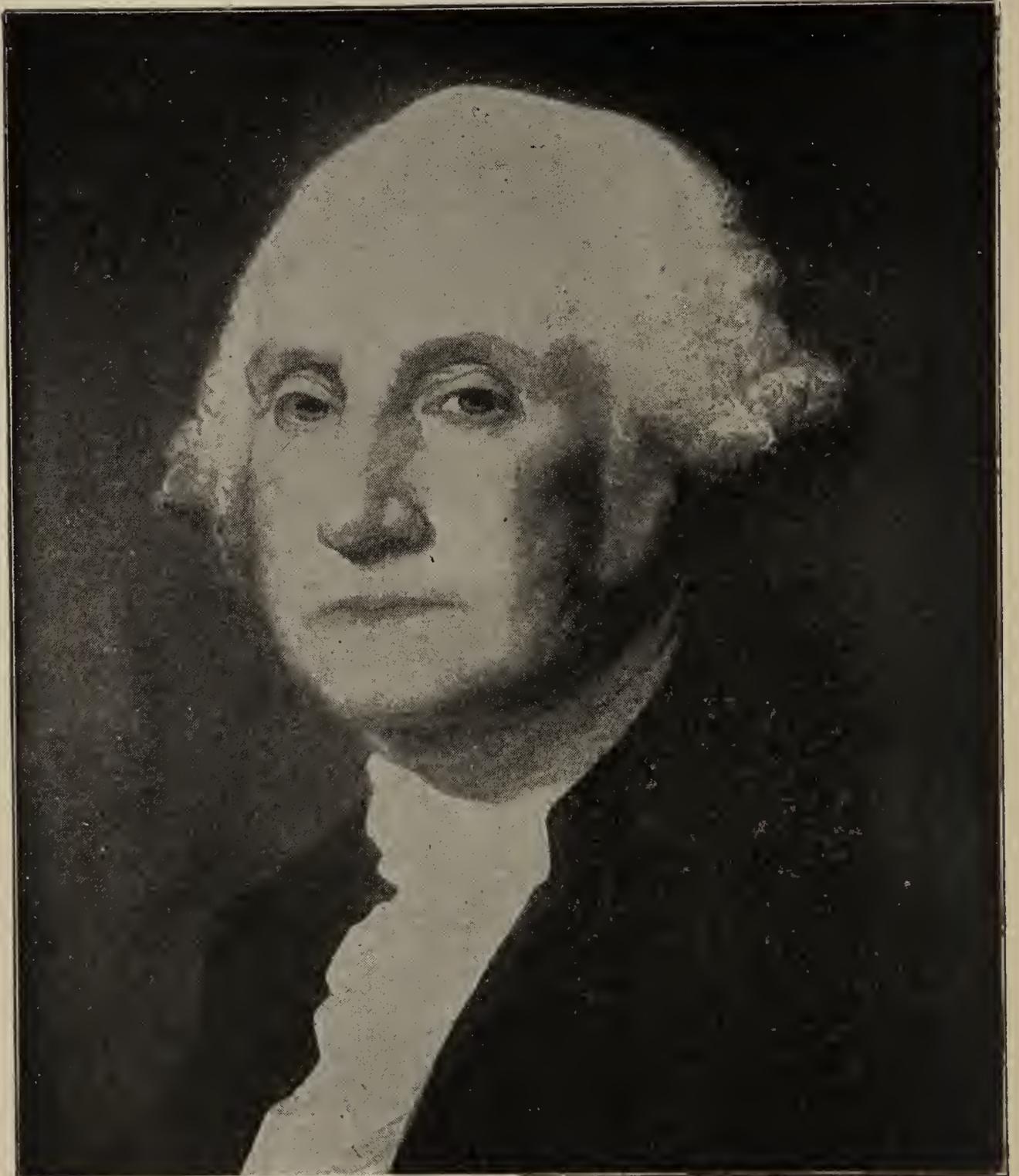
E178

.1

GPO 6-1132

E93

1931



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

GEORGE WASHINGTON

FIRST LESSONS IN AMERICAN HISTORY

REVISED EDITION

BY

LAWTON B. EVANS

AUTHOR OF "THE ESSENTIAL FACTS OF AMERICAN HISTORY,"
"OUR OLD WORLD BEGINNINGS," ETC., ETC.

WITHDRAWN FROM
LIBRARY
DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION, AND WELFARE

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

CHICAGO

NEW YORK

BOSTON

1931

LT
E178
.1
E93
1931

COPYRIGHT, 1910,
BY LAWTON B. EVANS
COPYRIGHT, 1918, 1922, 1929,
BY BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

17395441

INTRODUCTION

The author of this book has endeavored to meet the demand for a simple history of America, suitable for children of ten to twelve years of age, many of whom study no other text on the subject. In order to present a book of the most value the narrative treats of men whose influence has been controlling in the destiny of the nation, but does not make of their lives a series of hero stories. The facts of their lives and incidents of their careers are presented in sufficient fullness to reveal their personal traits and aid a pupil to understand their contributions to the current of events. The facts that are presented in the text are those which appear most important for a child to know. It is sincerely hoped that the style of the narrative is simple enough for pupils of the fourth or fifth grade to read with ease and attractive enough for them to read with pleasure.

LAWTON B. EVANS

Augusta, Georgia,
February, 1922.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

DISCOVERERS AND EXPLORERS

	PAGE
1. Christopher Columbus	1
2. Isabella Agrees to Help Columbus	5
3. The First Voyage of Discovery	8
4. The Return to Spain	12
5. Last Voyage of Columbus	16
6. John Cabot—Americus Vespuccius	18
7. Balboa—Magellan	20
8. Ponce de Leon Names and Explores Florida	23
9. The Adventures of Cortez and Narvaez	26
10. De Soto Discovers the Mississippi River	30
11. Coronado Searches for the Seven Cities	35
12. The French Explore and Settle Canada	37

CHAPTER II

THE ENGLISH COLONIES

	PAGE
1. Sir Walter Raleigh and the Lost Colony	41
2. The Settlement of Jamestown	45
3. Pocahontas, the Indian Princess	48
4. Progress of Jamestown	52
5. Nathaniel Bacon and His Rebellion	56
6. The Settlement of Plymouth	59
7. Other Colonies in New England	63
8. Exiles from the New England Colonies	68
9. John Eliot, the Apostle to the Indians	72
10. King Philip's War	75
11. The Dutch Come to the New World	78
12. New Amsterdam Becomes New York	82
13. Lord Baltimore and the Colony of Maryland	86
14. William Penn and the Colony of Pennsylvania	89
15. Penn's Treaty with the Delawares	92

16. The Carolina Colonies.....	95
17. James Oglethorpe and the Colony of Georgia.....	98
18. The Spanish Invasion of Georgia.....	101
19. The Original Thirteen Colonies.....	103

CHAPTER III HOW THE FRENCH LOST AMERICA

	PAGE
1. Marquette Explores the Mississippi.....	109
2. The French Claim Louisiana.....	114
3. The Young George Washington.....	119
4. Braddock's Defeat.....	123
5. The Capture of Quebec.....	126
6. Life in the Colonies.....	129
7. Customs in the Colonies.....	132
8. Discomforts in Colonial Days.....	135
9. Servants and Slaves.....	138

CHAPTER IV HEROES OF THE REVOLUTION

	PAGE
1. Patrick Henry.....	143
2. Samuel Adams.....	147
3. The Minutemen at Lexington.....	150
4. General George Washington.....	154
5. Attack on Charleston—Declaration of Independence.....	157
6. Trials and Triumphs of the Patriots.....	161
7. Marion and Sumter.....	166
8. The End of the War.....	170
9. Benjamin Franklin.....	174
10. Daniel Boone Moves into Kentucky.....	178
11. George Rogers Clark.....	182
12. Robertson and Sevier.....	185

CHAPTER V THE UNITED STATES

	PAGE
1. Organizing the Government.....	190
2. Eli Whitney Invents the Cotton Gin.....	194
3. Thomas Jefferson.....	198

CONTENTS

vii

4. Stephen Decatur Punishes the Pirates.....	202
5. Purchasing and Exploring Louisiana.....	205
6. Robert Fulton Perfects the Steamboat.....	209
7. The War of 1812.....	213
8. Andrew Jackson and the Battle of New Orleans.....	218
9. Progress and Improvements.....	223
10. Henry Clay.....	228
11. Daniel Webster.....	232
12. John C. Calhoun.....	236
13. Morse Invents the Electric Telegraph.....	239
14. Texas Becomes a Part of the United States.....	243
15. We Acquire the Pacific Slope.....	247
16. The Progress of the Country.....	251

CHAPTER VI HEROES OF THE CIVIL WAR

	PAGE
1. Abraham Lincoln.....	257
2. Jefferson Davis.....	263
3. Stonewall Jackson.....	267
4. Robert E. Lee.....	272
5. Ulysses S. Grant.....	277
6. The End of the War.....	281

CHAPTER VII A REUNITED PEOPLE

	PAGE
1. After the War.....	286
2. Progress of the Country.....	290
3. The War with Spain.....	295
4. Political Events.....	300

CHAPTER VIII THE WORLD WAR

	PAGE
1. How the War Began.....	307
2. Progress of the War.....	311
3. The United States Enters the War.....	316
4. The End of the War.....	320

CHAPTER IX
AFTER THE WORLD WAR

1. Measures for Permanent Peace	323
2. Progress in Aviation	327
3. Recent Events.....	332

SUGGESTIONS TO THE TEACHER

THE child's interest in history depends upon the vividness of his conception of the men and events of the past. He is concerned largely with concrete and dramatic incidents and is careless of the abstractions of history. The author readily recalls the delight with which as a boy he listened to the stories of "the war" told by a teacher who had been a soldier, and what a relief it was to escape the dull recital of the textbook. That in the past which a child is led to see is history; all else is weariness and vexation.

The text therefore should be amplified by the teacher with abundant illustration, such as stories, descriptions, pictures, and objects gathered from all available sources in order to attract the attention, stimulate the imagination, and fix the memory. For this purpose the teacher should prepare for the teaching of each lesson. A number of supplementary books are easily available, covering in detail nearly every phase of American history. These may be read to or by the pupils or used by the teacher as a basis for story work.

The author suggests that the lesson for the day be read by the pupils in class, the meaning of the text explained if necessary, the essential points be brought out in a discussion, and the pupils induced to make a free and full expression of their opinions on all subjects pertinent to the lesson. In this way the real spirit and essence of the topic may be concentrated around some one definite statement that represents the central idea of the lesson. From this general discussion and preparation the teacher advances to a study of the lesson by definite questions in order to test the knowledge of

each pupil. In conjunction with this the pupils should be asked to summarize the lesson, to choose the one important fact, tell the most interesting fact, etc., in order to vary the kind of questions and stimulate both thought and expression.

A high degree of interest may be developed in the study of history by such recreations as impersonations, in which one pupil assumes a character and describes himself until the others guess his name; by the game of twenty questions, in which one pupil thinks of some historical object and the others seek by questions to discover the object thought of; and by any other recreation that partakes of the nature of a game.

Children take special interest in the conditions of life among the Indians, early settlers, and pioneers, and in the ways of living in colonial times. Any dramatization, representation, stories, or pictures of early conditions, especially those showing the struggles of the settlers against the Indians and against the hardships of the frontier, are valuable as illustrating the trials endured by the founders of the nation.

The celebration of certain anniversaries gives an opportunity to emphasize the character and services of great men and to consider anew historical events that are worthy of constant recognition. Upon such occasions the use of patriotic poems, songs, and recitations, the decoration of the walls with appropriate pictures, and short talks on the subject of the anniversary will make the occasion memorable.

History has a close relation to geography. The teacher should ever bear in mind that the child has a clearer conception of an occurrence if the location is shown on a map or if a drawing is made on the board for the purpose. History also has its relation to literature, especially to poetry, and the child gets a more delightful insight into the romantic side of history by the use of the noble poems of the language that bear upon the topics under discussion.

If teachers remember that the text is not to be memorized, that the questions at the end of the chapters are not to be too much depended upon, that the pupils are not to be confused with needless details of dates and numbers, and that the successful teaching of this text will depend largely upon the interest and care in preparing and presenting the lessons, the author feels confident the pupils will derive great benefit and inspiration from the study of these pages.

FIRST LESSONS IN AMERICAN HISTORY

CHAPTER I DISCOVERERS AND EXPLORERS

1. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

NEARLY five hundred years ago there lived in Genoa, Italy, a poor man who made his living by carding wool for the cloth-makers of the town. His eldest son, whom we know as Christopher Columbus, was born in Genoa about the year 1446. The boy loved the sea,



HE SAT ON THE DOCKS AND
WATCHED THE SHIPS

and often sat on the docks and watched the ships come in and go out, and heard the sailors tell about their wonderful adventures.

When fourteen years of age the boy became a sailor. He sailed on all the seas that were known at the time, visited the great ports of the world, and learned all about the care and management of ships. His life was full of danger and hardship, for there were pirates to be fought and the terrors of the sea to be faced. He was a student as well, and learned all about the sea, the mariner's compass, and distant countries which travelers could reach only by going overland.

Among these countries were India and China, far to the east. Travelers had said that in them were palaces paved with gold, and gardens laden with spices and perfumes. To trade with merchants coming from those lands, European merchants had to travel in caravans weary miles over deserts where they were tortured by thirst, and across mountains infested with robbers. The journey was long, expensive, and dangerous. Therefore, the merchants greatly desired a seaway to India and China.



THE TERROR OF THE SEA

The known world at that time consisted of Europe and parts of Asia and Africa. All the great country in which we live was quite unknown. There were no great steamships then as there are now. The sailing vessels were small, and sailors were afraid to go far from land. They had heard terrible tales of sea serpents that lived in the ocean, and ships that were lost in the sea of darkness.

Most people at that time thought the world was flat. A few wise men, however, believed it was round. Columbus had come to that belief, and said that the way to prove it was to sail around the world. Besides settling this great question, he might gain riches and honor for himself and for the merchants if he could discover a short way to India and the East.

Everybody made sport of this idea. It seemed an absurd notion that the world could be round, and that a ship could sail down the side of the sea. What was to keep the ocean from spilling into space, and the ship itself from falling off the earth, and how could people live with their heads downward, and besides, how could a ship ever sail up again? Then, too, there were the terrible monsters of the deep, and boiling waves and fierce storms awaiting any one who sailed far into those dreaded seas. If the merchants wanted a seaway to India let them find one by sailing around the south of Africa, but to talk about sailing around the world was foolish.



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

Columbus insisted that the world was round, and that he could reach the East by sailing west, if only he could get ships and sailors. He was declared a dreamer. Columbus made sport of But firm in his belief he went from place to place, spending all his money and using all his powers of persuasion in trying to induce kings and wise men to help him make a voyage around the world. Nobody would listen to him long. At length he became very poor, and even the children made fun of him, saying: "There goes the crazy stranger with the threadbare coat."

2. ISABELLA AGREES TO HELP COLUMBUS

IN his wanderings Columbus went to King John II of Portugal, and explained to him his plans and purposes. The king listened to him with interest and was much impressed by his arguments. He looked at the maps and charts of Columbus, and called a council of his wise men to consider what Columbus had said. But the wise men declared the plan a foolish one and advised the king not to help Columbus.

One of them, however, more crafty than the others, advised the king to secretly send a ship westward to see if Columbus was right, and if the world really was round. The king consented to this and the ship was dispatched. But the sailors went only a short distance and returning to the king reported that there was no land to be found. Columbus heard of this treachery, and indignantly left Portugal.

At last Columbus came to the court of Spain and presented himself to Ferdinand and Isabella, the king and queen of that country. They examined his maps and charts and listened to his arguments that the world was round. He asked them for ships and men, that he might undertake a voyage around the world, and thereby reach India by sailing west.

Ferdinand was opposed to the project. He had spent much money in war, and did not care to waste any more in so foolish an enterprise as that proposed by Columbus. Besides, Columbus asked for too great a share of the profits of the voyage—if

King John
of Portugal

Ferdinand
opposes
Columbus

indeed there were to be any. Columbus, disappointed again, sadly departed from the court.

Taking his little son he set out on foot, determined to leave Spain and seek his fortune elsewhere. As he journeyed he came to a monastery, where he asked the monks for bread and water for his boy. Columbus told one of the monks who he was, and discussed with him his great plans for sailing around the world. The monk believed it could be done, and called in several friends to listen to Columbus.



THE QUEEN HAD BEEN MUCH INTERESTED

Messengers were sent by the monk to the queen begging her not to let so great an opportunity pass. If Columbus should be right, Spain would receive great honors from the venture, and the cost of the voyage would be amply repaid. Isabella agreed

Messengers
sent to the
queen

to another interview and sent Columbus money to purchase clothes with which to appear at court.

When Columbus came again before the king and queen, they asked him what he demanded. He told them he wished to be made admiral of the ocean and viceroy of any strange lands he might discover, and receive a large share of the profits to be made by trade and conquest. "You ask too much," said the king. "I will take no less," replied Columbus, and again left the court and mounting his mule rode out of the city.

The queen, however, had been much interested. After Columbus had left the court and was preparing to go to France, she decided there was some reason in *Isabella* his plans, and great glory for Spain if he suc- *is convinced* ceeded. She said to Ferdinand: "I will undertake this thing, and will pledge my jewels, if necessary, to raise the money." A courier was sent in haste to Columbus. He was overtaken about six miles from the city. He quickly returned and made an agreement with the sovereigns.

Columbus was now fifty-six years of age. He was tall, of fair complexion and fine figure. His eyes were blue and his hair was turning gray. When it was known that the good queen had agreed to help him, everybody stopped making sport of him, and began to talk of the strange voyage he was about to make.

3. THE FIRST VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY

IT was hard to get seamen for the voyage. They were afraid of the unknown seas. The Spanish government forced sailors to embark, and even released some criminals from prison and made them enlist for the voyage.

Early one morning in midsummer three vessels with ninety persons on board sailed out of the harbor of Palos, Spain. The vessels were the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*. Columbus was on the *Santa Maria*, the largest of the three. As they set sail the people on the docks wept and wailed, thinking they should never see their friends and relatives again. The little

Columbus
sails, August
3, 1492



THE SHIPS OF COLUMBUS

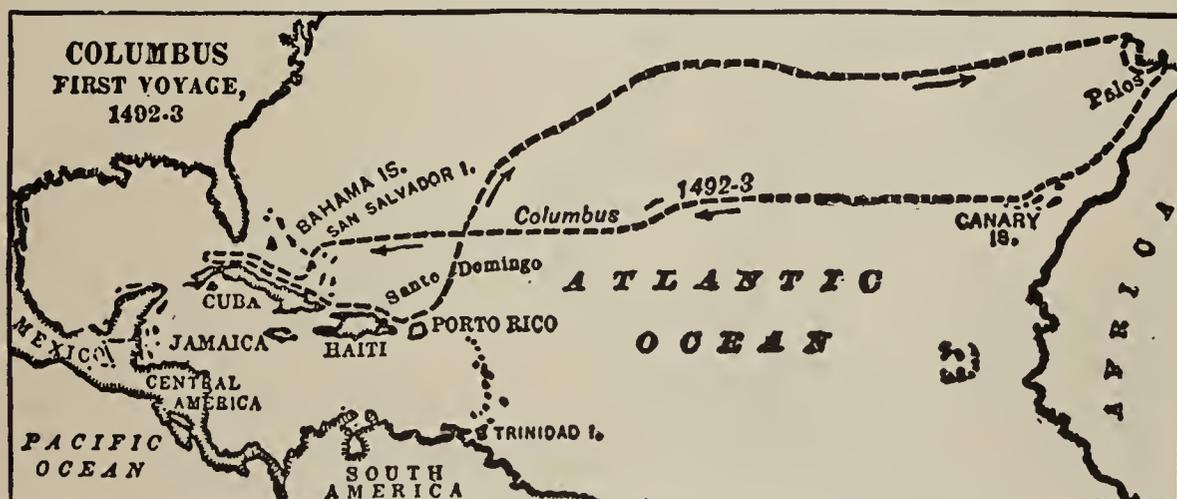
fleet was supposed to be starting on its way to reach the rich countries of India and China by sailing westward across the Atlantic Ocean. Even Columbus himself did not know how far it was around the world, and supposed India and China to be only a few thousand miles away.

Hardly had the little fleet started when the rudder of the *Pinta* broke, which made it necessary for the ship to steer for the Canary Islands. A few weeks were spent in repairs and the voyage was continued. The weather was beautiful. No storms arose to distress or separate the little fleet. Day after day they sailed westward, around them the boundless water, overhead the blue sky, and nowhere any sign of the dreadful monsters they had feared so much.

As they sailed onward the men grew more and more afraid. They did not know what was ahead of them. They recalled the stories of ships swallowed up in the sea, of dreadful storms, and of great sea serpents. The wind blew steadily from behind, and the men had fears of never getting back home.

The sailors
become
alarmed

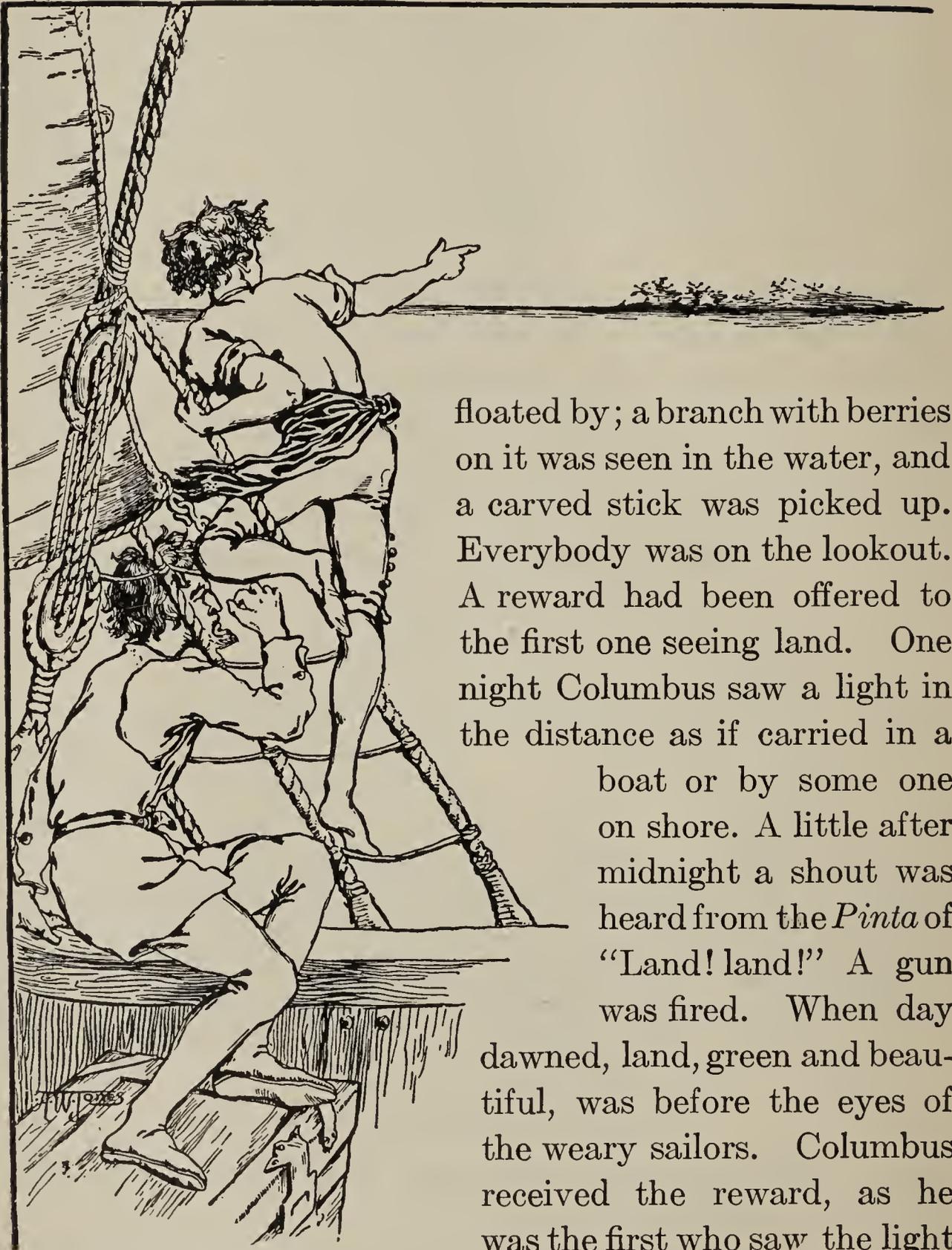
The needle of the compass no longer pointed exactly to the North Star, but a little to the northwest. The fears



THE FIRST VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS

of the sailors increased daily, and they were loud in their demands to turn back.

Columbus, however, held on his course. At length signs of land appeared. Birds flew over the ship and seaweed



THE DISCOVERY OF LAND

floated by; a branch with berries on it was seen in the water, and a carved stick was picked up. Everybody was on the lookout. A reward had been offered to the first one seeing land. One night Columbus saw a light in the distance as if carried in a boat or by some one on shore. A little after midnight a shout was heard from the *Pinta* of "Land! land!" A gun was fired. When day dawned, land, green and beautiful, was before the eyes of the weary sailors. Columbus received the reward, as he was the first who saw the light on the shore.

A little after daybreak, Columbus, dressed in a rich scarlet cloak and bearing the royal banner of Spain, went in a small boat to the shore. He bowed down and kissed the ground and wept tears of joy. He drew his sword, unfurled the flag, and took possession of the land in the name of his sovereigns. His timid sailors crowded around him, kissed his hands, and begged forgiveness for their lack of confidence in their leader.

Land discovered, October 12, 1492

Columbus had landed on a small island in the group of the Bahamas. He named it San Salvador.

4. THE RETURN TO SPAIN

WHEN Columbus landed he saw a number of strange, half-naked, red-skinned people coming down to the shore.

The Indians They stared in wonder at him and his men, and then in terror fled to the woods. They had never seen sailing vessels or white men before. They thought the ships were great white birds, and that the strange men had come from the skies. Columbus, supposing that he had reached some part of India, named the natives Indians, and they are so called to the present day.

Afterwards it became known that the Indians were in all parts of the new world, living in small villages, widely scattered, their houses, called wigwams, being made **The life of the Indians** generally of skins of animals, or bark of trees. Their chief occupation was hunting and fishing, and cultivating small patches of corn and vegetables. They had no schools or churches or towns such as we have. They lived a wandering life, finding their food in the forest or in the stream, and caring for little else than their own diversion and comfort.

The Indians were of a reddish-brown or copper color. The men generally were tall, straight, and muscular, accustomed to hardship and capable of great endurance. **Their appearance** Their eyes were small and black; their cheek bones high; their hair was coarse, black, and straight. The men cut their hair short leaving a tuft on the top of their head known as the "scalp lock." This was for the enemy to seize if he could, when he attempted to pull off the scalp.

The Indians wore but little clothing especially in warm weather. In winter they wore soft deerskin, often painted in gaudy colors or braided with quills. To protect their feet on long marches they wore moccasins, made of soft but strong skins. Those moccasins were said to be the most comfortable covering for the feet ever made.

The men were not inclined to do hard work. Their part was to hunt and fish, make arrowheads and spear points, and engage in warfare. The women made the deer-skin clothes, planted the corn and tobacco, put up and took down the tents, made the fires and cooked the food. The babies were called papooses and were carried in packs on the backs of their mothers.

The Indians had no idea of civilized life. They were generally bloodthirsty and cruel in war, often treacherous in the observance of their treaties, and were always a dangerous and uncertain neighbor to the white men who came over to settle among them. They loved warfare more than they loved anything else, and nothing delighted them more than to put on their war paint, dance the war dance, and steal silently through the deep woods in search of the wigwams of the enemy or the cabins of the white settlers. In some cases, however, there were friendly Indians who gave the white settlers no trouble, and who helped them in the establishment of their little colonies.

Habits and
customs of
the Indians

So much for the red-skinned natives whom the Spaniards saw when they landed on the shores of the new world.

Columbus remained a few days on the island he had discovered and then sailed away, still seeking the great cities of India and China. He visited the islands of Cuba and Haiti, but nowhere found any sign of the treasure cities.

After nearly three months Columbus sailed back to Spain. He took ten Indians with him, as well as many curious things he had found on his voyage. Great was the rejoicing of the people when it was known that Columbus had returned. The stores were closed, the bells in the churches were rung, and the people who before had wept for fear now cried for joy.

The king and queen sent for him to give them an account of his adventures. He was no longer the madman, but was now a hero. A great procession was formed. In front were the Indians; then came persons bearing the parrots, plants, and curiosities Columbus had brought home with him. Columbus himself rode a fine horse and was surrounded by the nobles of Spain.

The king and queen sat under a great canopy. When Columbus approached, they rose and greeted him with every mark of regard and admiration. He told them the long story of his discoveries, after which the royal pair fell on their knees and thanked God for the safe return of the great voyager, and for the new lands which he had discovered.

There was no trouble in getting sailors and adventurers for a second voyage. In a few months seventeen vessels had been made ready. Horses, seed, farm tools, and other

necessities for a colony were collected. About fifteen hundred persons went on this voyage. Some of them hoped to find gold and pearls in the new land; others were bent on adventure; only a few were expecting hardship and work. On this second voyage Columbus founded a colony on the island of Haiti. He spent three years wandering about the islands of the West Indies. He then returned to Spain. Two years passed by, and he made a third voyage, going as far south as the island of Trinidad and the mainland of South America.

A story is told that one day Columbus was at dinner with a number of distinguished people, and they all agreed that it was a wonderful thing for him to think about sailing across the ocean. Columbus said nothing, but took up an egg and asked them to stand it on end. Everybody tried, but nobody succeeded. When it came back to Columbus he cracked the shell and stood the egg up without difficulty. "Oh, anybody could do that, if he only thought of it!" the company exclaimed. "Yes, but I thought of it," said Columbus.

5. LAST VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS

THE fortunes of Columbus now began to change. The colonists on the island of Haiti fell ill with malaria; they could find no gold and food was scarce. They complained bitterly of their condition, and began to abuse Columbus as the cause of all their misfortunes. As a fact, they had only themselves to blame. Instead of working as they should, they spent their time in hunting for treasure and mistreating the Indians. The simple-minded savages often begged the Spaniards to return to heaven on their great white birds.

The king and queen of Spain sent an officer to inquire into the way Columbus had treated the colonists. This officer unjustly put Columbus in chains and sent him back to Spain. Columbus was in the greatest distress at this treatment. He said: "I shall wear these chains until the king and queen order them to be taken off, and I will keep them as relics and memorials of my service." Afterwards he said to his son: "Let the chains be buried with me." When he arrived in Spain the people were indignant at the way in which he had been treated. The queen sent for him, ordered his chains removed, and wept when he told her the story of his misfortunes.

After a year or more had passed Columbus made a fourth voyage to the new world. When his vessels reached Haiti a terrific storm arose that came near destroying his little fleet. He did not land, but sailed westward, reaching the coast of Central America some-

where on the Isthmus of Panama. The rain and the heat made his sufferings very great. The food became so bad that the men ate their bread in the dark so that they could not see its condition.

After a year of wandering and disappointment, Columbus decided to go back to Spain. He still believed that he had reached the coast of India, and could not understand why he did not find the rich cities of which the merchants had told him.

When he reached Spain, Queen Isabella was on her death-bed. When she died Columbus lost his best friend. Old, sick, and poor, he had to live on charity. Often he was without money to buy bread or pay for a place to sleep. At last, when about seventy years of age he died, and was buried in the town of Valladolid, Spain. He never knew that he had discovered a new world.

6. JOHN CABOT—AMERICUS VESPUCCIUS

THERE was great excitement in Europe over the voyages of Columbus, and the short way he was supposed to have found to China and Japan. The king of England gave permission to John Cabot, an Italian sailor, who with his three sons was living in England at that time, to sail westward and discover whatever he could. This was before Columbus had made his fourth voyage.

Cabot sailed across the ocean and landed on the coast of North America, somewhere near Newfoundland or Labrador.

Voyages of
John Cabot,
1497-1498

When he landed he took possession of the country in the name of the king of England.

When he went back to England and told that he had found land to the west, everybody paid him and his sons great honor, and crowds followed them whenever they appeared on the streets.

The next year John Cabot made another voyage to the coast of North America and wandered as far south as Cape Hatteras, and probably farther. Again Cabot told wonderful stories of icebergs and polar bears that he had seen on the northern coasts, and of the green forests and beautiful flowers and fruits of the southern shores. He had found no gold and had not discovered a way to India. He had landed on the mainland of North America, however. These voyages gave John Cabot the right to be called the discoverer of the mainland of North America, and gave England the right to claim the new world as one of her possessions.

Among those who made voyages to the new world was Americus Vespuccius, an Italian by birth, but living in

Spain at the time. On one of his voyages he explored the coast of Brazil. When he returned to Europe he wrote an account of the "New World," as he called it. His account created a great sensation. It was translated into several languages, and Americus was as much talked about as ever Columbus had been. The belief now gained ground that the newly discovered shores were not those of Asia at all, but in fact belonged to a new continent which, up to this time, had been unknown to the people of the world.

Americus
Vespucius,
1501-1504

A German professor soon after published a book on geography. He divided the world into four parts, Europe, Asia, Africa, and the part that Americus had written about. He said: "I see no reason why this fourth part should not take its name from its discoverer and be called America." From this suggestion all the new world came to be called America.

7. BALBOA—MAGELLAN

FIFTEEN or twenty years had passed since Columbus had discovered America. Vessels were constantly plying across the ocean, bringing settlers and adventurers to the islands of the West Indies. Settlements were made on the Isthmus of Darien, but the great heart of the continent was unknown and untouched.



BALBOA DISCOVERS THE PACIFIC OCEAN AND TAKES POSSESSION IN THE NAME
OF THE KING OF SPAIN

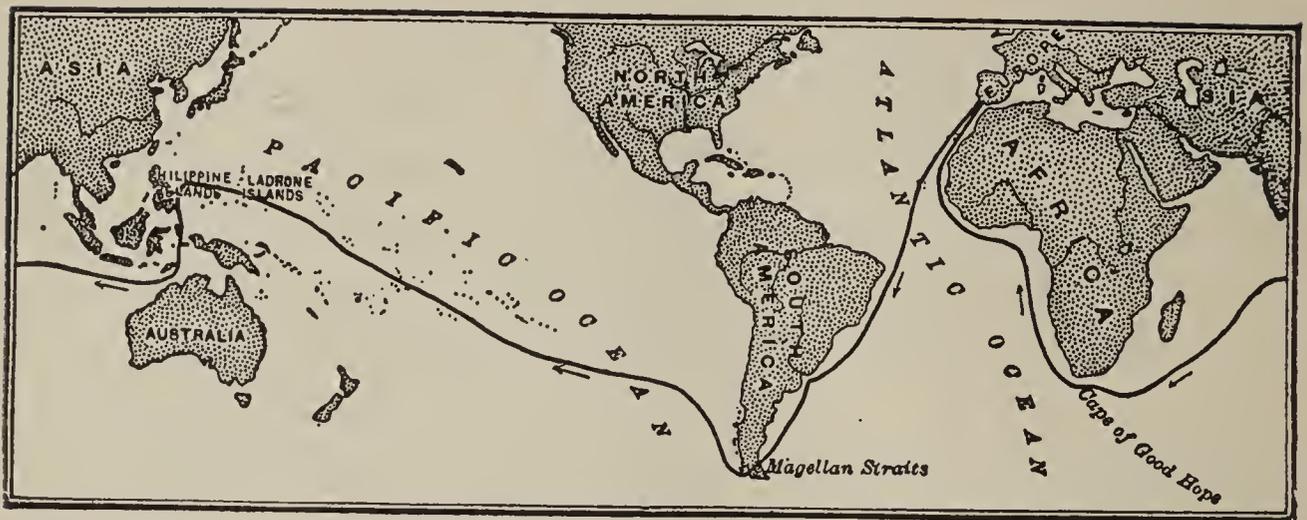
The Spaniards were especially eager for the treasures which the new world was supposed to contain. Every ship brought adventurers who hoped to better their fortunes by finding gold and silver in the mountains and streams, or else to find diversion in fighting the savages.

Among these adventurers was Balboa. He was at one time a wealthy landowner in Haiti. Becoming bankrupt, he tried to escape his creditors by concealing himself in a cask in the hold of an outgoing vessel. When discovered, the captain threatened to land him on a desert island, but Balboa begged to be allowed to remain on board. The vessel was wrecked on the coast of the Isthmus of Darien. After a few years Balboa had become the leader of the colony on the isthmus.

Hearing from the Indians that gold could be found beyond the mountains, he led a party of men across the isthmus. To his surprise and delight there appeared the waters of a great sea. Balboa waded into the surf, displayed his flag, and took possession of the water, and all lands it touched, in the name of the king of Spain. In this way did Balboa discover the waters of the Pacific Ocean. He did not know it was an ocean, but thought it was a great sea, and so he called it "The South Sea."

Another bold navigator named Magellan proposed to sail around South America and around the world. He sailed from Spain with five ships bearing nearly three hundred men. He passed through the straits bearing his name, and went as far as the Philippine Islands. He named the ocean on which he sailed the Pacific, which means "peaceful."

The voyage across the ocean was most distressing. The water became so foul the sailors could not drink it, the food gave out, and the sun was so hot that it blistered the decks.



THE VOYAGE OF MAGELLAN AROUND THE WORLD

Many of the sailors died, but Magellan bravely held on his course.

At the Philippine Islands Magellan was killed in a fight with the natives. His few remaining sailors continued their voyage. Only one of his vessels and eighteen of his crew succeeded in completing the first voyage around the world.

8. PONCE DE LEON NAMES AND EXPLORES FLORIDA

AMONG those who were with Columbus on his second voyage was Ponce de Leon, a brave Spanish soldier, thirty-two years of age. Afterwards he lived for twenty years in the West Indies, and was so fine a soldier that he was made governor of Porto Rico. He was now growing old and he dreaded age and white hairs.

He spoke of his coming age to an Indian. The savage replied: "Across the waters is a beautiful island full of flowers, fruit, and game. Somewhere in that land is a fountain of magic water. If one bathes in it he will never lose his strength, his hair will never grow white, and his limbs will never grow weary."

DeLeon was charmed with the story of the wily savage, who was merely trying to get rid of him and his men. He obtained permission from the king of Spain to explore and settle this island. He sailed with three vessels full of hardy adventurers, bent on finding the wonderful fountain and anything else the island might contain. In a few days they reached a beautiful verdant coast. It was Easter Sunday, or *Pascua Florida*, when land was first seen. In honor of the day DeLeon named the country Florida.

Then began the search for the wonderful fountain. The soldiers plunged deep into the forests; on all sides were beautiful flowers, abundant fruit, and plenty of game. The Indians fled at the approach of the strange white faces. DeLeon and his followers drank at every spring, and bathed in every stream,

Florida
discovered
and named,
1513

Search for
the fountain
of youth

brook, river, and creek. They wandered up and down the coast trying the waters in all places.

In spite of all his foolish efforts De Leon's hair remained as white, his skin as wrinkled, and his limbs as weary as ever. He had tried hundreds of places in vain. At last his discontented followers exclaimed, "There is no such fountain here; we must return to Porto Rico."



PONCE DE LEON SEARCHES FOR THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH

Accordingly De Leon set sail from the land he had explored, just as white-haired and old and foolish as when he came. He went to Spain, however and reported to the king the wonders of this new land, which he had named Florida.

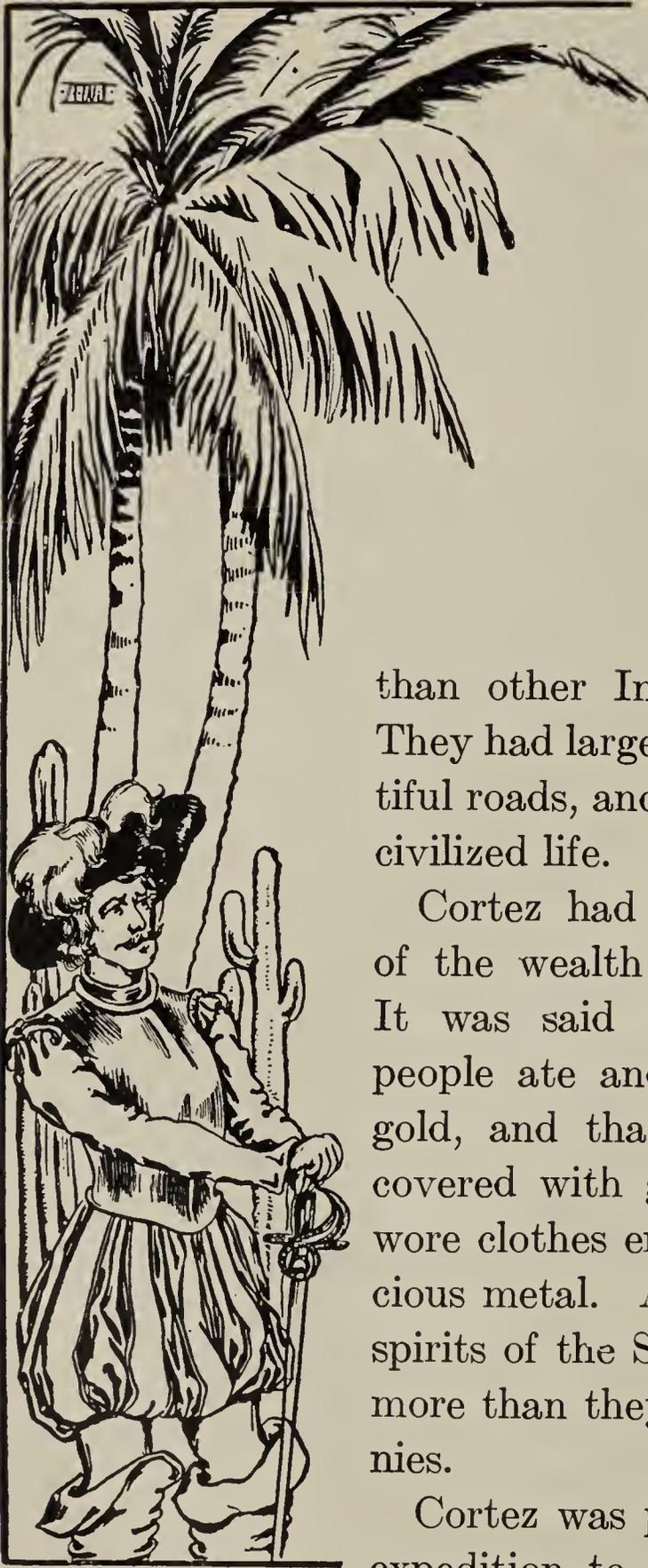
The king granted him permission to found a colony in this new country.

Eight years passed by and Ponce de Leon again set out for Florida. He had given up his search for the fountain of youth, and was now resolved on establishing a colony, and a powerful government of which he should be the head. He took with him all the materials for building a town, provisions to last for many months, and seed for planting the fields and gardens. He still believed he had discovered an island, and did not know he had explored a part of the mainland of North America.

For nearly a year De Leon and his men wandered up and down the coast, seeking for a place to build a town, but too adventurous and restless ever to found one.

The Indians, however, remembered certain cruelties of other Spaniards who had visited their shores, and were no longer friendly to De Leon and his men. They had long since overcome their fear of them and at length resolved to attack them and drive them away. One day a large body of savages attacked the camp of the Spaniards, and in the fight that followed a poisoned arrow wounded the valiant old De Leon.

His followers put him on board a ship and carried him to Cuba where he died. He had not found a fountain of youth, for there is no such fountain anywhere, but he had found and explored the beautiful land which to this day is called Florida.



MEXICO EXCITES SPANISH
ADVENTURERS

ABOUT the time that De Leon was trying to found a colony in Florida and Magellan was on his voyage around the world, a brave Spanish soldier named Cortez had undertaken to conquer Mexico.

Mexico was inhabited by the Aztec Indians who were much farther advanced in civilization than other Indian tribes of America. They had large cities, storehouses, beautiful roads, and many of the comforts of civilized life.

Cortez had heard wonderful stories of the wealth of the king of Mexico. It was said that even the common people ate and drank from vessels of gold, and that the king's palace was covered with gold, and his attendants wore clothes embroidered with the precious metal. All these stories fired the spirits of the Spaniards who loved gold more than they desired to found colonies.

Cortez was placed at the head of an expedition to conquer Mexico. When Montezuma, the king of Mexico, heard that Cortez had landed at Vera Cruz

he sent runners bearing presents of gold, jewels, and rich cloths, and begging him to spare the country from invasion. But the gifts inflamed the greed of the Spaniards more than ever, and forthwith they marched over the smooth roads and came to the city of Mexico, where Montezuma awaited them with many misgivings and fear.

Cortez
invades
Mexico,
1519-1521

Cortez rode into the city attended by his captains and men. Montezuma met him seated in a chair under a canopy of rare and beautiful feathers. He gave Cortez quantities of food and rich gifts for his men, and offered him the freedom of the city. The Spaniards numbered only two hundred, but they quite terrorized the Indians by their guns and armor, and went everywhere unmolested by the savages, who numbered thousands.

For several weeks Cortez and his men stayed in Mexico, gathering much plunder of gold and jewels, and treating the natives with very little consideration. One day a Spanish captain seeing a human sacrifice in one of the temples grew so indignant that he ordered his men to fire at the Indians, thereby killing several priests. The Mexicans had already grown tired of their guests and the death of their priests was enough to rouse the natives to attack the Spaniards.

The Spaniards
in the city of
Mexico

Cortez called his men together and hastily they prepared to leave. But as they departed the Mexicans began a merciless attack and before the Spaniards could get safely away many were killed in the fierce and savage onslaught of the natives who were already outraged at the greed and plunder and arrogance of their unwelcome visitors.

A year later Cortez returned with a large army gathered in Spain and Cuba. Montezuma was dead and Guatemazin was now king of Mexico. The siege of the city lasted three months, in which the cruel invaders slew many thousands of the Indians. At last the proud city gave way to its besiegers and the conquest of Mexico was complete. Mexico passed into the hands of its Spanish conquerors.

The story of the wealth of Mexico created great excitement in Spain. When the Spanish adventurers heard of the fine houses, fine roads, beautiful temples, and treasure houses full of gold that the Mexican Indians had, they thought there must be other countries as beautiful and other cities as rich as those Cortez had conquered. Narvaez was among those who resolved to try their fortune in search of gold and conquest.

The king of Spain gave him permission to explore and to colonize a large territory. With six hundred men and a large supply of provisions he set sail from Spain. Narvaez explores Florida, 1528 The party came to the coast of Florida and began their march inland. They wandered on and on, seeking for gold and the rich cities. They found only the miserable huts of Indians.

Food became scarce and starvation stared them in the face. A messenger was sent to the coast to find their ships, but he came back to report that the ships were nowhere to be seen. The party turned south and at last came back to the coast of Florida. Here they slew their horses and devoured them. Boats they must have, and so

they cut down trees from the forest and made ship timbers fashioned with tools made from the iron of their stirrups, swords, and guns. They turned their muskets into nails. They used the manes and tails of the dead horses to make ropes and cordage. They used their own clothes for sails. Sufferings

At last they embarked in their weak and leaky boats, and for a month were beaten about in the Gulf of Mexico. They drifted past the mouth of the Mississippi, were carried out to sea, and the boat in which Narvaez was, filled with water and went to the bottom with more than fifty men.

The other boats drifted until some of them reached the coast of Texas. Here the half-starved Spaniards were set upon by the Indians and the greater number were killed. A few escaped and later were made slaves by other tribes of Indians. For a number of years they remained with their Indian masters, all dying, however, except three Spaniards and one negro.

At length these four made their escape and found their way to a small Spanish village in Mexico. The inhabitants were astonished to see their gaunt faces and strangely clad forms. One of the four was Cabeza de
Vaca named Cabeza de Vaca. He had been the treasurer of the expedition. He told the Spaniards of the strange adventures which had befallen him and his companions in their long wanderings through the forests of the new world.

10. DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

HERNANDO DE SOTO was a rich and influential Spaniard, who was eager for wealth and for conquest in the new world. It was always so with the Spaniards in those early days.

A fleet was prepared at great expense which landed the Spaniards on the west coast of Florida near the site of the present city of Tampa. Six hundred men formed the party. There were over two hundred horses and a drove of three hundred hogs. There were bloodhounds to hunt down the Indians and chains to bind the captives. The men were provided with firearms, cannon, and steel armor. It was as cruel a band of warriors bent on gold and plunder as ever wandered through the forests of the new world.

Hardly had the party started on its march when there appeared out of the woods a white man named Juan Ortez, who said he had been a captive among the Indians for ten years, and knew the trails through the forests and the language of the people. He was gladly welcomed to the party and became their guide and interpreter.

De Soto marched northward, terrifying the Indians, robbing the villages of food, and searching for treasure. Months went by and there was no gold. All they found was tangled forests and small villages where unfriendly tribes of savages looked with distrust and fear upon the invaders. Fear alone kept the Indians at peace, and even their few kind deeds were repaid with cruel treatment.

De Soto lands
in Florida,
1539

Wanderings
of De Soto

During one of his fights with the natives, De Soto was astonished to find a white man among the savages, who called out to him in the Spanish language. After the battle the man told him he was one of the followers of Narvaez and that he had been captured by the Indians and condemned to be burned alive. Just before the torch was applied the daughter of the chief begged that he be spared and given to her for a white slave. De Soto rescued him from the Indians and attached him to his party.

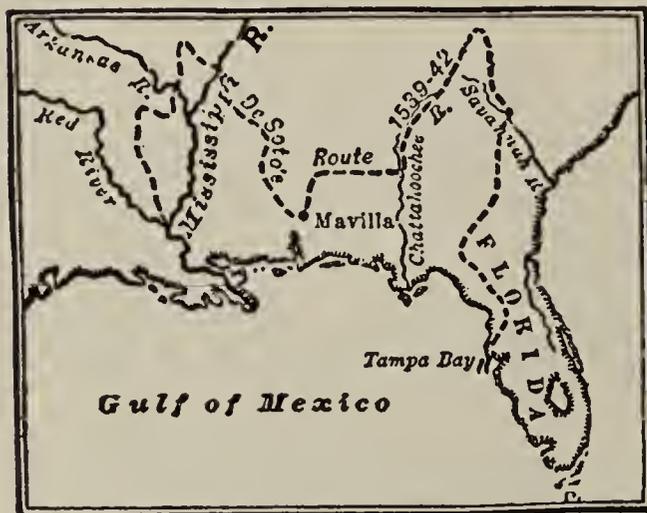


DE SOTO MARCHING THROUGH THE WILDERNESS

De Soto moved northward through the swamps and forests of Florida and Georgia. As was to be expected, their food gave out. The men complained and wanted to turn back, and the Indians were always unfriendly. They lured the

Spaniards onward, however, telling them of rich cities and treasures to be found farther on.

They came at last to the banks of the Savannah River. Here they were met by a beautiful Indian princess. She came out to meet the Spaniards with every expression of good will and friendship. She was carried on a litter, borne by four of her subjects, from which she alighted and made signs of peace and friendship to the Spanish leader. Taking a string of pearls from around her own neck she placed it around the



THE MARCH OF DE SOTO

neck of De Soto and bade him follow her into the village to partake of the rude hospitality of her subjects.

De Soto and his men rested for several days in the village of the Indian princess. But on leaving he repaid her kindness in a cruel way. He plundered

the village of all its valuables and taking captive the princess compelled her to accompany him on the march. For several weeks they plodded along following the Savannah River northward, the princess on foot or being carried on a litter and attended by her maids. One day she suddenly sprang from her couch, ran swiftly through the forest, and disappeared with her maids. The Spaniards never heard of her again.

The party now marched westward and then southward

until they came to the town of Mavilla, where Mobile; Alabama, now stands. The chief met De Soto with a great show of friendship, and begged him to enter his village. No sooner, however, were the Spaniards inside than a shower of arrows fell upon them with deadly effect. De Soto was enraged at this treatment and at once assaulted the Indians in a terrible battle which lasted nine hours. The Indian town was burned and hundreds of the savages were killed, but the Spaniards lost many men and nearly all their baggage.

Battle of
Mavilla

A year and more had passed and the soldiers were much discouraged. Their uniforms had worn out and had been replaced with skins and mats. Their hair was long and matted, their figures gaunt and bent. Their hogs had long since been eaten and their horses were nearly dead with fatigue and lack of food. There was not much ammunition left for their guns and no medicine for the sick.

Onward they trudged across the present states of Alabama and Mississippi. They fought many battles with the savages, losing men and baggage as they went on.

Two years passed by, when one day the little band marched out of the thick undergrowth and stood on the banks of a great river. It was

De Soto
reaches the
Mississippi,
1541

the Mississippi, the Father of Waters, gazed upon by the eyes of white men for the first time. De Soto discovered the Mississippi about where the city of Memphis now is.

Crossing the stream the adventurers wandered for a year or more in the tangled forests of the present states of Arkansas and Missouri. Returning to the Mississippi, De Soto,

discouraged and broken-hearted, was taken ill with fever. When he died his followers dropped his body, weighted with stones, into the current of the great river he had discovered. The remainder of his followers finally made their way to a Spanish colony in Mexico, and told the story of their adventures and of the sad fate of De Soto.



DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

11. CORONADO SEARCHES FOR THE SEVEN CITIES

THE Spaniards were firmly established in Mexico. They still believed that somewhere in the heart of the continent there were great quantities of gold and silver. An Indian slave had told wonderful stories of seven cities of Cibola, lying somewhere to the north, where there was plenty of gold. But the slave had died, and there was no one to lead the way to those cities.

About the time that De Soto was making his explorations, an army of three hundred Spaniards and over twice as many Indian followers began a march from Mexico in search of the treasure cities. The leader of the explorers was Francisco Coronado. The party crossed the deserts of Arizona, and after many days' wandering came to the first Indian city. Instead of beautiful palaces lined with gold, they found rude huts filled with dirt. Instead of a rich and prosperous people, they found a few lazy warriors easy to conquer, and a crowd of half-dressed women and children lying around the hot, sun-baked houses.

Coronado marched on, lured by stories of richer places elsewhere. He marched through New Mexico, and as far as the great plains of Kansas. All the villages he found were small, poor, and utterly destitute of gold and silver. There were no rich cities to be found. The stories were all myths. In all the region passed through by Coronado there were only scattered villages composed of mud houses, and wild Indians whose chief occupation was hunting buffaloes.

Coronado
marches
from Mexico,
1540

Explores
the West

In their wanderings the Spaniards came to a prairie covered with little mounds out of which prairie dogs peered at them. Then they came to pools of salt water, bitter to the taste. Later on they encountered great herds of buffaloes. The Indians they met used corn for food, had implements made of copper, and were dressed in buffalo robes.

After two years of marching and searching, Coronado and his men returned to Mexico. They had found no treasure and the seven cities of Cibola were mere myths, but the Spaniards had explored the great western plains of our country, and gained some idea of the extent of the new world and of the kind of people that inhabited it.

In this way by exploration and adventure the southern part of our country became known to the Spaniards. In **St. Augustine** 1565 the Spaniards built a fort in Florida that **and Sante Fé** afterwards grew into the city of St. Augustine. It is the oldest town in the United States. In 1585 Santa Fé in the far west was founded. These explorations and settlements gave Spain a claim to a large part of the continent.

Nearly all the Spaniards who had explored America had come searching for wealth. Some had come for adventure **Purposes of** and some for conquest. In most cases they **the Spaniards** treated the Indians with great cruelty, and were in turn attacked and many were killed by the savages. Theirs is a sad story of a fruitless search for riches, of long marches amid great suffering, of disappointment and failure among the unbroken depths of the new world that they were the first to discover and explore.

12. THE FRENCH EXPLORE AND SETTLE CANADA

FRANCE now turned her attention to explorations and settlements in the new world. Since Spain was well established in the southern part of the continent Verrazano, France undertook to explore and settle the 1524 northern part. A body of French explorers led by Verrazano, an Italian in the service of France, as early as 1524 had sailed along the coast of America all the way from North Carolina to Newfoundland. The party may have entered New York Bay and Narragansett Bay.

Jacques Cartier while exploring the northern coasts saw the entrance of a great river. He sailed boldly in, named the river the St. Lawrence, and sought for a place to make a settlement. His men suffered so much for lack of food that after seeing a tall cliff which he named Montreal, he abandoned his attempt. A few years later he returned and tried to found a colony where Quebec now stands, but the effort was a failure.

Many years passed before France undertook any further explorations in America. The activities of Spain at last excited her ambition to gain a foothold in Quebec founded in 1608 America. Samuel de Champlain, a French soldier, sailed along the coasts of New England, entered some of the harbors, and made maps of the places he visited. In 1608 he came to the St. Lawrence River and sailing up to the site selected by Cartier nearly seventy-five years before, he founded the city of Quebec.

Champlain continued his journey far up the river, even visiting the Great Lakes themselves. He was the first

white man to see that beautiful body of water called Lake Champlain in his honor. He crossed Lake Huron and Lake Ontario and explored the depths of the northern woods. He made friends with the Indians whom he impressed very greatly with his fair skin, and his armor that no arrow could pierce and his guns that gave out a noise like the thunder.

The Algonquins and Hurons asked Champlain to aid them in their war against the fierce Iroquois. To this Champlain
Exploits of Champlain agreed and a great war dance was held in Quebec. The French and Indian warriors were put into boats and went up the river until they came near the village of their enemies. Champlain and his few men marched in front showing their white skin and bright armor. Then the guns were fired and the mysterious bullets brought down an Indian at each shot.

The Iroquois were too astonished to resist. They thought that their foes were aided by heavenly warriors who hurled thunder and lightning. Therefore they fled in terror, uttering loud cries, leaving their village to the mercy of their enemies. Henceforth, however, the Iroquois were the deadly enemies of the white men in the north.

The colony at Quebec struggled on enduring great hardship. The winter was a terrible one, snow and ice almost
Quebec covering the little cabins. Food was scarce and many colonists were ill. In fact only eight were left alive after the first winter. However, Champlain kept up the spirits of the colonists the best he could. After twenty years the town did not number more than one hundred and five persons. It has since grown into a great and beautiful city.

Thus we see that the Spaniards had occupied the southern part of America, the French had explored and settled Canada in the northern part, and it was left now for the English to come in and take possession of all that vast and beautiful domain that lay between.

QUESTIONS

1. When and where was Columbus born? Tell some incidents of his early life. Why did the merchants desire a seaway to India? What was the general idea of the shape of the earth? What did Columbus think?

2. To whom did Columbus first apply for assistance? How was he treated? To whom did he next apply? How was he received at the Spanish court? How was Columbus aided by the monk? What did Isabella consent to do?

3. What were the names of the three vessels of Columbus? When and from where did they sail? What can you say of the fear of the sailors? What were the first signs of land? From which ship was land first seen? When was land discovered? What did Columbus name it?

4. Describe the Indians that Columbus saw. How did the Indians live? What was their chief occupation? What was their appearance? What were some of their habits and customs? How did they wage war? What other island did Columbus visit? What did he take with him on his return to Spain? How was he received? Tell the story of Columbus and the egg.

5. What happened to the colonists at Haiti? How was Columbus unjustly treated? What did he say? How many voyages did Columbus make to America? How did Columbus spend his old age? How old was he when he died and where was he buried?

6. What can you say of the voyage of John Cabot? What land did he explore? What accounts did he give? What claim did he

establish for England? Who was Americus Vespuccius? How did America get its name?

7. For what were the Spaniards especially eager in the new world? Who was Balboa? When and where did Balboa discover the Pacific Ocean? What did Magellan propose? Give an account of his voyage. What happened to Magellan?

8. Who was Ponce de Leon? What did he dread? What did an Indian tell him? When was Florida discovered? How did it get its name? Tell about the search for the fountain of youth. What was De Leon's intention on his second voyage? How did De Leon come by his death?

9. Who undertook to conquer Mexico? Describe the Aztec Indians. What were the wonderful stories told of the ruler of Mexico? How did Montezuma treat Cortez? How was Cortez received? How did the Spaniards act in Mexico? Describe the attack upon Cortez' men. How was Mexico finally conquered? When did Narvaez explore Florida? What sufferings did his men endure?

10. Who was De Soto? When and where did he land? What did he take with him? Describe the march of De Soto. What did his followers find? How were they treated by the Indians? Relate the story of De Soto and the Indian princess. Describe the battle of Mavilla. What river did De Soto discover and when? Describe the death and burial of De Soto.

11. Describe the explorations of Coronado. What portions of the country did he explore? What did he find? What is the oldest town in the United States? When was Santa Fé founded? What were the purposes of the Spaniards in America?

12. What did France now undertake? What explorations had Verrazano made? Describe the voyage of Cartier. When was Quebec founded? What lakes did Champlain visit? Describe some of the exploits of Champlain. Describe the hardships at Quebec. Where had the Spanish and where had the French established their settlements?

CHAPTER II

THE ENGLISH COLONIES

1. SIR WALTER RALEIGH AND THE LOST COLONY

THERE was a brave knight in England named Sir Walter Raleigh. When Raleigh was a young man he was in a crowd watching Queen Elizabeth and her attendants go by. The path in front of the queen was muddy and she hesitated to go forward, fearing to soil her shoes. Raleigh, who was near the queen, quickly threw his cloak on the ground over the muddy places. The queen smiled and stepped on the cloak. She sent for the young man and offered to pay for the garment, but Raleigh gallantly replied, "I desire only to be allowed to retain the cloak. It has become very precious since your Majesty's feet have touched it." This incident attached him to her service and he became a rich and powerful nobleman.

Raleigh grew in favor with the queen. He was a brilliant, wealthy, and adventurous courtier. One of his cherished plans was to found a colony in the new world. The queen readily granted him permission, but being of a thrifty mind, said it must be done at his expense.

Raleigh fitted out two ships, and sent some colonists across the ocean to plant a colony. After four months' sail-

ing they came to the shores of Roanoke Island, off the coast of North Carolina. The colonists, however, did not linger long. The land was very beautiful, but to make a living in a strange country was little to their taste, so they decided to sail back to England. Raleigh named the land Virginia, in honor of Elizabeth, the virgin or unmarried queen.

The next year Raleigh sent out another colony, which landed on Roanoke Island and began a town. However, misfortunes overtook them and they came near starving to death. A passing ship took them back to England. They carried with them some things they had learned from the Indians. One was the use of the potato. Raleigh had some of the potatoes planted on his farm in Ireland. They grew so abundantly and were such good food that they have since become famous as the Irish potato.

One other thing the colonists carried back was tobacco, which had been unknown in England up to that time. Raleigh learned to smoke, and the story is told that one day as he was smoking in his room his servant came in with a pot of ale. Thinking his master on fire, he cried out in alarm, "The master is on fire," and threw the ale into Raleigh's face.

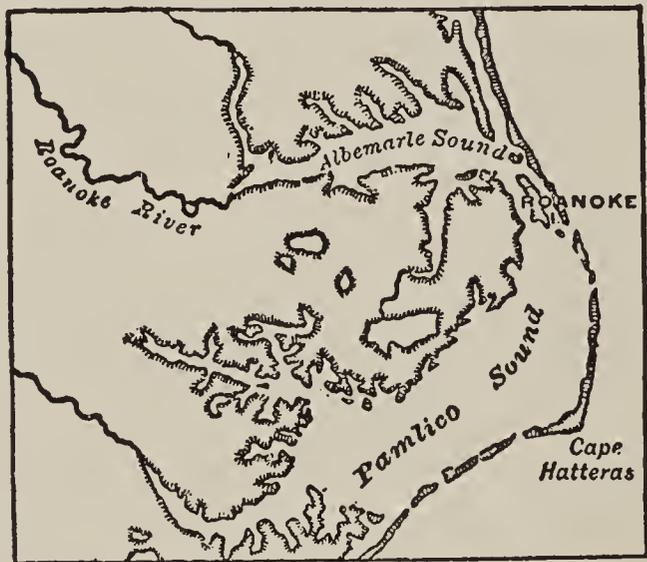
Raleigh tried again to found a colony in America. This time he sent across the ocean farmers, mechanics, and carpenters with their wives and children, thinking that families would be more content than single men. Captain John White was in charge of the expedition.

The colonists landed on the island as before, built their houses, planted their gardens, and made friends with the Indians. When one of the chiefs came in to see Captain White he was given a lot of cheap jewelry, some colored cloth, a mirror, and a knife. Captain White then made him kneel down while he conferred on him the title of Lord of Roanoke. It is needless to say that the savage was delighted and became the warm friend of the colonists.

The Indians were friendly, the crops were growing, and the weather was beautiful. There

Virginia Dare

was great rejoicing when it was known that a little girl was born, the daughter of Mrs. Dare, herself the daughter of Governor White. She was named Virginia Dare, and was the first white child of English parents to be born in what is now the United States.



RALEIGH'S COLONY

Governor White now returned to England to get supplies. He expected to return in a few weeks, but when he reached England he found that country about to engage in war with Spain, and Governor White could not get back to his little colony. He sent one ship out but the government seized it and sent it off to fight the Spaniards. The captain of another ship turned pirate and went after the Spaniards in the West Indies.

At length Governor White found himself on his own ship on his way to the colonists, after three long years. Land was sighted one day about dark and a light was seen on the shore. "The home of the colonists is in sight, and they are still alive," exclaimed the governor in great relief. A boat was lowered and a party went ashore. The men called aloud, blew trumpets, and fired off their guns, but there was neither sight nor sound of any of the colonists.

The search continued all next day, but every man, woman, and child had disappeared. The abandoned cabins and the fields overgrown with weeds were all that could be seen. On a tree was carved the word *Croatan*. This was the name of a tribe of Indians living on an island near by.

It had been agreed that if the colonists, for any reason, had to abandon the settlement they would leave some directions behind them. Governor White tried to reach the village of the Indians, but the ship was driven off by a storm, and the captain insisted upon returning to England. No trace of the colonists has ever been found, and to this day no one knows what became of the lost colony of Roanoke.

Fate of the
second col-
ony, 1590

2. THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN

AFTER the failure of the colony at Roanoke about twenty years passed before the English tried again to found a colony in America. Vessels continued however to ply back and forth between the new world and the old, bringing furs, woods, dyestuffs, and other things bought from the Indians. This valuable trade induced the English merchants to form companies for planting colonies in Virginia. One of these companies was called the Plymouth Company and the other was called the London Company.

The London Company made haste to dispatch a body of colonists to that part of the land for which they had a grant. In December, 1606, three small ships sailed from England bound for the new world and Virginia. On board were one hundred and five persons. The weather was very bad and the cold intense. It took four months to cross the ocean, during which time the voyagers suffered much hardship. As they approached the shores of America a storm drove the ships into the mouth of a large river. Up this stream the colonists sailed, glad to be rid of the perils and discomforts of the seas.

It was now spring, and the colonists were very glad to see the green shores, to hear the birds sing, and to smell the flowers. After sailing up the river thirty or forty miles they selected a place for their colony and named it Jamestown. The river and the town both were named for James I, the king of England. It was the

Plymouth
and London
Companies

Jamestown,
May 13, 1607

first English settlement in America that became a permanent colony.

The colonists were not well suited for life in the wilderness. There were a few carpenters, a blacksmith, a mason, a barber, a tailor, twelve laborers, and about fifty gentlemen who did not know how to work and who came only for adventure. A few tents were erected, cabins



THE BEGINNINGS OF THE JAMESTOWN SETTLEMENT

were started, and a church was made by stretching a canvas over some rough boards nailed between two trees. Some of the colonists contented themselves by making caves in the hillsides to live in. Before long most of the food gave out, many of the colonists were ill with fever and began to quarrel among themselves and to complain of their leaders. The Indians became unfriendly and even attacked the men

while they were at work. By the end of the summer half of the colonists died.

It was a discouraging start for the colony. Everybody might have perished had it not been for Captain John Smith. He was a young man who had had many strange adventures. Upon one occasion he had gone to sea, had been thrown overboard in the Mediterranean, had swum to the shore of a desert island, and later had been picked up and carried to Egypt. Among other adventures he had been captured by the Turks and sold into slavery. He escaped and fled into Europe, wandering across the country until he reached England. There he joined the colonists on their way to Virginia.

Smith took charge of the colony. He set every man to work, saying that those who would not work should not eat. They needed food, but the Indians would not give or sell them any corn. Smith took a body of soldiers and went to the Indians. "Sell me corn," said he, "or I shall have to take it by force." The Indians laughed at him and said: "We will give you a handful of corn for all the guns and swords of your men." This made Smith so angry that he attacked the Indians, drove them out of their village, and captured their hideous idol. When the savages saw their idol in the hands of the white men, they offered a boat load of corn as a ransom for it. Smith was glad to make the exchange.

By treating the Indians honestly when he could, fighting them when he was compelled to do so, and forcing the colonists to strict economy and hard work, Captain Smith saved the colony from destruction.

3. POCAHONTAS, THE INDIAN PRINCESS

NOT far from Jamestown lived King Powhatan, a great Indian chief. He had a young daughter named Pocahontas of whom he was very proud. He loved her devotedly and gave her everything she asked for.

One day some warriors came into the Indian village bringing Captain John Smith a prisoner. It seems that
 Adventures of John Smith Captain Smith with a few men and two Indian guides was exploring the country around the Chickahominy River. After sailing up the river he went ashore with one of the Indian guides, leaving the rest of the party to prepare supper. In a short time he heard cries and sounds of battle from the direction of his canoe. The Indians had attacked his party and killed every one of them, leaving Smith and his guide alone in the forest.

Smith tied the Indian fast to his arm so that he could not escape and both began to run. Arrows flew from the bushes around them, one of them striking Smith in the leg. He held on to his guide and used him as a shield, but in his haste he and his guide ran into a quicksand up to their waists, and were held fast so that they were easily captured by their pursuers.

The savages pulled their captives from the mud, took them to the village, washed their bodies and dried their clothes. Smith knew by their signs that they were making ready for a great time when they would torture him to death. In order to amuse and divert the savages Smith took out his pocket compass and showed it to the Indian chief. The chief looked at the trembling needle which he could see but

could not touch on account of the glass. He was so astonished that he decided not to kill Smith at once, but to send him to Powhatan.

The king was delighted to see the white man in his power, and decided to fatten him up before the time came to kill him. He made Smith eat so much deer meat and bread that the Captain fell ill and needed medicine. He asked Powhatan to let him send word to his friends in Jamestown that they might know where he was. To this Powhatan readily consented. Smith wrote a note with a burnt stick on a piece of bark and gave it to a messenger to take to the colony. The messenger soon returned with presents for the chief and with articles that Smith needed. Powhatan was greatly impressed by the ability of the white man to make a piece of bark talk by merely marking on it, but was not deterred from his intention to put Smith to death.

Smith was kept prisoner for several days, while the Indians listened to his wonderful stories of what he could do. He told them about the sun and the moon, Smith about the great ships that brought him to amuses the America, and the great cities across the ocean. Indians

He closely watched the Indians, and learned a great deal about the way they lived. In fact he afterwards wrote a book about his adventures, and while we may not believe all the remarkable exploits which he tells about, yet it is quite true that he had many wonderful adventures.

Among those who listened eagerly to the wonderful stories was Pocahontas. She was only twelve years old, but had already learned to admire the white man. She

would sit at the feet of the prisoner for hours at a time while he told her of his adventures in the East and of all the wonders of the great country across the ocean.

At last the day came to settle the fate of Captain Smith. He was led into the tent of Powhatan. The chief clothed in raccoon skins sat on a bench. Around him stood the



POCAHONTAS SAVES JOHN SMITH

warriors, some of whom had clubs in their hands. His wives sat around him, and before them burned the wigwam fire. Two stones were brought in and Smith was compelled to lie down with his head on them.

Pocahontas
saves his
life

The sign was given to dash out the brains of the prisoner. The warriors approached, clubs in hand, to obey the order. But Pocahontas rushed forward, threw herself in front of the warriors, took Smith's

head in her arms, and begged her father to spare his life. The old chief could deny his daughter nothing. Smith was released and was adopted by Powhatan as his son.

After a while he was allowed to return to Jamestown. Pocahontas soon became the firm friend of the white men. She often came to Jamestown and brought corn and vegetables to the colonists. She played about the village, and was greatly beloved by everybody. When she was grown Pocahontas became a Christian, and was baptized with the name of Rebecca. She was called Lady Rebecca, since she was a true princess, being a daughter of a king. A young Englishman of Jamestown, named John Rolfe, fell in love with Pocahontas and asked Powhatan's consent to their marriage. The old chief agreed, and there was a wedding which both Indians and white men attended. Rolfe and his Indian princess went to England and were received at court with great distinction. As they were about to return to their home in Virginia, Pocahontas was taken ill. In a few days she died, leaving a little son. This son afterwards grew to be a man and came to Virginia. From him have descended some of the best families in that State.

4. PROGRESS OF JAMESTOWN

CAPTAIN SMITH remained with the colonists several years. On one of his trips he was badly injured by the explosion of a bag of powder on board a ship. He jumped overboard to put out the flames, and was rescued by his companions with difficulty. This injury made it necessary for him to go to England. He never returned to the colony, though he did explore the coast of New England and made valuable maps of that portion of the country. He spent the last years of his life in England, dying at the age of fifty-two.

Jamestown missed the strong hand of Captain Smith to guide and control the colony. The men became idle, or "The Starving Time,"
1609-1610 hunted for gold instead of planting crops. The Indians would not sell their corn or supply any kind of food. The few friendly Indians could not aid them much for fear of the others. As a result the colonists were soon reduced to starvation. The hungry people ate rats, dogs, lizards, roots, berries, and whatever else they could find. The Indians watched their wasted and gaunt forms with ill-concealed satisfaction. By the end of the winter only sixty out of the five hundred colonists were left alive. All the others had miserably perished. The dreadful period is known as "The Starving Time."

In the midst of this disaster a shipload of colonists and supplies arrived under command of Sir Thomas Gates. This ship had met misfortune on its way over and had spent the winter at one of the Bermuda Islands. When spring came Gates sailed for Jamestown, where he found the colonists there almost perishing for food. If he had been ten days later not a soul would have been alive.

In this strait Gates, who had only two weeks' food for his own colonists, decided to take them all to Newfoundland and abandon the colony at Jamestown. When the ship reached the mouth of the James River with everybody on board, it was met by a fleet of vessels with more colonists and plenty of food, and with Lord Delaware in command. Gladly they went back to their homes at Jamestown and started again. Had it not been for the timely arrival of a ship with supplies, the whole colony would have perished.

After a while the colony began again to prosper.

The people found that there was a great demand in England for tobacco. The colonists now turned their attention to its cultivation in quantities. Such was the demand that even the streets of Jamestown were planted with it. It became the money of the colonists. The sala-



SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA

ries of the ministers and of the public officers, as well as the taxes, were paid in tobacco.

Twelve years after the settlement of the colony a Dutch ship appeared one day in the harbor of Jamestown. On board were twenty negroes that were sold to the colonists. This was the beginning of negro slavery in our country. The negroes were good field hands, being able to stand the summer heat better than the white man. They were easy to control, and not expensive to support. At that time the slave trade was not considered wrong. Even kings and queens gave it their sanction and encouraged ships to go to the coast of Africa to buy the unhappy negroes and sell them in any part of the world in which they could find a market. No one foresaw the consequences that would follow the purchasing of a few slaves by the colonists at Jamestown. None knew that it was the beginning of a system of slavery that was to have a tremendous influence upon the history of our country.

In the same year that the slaves were brought, another event of great importance happened. Up to this time there were few women in the colony, and the young men of Jamestown were anxious to establish homes. If they were to live permanently and happily in America they must have wives and children. Realizing this, the Company in England in charge of the colony sent out a ship with ninety young women of good character, who were willing to come to America and marry the men of Jamestown.

Introduction
of slavery,
1619

Wives for
the colonists,
1619

There was great excitement when the ship arrived. The men dressed in their best and welcomed the maidens with great heartiness. No maid was compelled to marry against her consent, and each one could choose the husband that suited her. It was not long before ninety weddings were celebrated in Jamestown and vicinity. Each man willingly paid the Company the one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco required to cover the cost of the passage of his wife to America. Other ships came over bringing wives for the colonists. The settlers now had homes and were content to remain permanently in the new world. From this time all went well at Jamestown.



THE WOOING OF THE MAIDENS

5. NATHANIEL BACON AND HIS REBELLION

VIRGINIA grew in population and the settlements increased in size and number. Civil war in England induced many friends of King Charles I to come over to America and settle on large estates in Virginia. They were called cavaliers because they were adherents to the king. Many of them belonged to the best people in England, and became the ancestors of many prominent families in Virginia.

These planters owned large tracts of land, lying along the river, and devoted themselves almost entirely to raising tobacco and home supplies. They built large colonial mansions, had slaves in abundance, and lived in ease and elegance. In a half-century of growth Virginia had forty thousand inhabitants, and was a prosperous colony.

Having become a royal colony the governors of Virginia were appointed by the king. Some of these governors were Sir William Berkeley wise and some were unwise. Among them was Sir William Berkeley who was sent over in 1642 and remained governor for over thirty years. He was an aristocrat and had but little interest in the common people of the colony. He preferred fine clothes and high living to the real duties of his office. Besides that he was rough, hot-tempered, and narrow-minded, so that the colonists cordially disliked him. He did not believe in the education of the people and said, "I thank God there are no free schools and printing presses in Virginia." We shall see, however, that that kind of man was no fit ruler for the free American spirit.

An extensive trade in furs had grown up between the settlers and the Indians. This Governor Berkeley found to be profitable, and so he refused to have the Indians punished for the massacre of men, women, and children in the outlying settlements. It was made unlawful for anyone to lead a body of soldiers against the Indians without a commission from the governor.

One of the colonists at Jamestown was a rich and popular young lawyer, named Nathaniel Bacon. Upon one occasion, after the Indians had been giving trouble, a crowd of citizens gathered and waited for some one to lead them. Seeing Bacon approaching, they called out, "Bacon! Bacon!" He agreed to lead them against the Indians, as well as to join them in their protest against the conduct of the governor.

Bacon, the
leader

Without the consent of the governor Bacon and his followers marched against the Indians and punished them. When Berkeley heard of it he was angry and declared Bacon a rebel and a traitor. Bacon did not care, and neither did the people. They were thoroughly aroused against the old tyrant. They compelled him to order an election for a new assembly. Bacon was chosen a member. Many of the old oppressive laws were repealed and wiser ones were enacted in their stead. Bacon was also promised a commission to fight the Indians.

Fearing treachery on the part of the governor, Bacon assembled a party of five hundred men and paraded before the statehouse. Berkeley came out, called Bacon a traitor and a rebel, and declared that

Bacon and
Berkeley

he should not have his commission. To show that he was not afraid, Berkeley tore open his shirt front and baring his bosom dared the soldiers to shoot.

Berkeley wanted to fight Bacon, and challenged him to a combat with swords. Bacon replied: "I came not to hurt a hair of your head, and as for your sword, your Honor may please to put it up. I came for a commission to lead these men against the Indians." At last Bacon was given his commission.

Hardly had he left Jamestown to fight the savages, before Berkeley, in his rage, again declared him a traitor and a Jamestown rebel, whereupon Bacon marched back. Berkeley fled and tried to raise troops of his own to attack Bacon and his followers. To prevent Jamestown from falling into the hands of the oppressor, it was agreed to set fire to it. Some of Bacon's men burned their own homes in their eagerness. Bacon was seized with fever and died after a brief illness. Berkeley fled and tried to raise troops of his own to attack Bacon and his followers. To prevent Jamestown from falling into the hands of the oppressor, it was agreed to set fire to it. Some of Bacon's men burned their own homes in their eagerness. Bacon was seized with fever and died after a brief illness.

Berkeley returned to the almost destroyed city and hunted down those who had followed the brave leader. Twenty-two of them he hanged; others he threw into prison. Berkeley was soon after recalled to England by King Charles II. This king said of him, "He has hanged more people in that naked country than I did for the murder of my father." Bacon's Rebellion showed at this early date the determination of the colonists to resist any kind of oppression.

A few years later the capital of Virginia was moved to Williamsburg, and Jamestown went into decay. An old vine-covered tower is now all that is left of the first permanent settlement of English colonists in America.

6. THE SETTLEMENT OF PLYMOUTH

THIRTEEN years after the settlement of Jamestown a body of English Puritans landed on the coast of New England and founded the colony of Plymouth. This portion of the coast of the new world had been explored several years before by Captain John Smith, and the region had been named by him New England.



SIGNING THE MAYFLOWER COMPACT

These Puritans at one time had lived in England. They had left that country because their consciences would not permit them to worship God according to the methods of the English Church. They desired to purify the church of its evil practices, and for that reason they were called Puritans. They were persecuted in

The Puritans

England and their lives were so unhappy that they determined to leave their native land.

Many of them moved to Holland to find a refuge from persecution. From that country a body of about one hundred came in the *Mayflower* to find in America freedom to worship God. On account of their wanderings they received the name of "Pilgrims." Before landing, the Pilgrims gathered in the cabin of the *Mayflower* and signed an agreement by which they pledged themselves to obey such laws as should be made for the government of the colony. They then chose one of their number, John Carver, to be governor for one year.

It was a cold December day when they landed at Plymouth. Rude cabins were built and covered with thatch.

The cracks were filled with mud to keep out the biting wind. Oiled paper was used in the windows in place of glass. The weather was so cold that the women and children, and many of the men, had to remain on board the *Mayflower* until spring. During that first winter more than forty of them, including Governor Carver, died. The survivors were very brave, however, and in the spring, when the *Mayflower* set sail for England, not one of the Pilgrims returned with her.

Among the leaders of the Plymouth Colony was Captain Miles Standish. He was small in size and had yellow hair and beard, on account of which he was sometimes called "Captain Shrimp." He was quick of temper and brave as a lion in his dealings with the Indians, which made them call him "boiling water." He, with sixteen

The Pilgrims

Landing of
the Pilgrims,
December 21,
1620.

Miles
Standish

others, was the first to land from the *Mayflower* and explore the coast.

Captain Standish took charge of the Plymouth Colony. He made every man carry his gun and be ready to use it, even when going to and returning from church. He drilled the soldiers, inspired courage, and secured peace and prosperity for Plymouth.

The Indians stood in great awe of him. Once when a friendly Indian had been made prisoner by some unfriendly Indians, Standish marched with nine men to the Indian village, and placing his men around the house of the chief, boldly entered and demanded the prisoner.

The Indians were alarmed at this sudden appearance of the soldier, and ran out of the house as fast as they could. The prisoner was soon found and delivered to his friends. Standish and his men spent the night in the chief's house, not allowing any of the Indians to come in. The next day they marched in triumph back to Plymouth.

Another time Captain Standish had gone in a boat to buy some corn from the Indians who lived down the coast. The wind ceased to blow, and he was compelled to Adventures of Miles Standish pass the night on shore. The Indians talked in a friendly way, but Standish discovered a plot to kill him in the night. One Indian invited him to go to his house to sleep. Standish accepted the invitation and went into the house, but instead of lying down, he loaded his gun and kept it ready on his knee as he sat by the fire.

The Indian begged him to go to sleep, but Standish knew that if he did the Indian would kill him. So he stayed

awake all night, his gun ready, the Indian watching him closely. When morning came he backed out of the house, and made the Indian follow him to the boat and back to Plymouth. His courage had made the savage afraid to attack him.

Captain Standish was as tender-hearted as he was brave. During the hardships of the first winter he and six others were the only well ones in the entire colony. They cut the wood, made the fires, cooked the food, and washed the clothes for nearly all the colonists.

7. OTHER COLONIES IN NEW ENGLAND

THE colonists of Plymouth were very happy when the spring came. They set about building more cabins, planting gardens and fields, and making friends with the Indians.

In the early spring an Indian named Samoset walked into Plymouth and called out, "Welcome, Englishmen!" He had learned a little English from the fisher- Samoset and men on the coast of Maine. He went away and Squanto returned with another Indian named Squanto. Squanto had once been stolen by traders and sold into slavery in Spain. An Englishman had rescued him and sent him back to his own people. For this reason he became the firm friend of the white men at Plymouth.

Squanto taught the Pilgrims how to plant their corn, and how to fertilize the ground by dropping a dead herring by the side of each grain. He also showed them how to catch fish. By his aid a treaty of friendship that lasted for more than fifty years, was made with Massasoit, the Indian chief.

At one time Massasoit was ill with fever, and nigh unto death. Edward Winslow and two attendants from Plymouth set out for his relief. The king was lying on a Illness of bed of skins, full of dirt and filth. The wigwam Massasoit was shut up tight, so that it was dark and stifling within. Outside, the medicine men were making hideous noises to drive away the evil spirits. The king's lips were dry, his skin was parched, and his eyes rolled with the fever.

Winslow drove the people out of the tent, and opened it up for air and light. He bathed the king in water and gave

him a cool, clean bed to lie upon. He wet his lips with water and gave him some medicine. Then he ordered all noise to cease. Soon the king fell asleep and awoke next day refreshed. At the end of three days the fever left him, and in a few weeks he was well and walking about. "Now



THE TREATY WITH MASSASOIT

"I know the English are my friends," said the grateful king. As long as he lived he showed his gratitude for this service.

William Bradford had been chosen to succeed John Carver as governor of the colony. Canonicus was the chief of the Narragansett Indians, a tribe unfriendly to the whites. Canonicus sent Governor Bradford a challenge in the shape of a bundle of arrows tied with a snake skin. Bradford returned the snake skin

filled with powder and shot. When Canonicus saw that Bradford was not afraid, he decided to let him and his brave men alone.



GOVERNOR BRADFORD RETURNS THE CHALLENGE OF CANONICUS

The first summer passed, the autumn came on, and the corn had ripened in the field. The Pilgrims had built their homes and the Indians were friendly. The colonists desired to show their gratitude to God ^{Thanksgiving} by giving a week of Thanksgiving. The young men and the Indians shot deer and wild turkeys. The women gathered the corn and cooked the food. Under the trees the tables were spread. The men sat down with their Indian friends, while their wives and the maidens served them. There were shooting matches and sports of all kinds, in which the Indians joined. It was our first Thanksgiving.

Eight years after the Plymouth Colony was founded, a body of Puritans came from England and formed a settlement on the coast a few miles farther north. They named the colony Salem. Two years afterwards about one thousand more Puritans came over, under the leadership of John Winthrop, and made a settlement which they named Boston.

The colonies in New England grew in size and number as people came from England. By 1640 as many as twenty thousand colonists had found homes in what is now called the State of Massachusetts.

Governor John Winthrop was as remarkable in his way as any of the men who founded colonies in America. He was brave, independent, and severely religious. He was so generous to the colonists that at one time during a severe winter when he had but one loaf of bread in his oven, he gave it all to a man who came begging some meal.

As Boston grew and other towns were settled near by, Governor Winthrop found that he had plenty to do. Every shipload brought over laborers of all sorts, who had to be set to work. The carpenter was put to building houses, the mason to laying brick, the stone-cutter to hewing stones, and the farmer to planting corn and vegetables. His was a busy life. He worked every day with his own hands.

Governor Winthrop had his own way of dealing with people. When, for example, an angry man sent him a letter, written in a bad temper, the governor sent it back to him, saying he was not willing to keep

such a letter; the man who wrote it was the man to have it. The writer soon apologized to the governor for his rudeness.

At another time when the winter was very cold, the governor heard that a certain needy neighbor had been stealing wood from his woodpile. The governor said, "I will arrange it, so that he will not steal any more of my wood." He sent for the man and said to him, "My friend, it is a severe winter, and I have no doubt you need wood. There is my woodpile. If you need wood, take it, until the spring comes, when you can repay me." In this way the poor man was provided for, and the governor made him ashamed of his act.

An old writer of that time, Cotton Mather by name, says: "The governor sometimes made his own private purse to be the public purse, not by sucking into it, but by squeezing out of it. It was his custom to send some of his family on errands into the houses of the poor, about their meal time on purpose to spy whether they wanted, and if it were found that they wanted, he would make that the opportunity of sending supplies to them."

8. EXILES FROM THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES

ROGER WILLIAMS was a young Puritan minister who had left England on account of persecution. He preached first at Salem, but afterwards at Plymouth and in the other colonies. His congregation was small, but his earnestness and his labors among the poor and



ROGER WILLIAMS AMONG THE INDIANS

sick made him greatly beloved. Williams had often visited the Narragansett Indians, had slept in their wigwams, eaten their food, and learned their language. He went hunting and fishing with his Indian friends and from them learned many of the secrets of woodcraft. They became his firm

friends and always made him welcome to their villages and their camp fires.

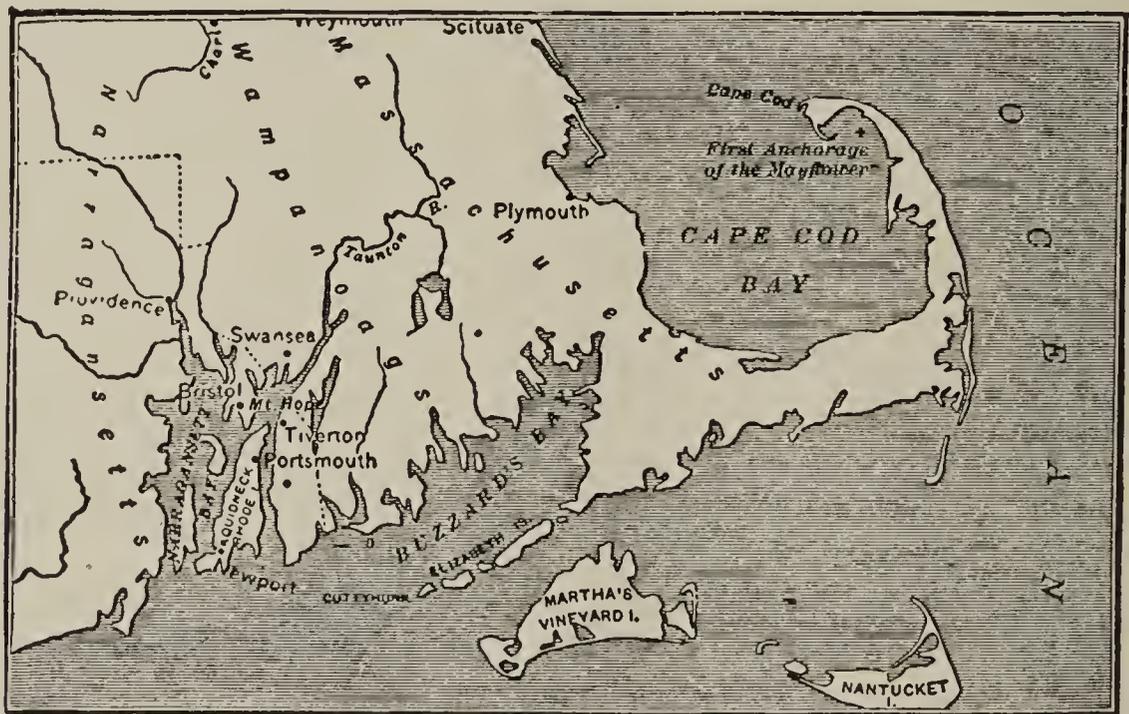
At Salem, Williams became very bold in his preaching against certain doctrines of his Puritan brethren. For instance, it was the law that everybody had to go to church whether he wished to go or not. Whenever the drum beat, or the horn blew, or the bell rang for meeting, everybody who was not sick in bed had to march to church. Roger Williams said, "We should not make people go to church. If their consciences do not urge them to attend worship, their going does no good."

Another law was that everybody should be taxed to support the church. Williams thought this was wrong. He said, "Every man should pay according to his conscience. He should not be taxed for his religion, but should contribute of his own free will." But this was not all. Williams boldly declared the king of England had no right to give away the Indian lands in America. He said, "They do not belong to him but to the natives themselves. The Indians hold the titles and it is from them that the land must be bought."

This was too much for the Puritans. They declared such a man was dangerous to the church and a menace to the colony. They haled him before the Court, where he was told to cease preaching his strange doctrine or he would be sent back to England. Williams replied very boldly, "I came here to find freedom of conscience and freedom of speech. I shall continue to preach and I shall not return to England."

He went on preaching his doctrines as before. The Puritans decided to arrest him and put him on a ship bound for England. The kind Governor Winthrop secretly sent him word that he would be arrested unless he made good his escape. Williams hastily took a package of food, his heavy clothing, and a stick, and leaving his wife and children, committed himself to the wilderness.

His flight



SETTLEMENTS IN THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES

It was in the heart of winter. Through ice and snow for many days he wandered until he reached the wigwam of Massasoit. Here the old chief said to him, "Rest here till the snow has melted from the hills and the spring has come. No one shall drive you from the wigwam of your friends." In the spring Williams sent for his wife and children, and with a few other friends journeyed to Narragansett Bay and selected a place for a colony. He named it Providence.

Providence
founded, 1636

Other settlers found their way to the home of the exile. Land was bought from the Indians, who promised not to disturb the new settlement. This was the beginning of the colony of Rhode Island.

The men in Boston were accustomed to hold meetings to which women were not admitted. In these meetings they discussed religious and political matters. Mrs. **Mrs. Anne**
Anne Hutchinson, a woman of talent and spirit, **Hutchinson**
declared that women had a right to speak. Accordingly, she held meetings in her house and discussed public affairs. Her teachings were quite different from those of the ministers, and soon the whole colony was divided into factions. Mrs. Hutchinson was exiled from the colony, as Williams had been. She made her way to the settlement of Roger Williams, and afterwards she and her followers founded colonies at Portsmouth and at Newport.

In the same year that Roger Williams founded Providence, another preacher, Thomas Hooker, dissatisfied with the government of Boston, gathered his congrega- **Thomas**
tion and started on a journey through the **Hooker**
wilderness. They travelled slowly, driving their cows before them, and finally settled in the Connecticut valley, beginning the town of Hartford. Other colonists followed, and other towns were founded. These towns were united into one government and called Connecticut. These towns agreed to be governed by the provisions of a written constitution. It is the first time in history that a written constitution was adopted to create a government. It marked the beginnings of American democracy.

9. JOHN ELIOT, THE APOSTLE TO THE INDIANS

WHEN the colonists came to America they found Indians living in all parts of the country. Some of the Indian tribes were friendly, and some of them were hostile. With some the colonists made treaties of peace and friendship; with others there was constant war.

The English colonists generally tried to be fair and friendly with the Indians. The white men went into the Indian villages with presents of knives, axes, jewelry, and gaudy cloth to exchange for furs, corn, vegetables, and tobacco. The Indians wandered through the white settlements selling their wares and looking with wonder and admiration at the possessions of their new neighbors.

From the Indians the white men learned many things about the woods. They learned how to make snowshoes, and build canoes, and trap wild animals, and imitate the cries of birds, and how to spear fish in the river, and how to plant corn and raise tobacco. In fact many of the pioneers were almost as skilled in woodcraft as the savages themselves. Still the colonists lived in great dread of Indian uprisings. These would occur in spite of all precautions and often without apparent cause. In those uprisings the Indians burned the dwellings and massacred the colonists without mercy or carried them away as prisoners.

To protect themselves from this ever-present danger, the colonists built stockade forts, consisting of a few houses surrounded by a tall fence. For further protection block-houses were also built.

In these forts and blockhouses the colonists found a refuge from danger, as well as a place from which they could fight the savages to advantage. In such constant watchfulness did the colonists live that it was ^{Blockhouses} the rule for the men always to have their guns at hand. They carried their guns to the field when they went to work, and took them to church when they went to worship.

It was not the purpose of the English colonists to make war on the savages, as the Spaniards had done. The English desired peace and were anxious to teach the savages to live a civilized life. For this purpose ^{John Eliot} schools were established for the Indians and preachers were sent to their villages. Among the most noted of these preachers was John Eliot, the "Apostle to the Indians."

John Eliot came from England eleven years after the settlement of Plymouth. He had been a busy student at college and had diligently studied different languages. For fourteen years he devoted himself to the study of the Indian language, and wrote for the Indians a translation of the Bible.

Eliot's Bible is a curious book, very rare and costly at the present day, and one which very few can read. To designate a good chief, such as Joshua or Gideon, Eliot used the word "mugwump," a word which ^{Eliot's Bible} we sometimes hear at the present day.

After he had been in Massachusetts for fifteen years Eliot began preaching to the Indians in their own language. He went from village to village, gathered the ^{Preaching to the Indians} Indians under the trees, and preached to them

by the hour. The Indians were kept awake by the distribution of presents. His sermons were very long. The savages could ill appreciate a religion that kept them from slaying and scalping their enemies. Some were converted, but others listened with scorn.

After twenty years of preaching the number of the converted or "praying Indians," as they were called in derision, reached four thousand. These were mainly from the weaker tribes in New England. The great tribes of Wampanoags and Narragansetts, which gave so much trouble, furnished few converts.

10. KING PHILIP'S WAR

MASSASOIT, the chief of the Wampanoags, was the true friend of the settlers of New England. He had two young sons whom he brought to the governor at Plymouth, saying, "I wish you to give English names to my boys." The governor named one of them Alexander and the other Philip. After Massasoit died Alexander became chief in his stead. The people of Plymouth heard that Alexander was plotting mischief and sent for him. He came reluctantly, and proved that he was innocent of the charges against him. On his way homeward he was seized with fever and died. The Indians, however, thought that he had been poisoned, and began to plot revenge against the whites.

Philip became chief and nursed his wrath for years. He was a vain and proud Indian and called himself King Philip. He had a cruel and vengeful nature, and cordially hated the white settlers.

All the Indians, including the Narragansetts, resolved on an uprising against the whites. One Sunday a party of Indians attacked the town of Swansea, and murdered some of the people as they were coming from church. A dreadful war, led by Philip, and known as King Philip's War, now ensued. Many towns were burned, and over six hundred white men were killed or captured by the Indians. As for the savages their losses were even greater.

King Philip's
War, 1675-
1676

A thousand white men went in pursuit of the bloody savages determined to put an end to this warfare. The Indians

numbered three thousand braves in all. Their stronghold was attacked and more than seven hundred were killed. Philip and his remaining followers were chased into a swamp in Rhode Island. One of Philip's braves advised him to surrender. For this advice the chief lifted his tomahawk and struck the Indian dead. The brother of the slain warrior swiftly crept through the bushes to the camp of the



THE DEATH OF KING PHILIP

white men and offered to guide them to the hiding place of King Philip.

The party soon reached the place in the swamp where the chief was concealed. As soon as Philip saw them he started to run, but the Indian guide raised his rifle and shot him through the heart. Philip fell forward into a pool of water and his followers took to flight. His head was

cut off and sent to Plymouth, where it was exposed upon a pole in the village green. This was the end of King Philip's War. Many of the captives, including the nine-year-old son of Philip, were sold as slaves. The power of the Indians in that part of the country was broken forever, and the colonies were left to prosper in peace.

Death of
Philip

11. THE DUTCH COME TO THE NEW WORLD

WE have seen that the English settled in Virginia, and in New England. Let us now learn how the Dutch founded an American colony that has since become the great city of New York.

Two years after Jamestown was settled, and eleven years before the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, a Dutch ship, **Henry Hudson** commanded by Henry Hudson, an Englishman, entered what is now New York Bay. The ship was named the *Half Moon*. Hudson had been sent out by a Dutch company, known as the East India Company, to find a short way to China. He did not know how far west the new world extended, but hoped to find some strait that would allow his vessel to pass through to the Pacific Ocean.

His ship entered the mouth of a river which in his honor was afterwards named the Hudson River. Here his ship lay at anchor for a week while his men fished and explored.

At the end of the week Captain Hudson weighed anchor and sailed a little way into the bay, where he stopped again **The Indians greet Hudson** to explore. Canoes full of Indians came to the side of his vessel. The savages made signs of friendship, and offered beans and oysters for sale. The captain would not allow any of the Indians on board his vessel, though he was glad enough to get the oysters in exchange for glass beads.

The Indians had never seen any white men before, and thought the Great Spirit had come. Crowds of canoes soon put out to see this great canoe with white wings, that moved

without rowing, but Hudson would not let them come too near him.

The Indians were very numerous, for the land was rich and beautiful. On the island lived the Manhattans, and up the river lived the Sing Sings. On one side of the river lived the Hackensacks, and down the bay were the Raritans. Hudson was afraid of all these strange and warlike tribes, and proceeded up the river with great caution.

Hudson visited an Indian village on Manhattan Island. After talking awhile he drank the chief's health in a glass of brandy, and then offered a drink to the chief. The Indians
The old warrior smelled it and handed it around. and the brandy
All the Indians shook their heads and refused to drink, except one who lifted the glass to his lips and swallowed the brandy with many a wry grimace.

In a short while he began to stagger, then to whoop and yell, and finally he fell unconscious to the ground. His companions thought he was dead, but Hudson and his men soon had him all right. The Indian declared it was the strongest water he had ever tasted, but that it made him feel he was in the happy hunting grounds, with plenty of game on all sides, and the scalps of many enemies in his belt.

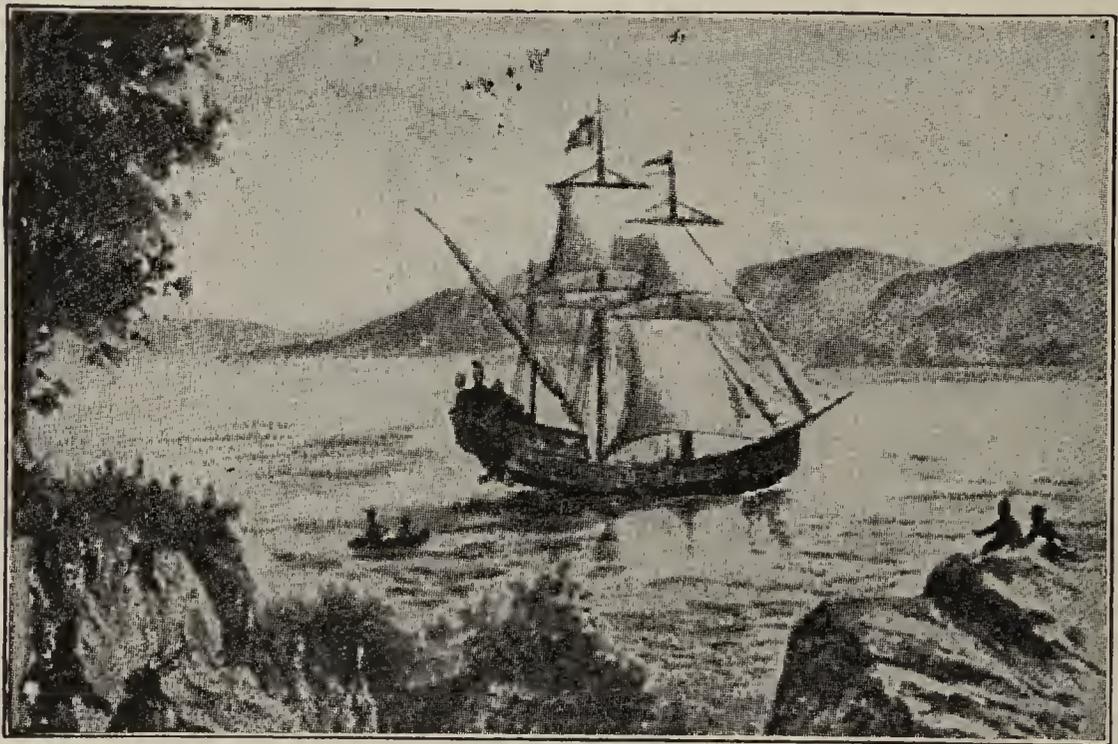
After that all the Indians took a drink. Later on the white man's "fire water" became a deadly enemy to the Indians, and many a dreadful massacre could be traced to its evil influence upon the race.

The *Half Moon* sailed up the river as far as the present city of Albany. Here it became evident to Hudson that

there was no chance of reaching China by this route. Accordingly, he sailed down the river and returned to Holland.

When Hudson reported to the Dutch Company what explorations he had made, they at once claimed all the land on both sides of the Hudson River. Colonists were sent over to establish posts for trading with the Indians. The savages were eager to exchange valuable furs for cheap trinkets, glass beads, pocketknives, and brass jewelry.

Explores the
Hudson
River, 1609



HENRY HUDSON EXPLORES THE HUDSON RIVER

Hudson sailed no more under the Dutch flag. He went back to London, entered the service of the London Company, and started out again to find a northwest passage to India and China. He discovered Hudson Bay, which also was named for him. Here he was obliged to spend a dreary winter, with his ship frozen hard and fast in the ice, and his crew nearly dead for want of food.

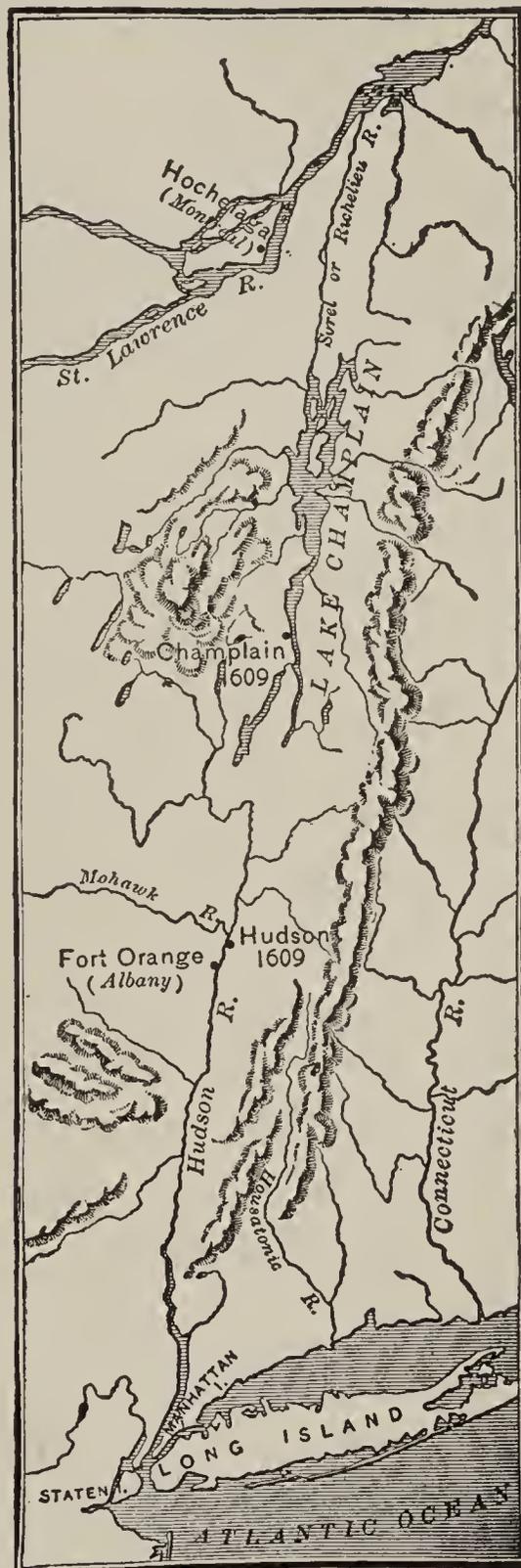
Last days of
Hudson

When spring came, his men rebelled, seized him and a few of his faithful companions, put them in a small boat, and set them adrift among the icebergs of the northern seas.

A trading post was established on the lower end of New Amsterdam, 1614

Manhattan Island. This settlement was named New Amsterdam, after the city of Amsterdam in Holland. It was on the site of the present city of New York. The Indians were persuaded to sell the entire island to the Dutch for a lot of cheap trinkets, worth about twenty-four dollars. The entire region claimed by the Dutch was called New Netherland.

The thrifty Dutch soon started a prosperous trade with the Indians. They lived peaceably with them, buying their lands for almost nothing, and trading gaudy jewelry for costly furs. The settlements increased in number, and New Amsterdam grew into importance as a colony as well as a trading post.



SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK

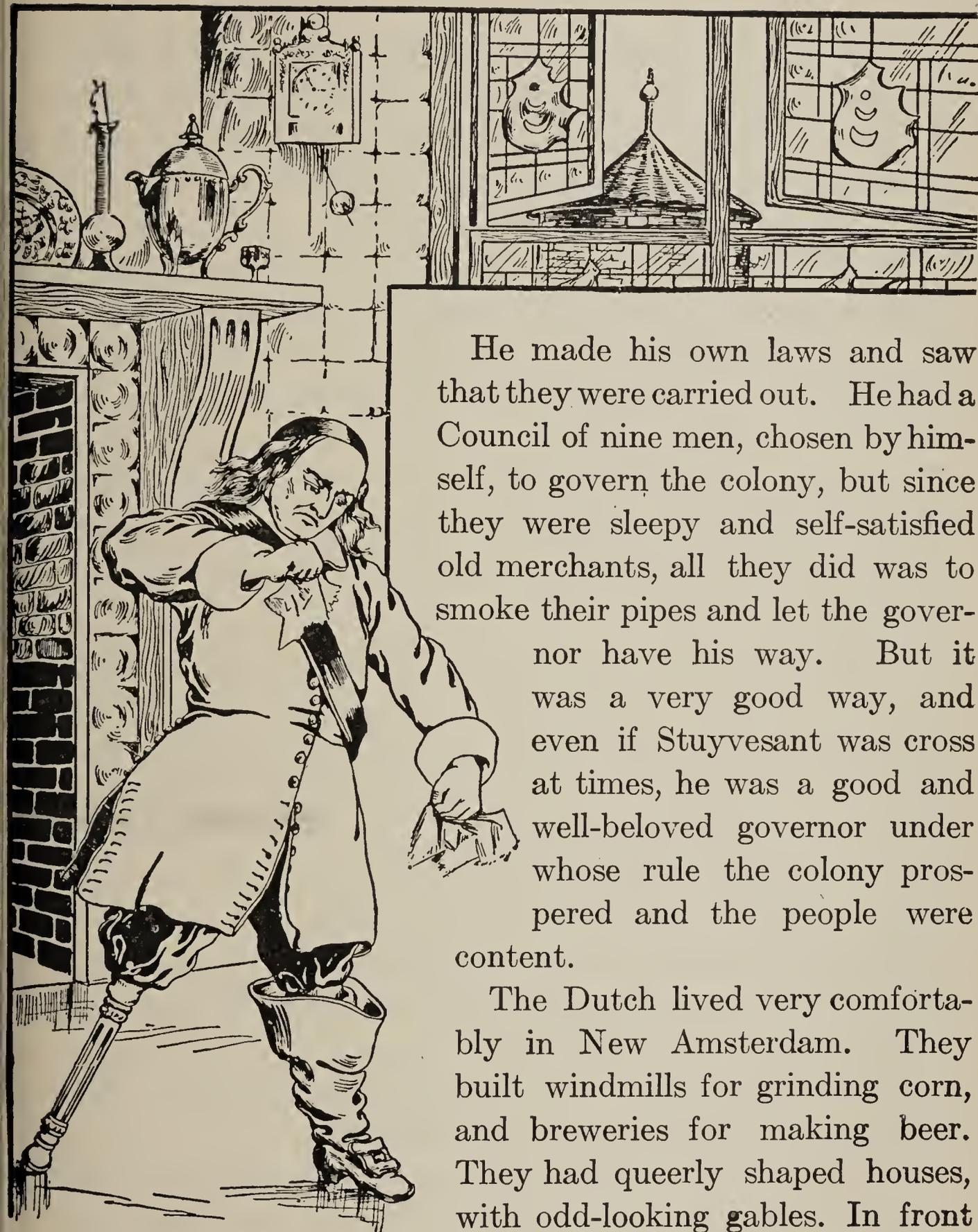
grew into importance as a

12. NEW AMSTERDAM BECOMES NEW YORK

THE Dutch were in possession of the Hudson River settlements, and for forty years their governors were in charge of the little colony at the mouth of the river. The colony was called New Amsterdam. Here came traders from Holland, bringing supplies to the merchants and offering traffic with the Indians. Slowly the town increased in numbers, while the thrifty Dutch traded with the natives and attended to their own affairs.

Governors were sent over to take care of New Amsterdam. The most noted of these was Peter Stuyvesant, who had been a fine soldier in his time, and had lost a leg fighting in the West Indies. It was replaced with a wooden leg, of which he was so proud that he had a silver band put around it. For this reason the people called him "Old Silver Leg." He would sometimes tap his wooden leg with his cane and say, "I value this wooden leg more than all my other limbs put together."

Stuyvesant was a brave and good governor. He would not allow the merchants to sell whiskey to the Indians. He compelled everybody to go to church, and established schools for the children. He was very high-tempered, obstinate, and could be cross at times. If the people did not act to suit him he berated them soundly and punished them severely. He would storm up and down the village streets and abuse the merchants if they charged too much and scold the housewives if they were not attending to their duties.



PETER STUYVESANT

He made his own laws and saw that they were carried out. He had a Council of nine men, chosen by himself, to govern the colony, but since they were sleepy and self-satisfied old merchants, all they did was to smoke their pipes and let the governor have his way. But it was a very good way, and even if Stuyvesant was cross at times, he was a good and well-beloved governor under whose rule the colony prospered and the people were content.

The Dutch lived very comfortably in New Amsterdam. They built windmills for grinding corn, and breweries for making beer. They had queerly shaped houses, with odd-looking gables. In front were little stoops or porches on

which the stolid Dutch merchants sat in the evenings and smoked their long pipes. Inside the houses were huge fireplaces, where great logs of wood burned in the winter time. The floors were scoured as clean as soap and sand could make them.

The Dutch were a peaceable people. They planted their gardens, pastured their cows, indulged in their sports, and desired to be let alone in their new homes. They introduced into America the custom of celebrating Christmas by the giving of presents, and of paying calls on New Year's Day, to wish one's friends a happy and prosperous year. Many of the names of the old Dutch families are proudly borne by their descendants.

The English had by no means given up their claim to the land on which the Dutch had settled. Cabot had explored all the territory which the Dutch had named New Netherland, and the English still considered it as their own. For many years they paid no attention to the quiet Dutch at New Amsterdam. At last, when fifty years had passed and the Dutch colony had become of some importance, England decided to demand the territory from them. Accordingly, one day some English ships sailed into the harbor of New Amsterdam. The commander of the ships wrote a demand to the Dutch to surrender the town to the English.

The burghers read the summons with dismay. The English commander told them they could dwell peaceably under the English flag, otherwise their town would be

destroyed and they would be sent away. Now it made little difference to the peace-loving Dutch under whose flag they lived, so that they were let alone, but with Peter Stuyvesant, the governor, it was another matter. When he read the summons he stormed and raged and tore up the paper and swore he would defend the colony all by himself if need be.

The burgomaster called a meeting of the people, and a resolution was passed agreeing to surrender the town. A copy of it was sent to Stuyvesant, but he used it to light his pipe, and returned in great anger to his own home. The Dutch decided to surrender anyhow. The treaty was brought to Stuyvesant to sign. He threw away the pen and tore up the paper, and locked his house so that no one could get to him. The next day another treaty was brought to him and thrust in his window on the end of a pole. After three hours persuasion the irate and obstinate old governor signed the paper and tossed it out of the window.

The British soldiers then entered and took possession of the town. All the Dutch territory was given by the King of England to his brother, the Duke of York. The name of the territory and of the town was changed to New York. New York has grown to be one of the great cities of the world.

Peter Stuyvesant did not leave the colony. He retired to his farm on Manhattan Island, called the Bowery, where he lived to the ripe old age of eighty years.

13. LORD BALTIMORE AND THE COLONY OF MARYLAND

AMONG the religious sects that were persecuted in England were the Roman Catholics. Members of this sect had no religious or political rights in England. No Catholic could hold office or take any part in the government. Often they were treated harshly, were compelled to pay heavy fines, were thrown into jails, and were driven from place to place. Naturally they desired to find a place where they could worship undisturbed.

Among the Catholics in England was George Calvert. He was a friend of the king, and had been granted the title of Lord Baltimore. Lord Baltimore desired to find a colony in America for his persecuted brethren. He visited the colony in Virginia, looking for a suitable place, but was told there that he would have to take an oath acknowledging the King of England to be the head of the church. "I cannot take that oath," said he. "I am a loyal subject of the King of England, but I acknowledge the Pope only to be the head of the church." After this declaration Lord Baltimore had to retire from Virginia.

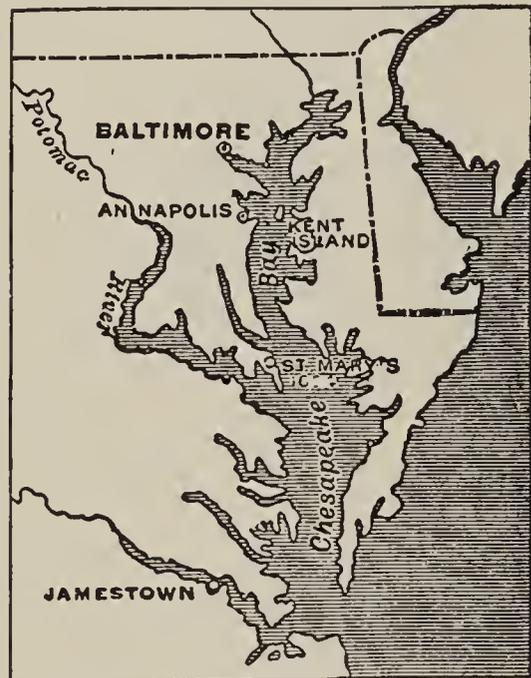
He went back to England and persuaded King Charles I to grant him a tract of land north of the Potomac River for a Catholic colony. The king made the grant and named the territory Maryland, in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria, who was a good Catholic. Lord Baltimore died soon after, and his plans were carried on by his son, Cecil Calvert, the second Lord Baltimore.

The charter of the colony contained very liberal provisions. Lord Baltimore was the proprietor of the land, with

little or no dependence upon the king. He and the colonists were allowed to make whatever laws they chose. All religions were to be tolerated, Protestant as well as Roman Catholic. In token of his allegiance, Lord Baltimore was required to send each year to the king two Indian arrowheads and a fifth part of any gold or silver he might find in his territory.

Cecil Calvert decided to send his brother, Leonard, with the colonists. Two vessels, the *Dove* and the *Ark*, brought over two hundred colonists among whom were a number of Protestants. The colonists landed near the mouth of the Potomac River and founded the town of St. Mary's. This was twenty-seven years after Jamestown was settled.

The Indians were very friendly and welcomed the colonists. Land was bought for clothes, hatchets, mirrors, jewelry, and other articles that attracted the Indians' fancy. The Indians showed the men how to plant corn. The squaws taught the women how to make "pone" and "hominy." At the first harvest the colonists sent a shipload of corn to New England in exchange for a cargo of codfish. Slaves were purchased, tobacco was planted, and the colony prospered. There was no starving time in Maryland, and



SETTLEMENT IN MARYLAND

no trouble from the Indians, as had been the case in some of the other colonies.

St. Mary's continued to be the capital of Maryland for a long time. After a while the capital was moved to Annapolis, Baltimore, and St. Mary's went into decay. After the lapse of nearly a hundred years the great city of Baltimore was begun and named for the noble founder of the colony of Maryland.

1729

14. WILLIAM PENN AND THE COLONY OF PENNSYLVANIA

ANOTHER religious sect in England that suffered persecution was the Society of Friends, or Quakers, as they are commonly called. They lived a very simple life, dressing in the plainest clothes, and living on the simplest fare. They addressed every man by his given name, and said, "thou" and "thee" instead of "you." They did not believe in war, or in going to law to settle their difficulties. They kept their hats on in church, and would not remove them in the presence of even a king. The Quakers were not allowed to hold meetings within five miles of any town, were hooted at on the streets, and many were thrown into filthy prisons.

Customs of
the Quakers



WILLIAM PENN

Among the Quakers was William Penn, a young man of distinguished family. His father was an admiral in the navy, and a friend of the king. Penn's father was mortified at his son's becoming a Quaker, and was so angry that he drove him from home. The young Penn became a Quaker preacher, and wrote books in defence of their customs. When the old admiral saw that his son could not be changed from his purpose he allowed him to return home.

William Penn

When Admiral Penn died, his son William inherited his fortune. The king owed the estate a large sum of money which he could not readily pay. William Penn proposed to the king that he settle the debt by making a grant of land in America in payment. Upon this land Penn intended to found a colony for the persecuted Quakers. The king agreed to this, and after making the grant he named the territory Pennsylvania, or Penn's Woodland, in honor of the admiral, William Penn's father. The king had granted to William Penn a territory covering 40,000 square miles, thereby making him one of the largest landowners in the world.

The story is told that upon one occasion Penn went to pay his respects to the king, Charles II. When Penn entered the room he found the king standing with his hat on, as was the custom, surrounded by his courtiers who were uncovered. They were vying with one another as to who could most flatter the king, and do him the greatest honor.

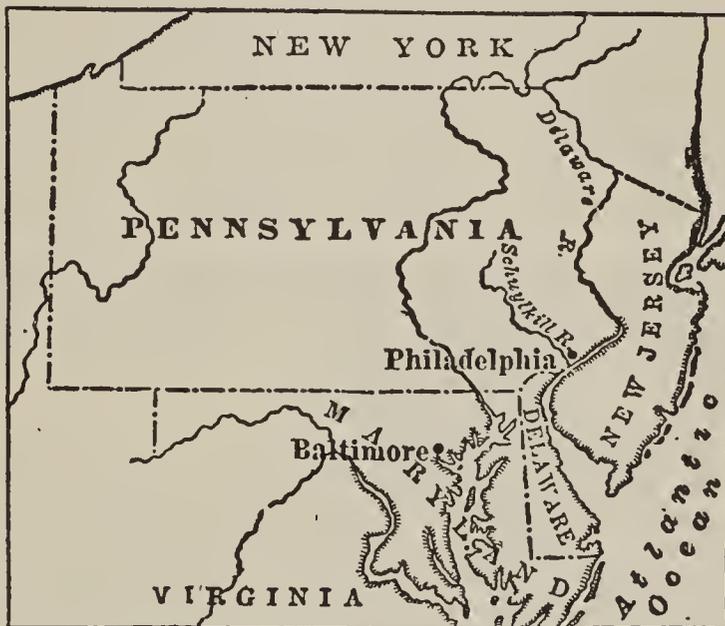
Penn came forward with his hat on. Instantly the king removed his own hat and bowed very low with much deference. "Why dost thou remove thy hat?" asked Penn of the king. "Because it is the custom of this court for only one man to remain covered," explained King Charles.

Before leaving for his grant in America, Penn called to say farewell to the king. The king jokingly told him that he would never see him again, since, in all probability, the savages would kill him. "I shall be friends with the savages," replied Penn, "and as I intend to pay them for their

lands they will not disturb me." The king was astonished, and asked Penn why he intended to buy lands that were the king's by right of discovery. "Discovery!" said Penn, "Suppose a canoe full of savages had landed in England, would they own the realm by right of discovery?" To this the king made no reply.

Three shiploads of colonists were sent over Philadelphia to America founded, 1683

at once. Penn himself soon followed with another shipload. Sailing up the Delaware River he came to a place which he chose for the site of a town. He named it Philadelphia, which means brotherly love. Colonists poured into this new town so rapidly that in four years it was larger than New York.



SETTLEMENT IN PENNSYLVANIA

15. PENN'S TREATY WITH THE DELAWARES

A FEW months after landing Penn called the chiefs of the Delaware Indians together in order to form a treaty of peace and friendship with them. The meeting occurred on the banks of the Delaware River, under a great elm tree. The Indians

Penn meets
the Dela-
wares



WILLIAM PENN MAKES A TREATY WITH THE INDIANS

sat on the ground in a half circle, while Penn and his Quaker friends, who had come to the meeting unarmed, addressed them. He called them friends and brothers, and compared the red men and the white men to different parts of the human body, all dependent upon each other, and each dependent upon all.

The red men were deeply impressed by his words, and promised to live in peace with the Quakers as long as the sun and the moon gave light. This treaty was faithfully kept by both parties. The Indians learned to love the Quakers, until it is said that the Quaker dress was a better protection from the Indians than a gun, and that when an Indian wished to express his admiration for a white man he would say, "He is like William Penn."

Penn's
treaty, June
23, 1683

The great elm under which the treaty was made remained standing for a hundred and twenty-seven years, when it was blown down in a storm. The city of Philadelphia has grown up around the place, and a monument marks the spot where the great treaty was made.

Penn always bought the lands from the Indians. He never took any territory by force. Upon one occasion he bargained for a tract of land extending as far from the Delaware as a man could walk in three days. Penn and a few friends, accompanied by the Indians, walked thirty miles in a day and a half. The rest of the journey was left to be completed later. Long after Penn's death, the whites employed a famous hunter to finish the walk. He covered sixty miles in the remaining day and a half, greatly to the chagrin of the Indians.

The boundary line between Pennsylvania and Maryland was a matter of dispute for many years. It was finally agreed to leave the matter to two surveyors named Mason and Dixon, who ran a line between the two colonies. This line became

Mason and
Dixon's line,
1763-1767

known as Mason and Dixon's line. At every mile a stone was set in the ground; on the north side the letter "P" was carved, and on the south side the letter "B" was carved. One letter stood for Penn and the other for Baltimore. This boundary line in after years became famous as the dividing line between the slave states in the South and the free states in the North.

16. THE CAROLINA COLONIES

BETWEEN the Spanish settlements in Florida and the English settlements in Virginia there was a large territory, much of which was disputed ground. The Spaniards claimed it as a part of Florida; the English claimed it as a part of Virginia. We shall see that the English paid no attention to the claims of the Spanish.

A few Virginians had ventured to make settlements along Albemarle Sound, and emigrants from New England and elsewhere had formed a colony at the mouth of Cape Fear River.

After the northern colonies were settled and flourishing, and when Virginia was about fifty years old, Charles II, King of England, granted all the Carolina territory between Virginia and Florida to eight granted, 1663 of his friends. The territory had already been named Carolina and this name was retained in the grant. The settlements along Albemarle Sound were organized into the Albemarle



SETTLEMENTS IN THE FAR SOUTH

Colony. This colony was the beginning of the state of North Carolina.

The settlements at the mouth of the Cape Fear River became known as the Clarendon Colony. In a few years a body of emigrants from England sailed up the Ashley River and founded a settlement which they named Charleston in honor of the king. This last settlement became the city of Charleston and was the beginning of the state of South Carolina.

Colonists came rapidly into Carolina. From Virginia came settlers looking for homes and adventures. From **Growth of the colony** New England came colonists seeking a mild climate, a fertile soil, and freedom from the severe laws of the Puritans. A large body of French Protestants, escaping from political and religious persecution, came to find homes in Carolina. There were colonists also from the West Indies, England, and Scotland.

The proprietors asked John Locke, a famous philosopher, to draw up a plan of government for the colony of Carolina. **The Grand Model** Locke made an unwise plan, by which lords and nobles were to control the land and make the laws. The common people were to have no voice in the government. The plan was known as the Grand Model. For twenty years the proprietors tried to work this plan but the people were so much opposed to it that it was abandoned.

The people of Carolina soon found profitable occupation in the rich pine forests that yielded lumber, tar, pitch, and turpentine. Tobacco grew abundantly in the northern

colony, and became a source of wealth to the people. A ship from Madagascar brought a bag of rice to Charleston. The grains were planted and the result was a great success. The rich, swampy lands on the coast were well suited to the cultivation of rice and it rapidly grew into importance as a crop. To cultivate the tobacco and rice, slaves were brought into the colony. So profitable was their labor that the great planters of the Carolinas had large numbers of negro slaves on their plantations in South Carolina. At one time the slaves quite outnumbered the white people.

After many years the proprietors surrendered their rights to the King of England, and Carolina was divided into two royal provinces, North Carolina and South Carolina.

17. JAMES OGLETHORPE AND THE COLONY OF GEORGIA

MANY years ago it was the custom in England to imprison persons for debt. If a man was unfortunate and owed money which he was unable to pay, his creditor had the right to put him in prison until the debt was in some way paid. In this way there were many unhappy persons in the jails of England who suffered great hardship on account of their misfortunes.



JAMES OGLETHORPE

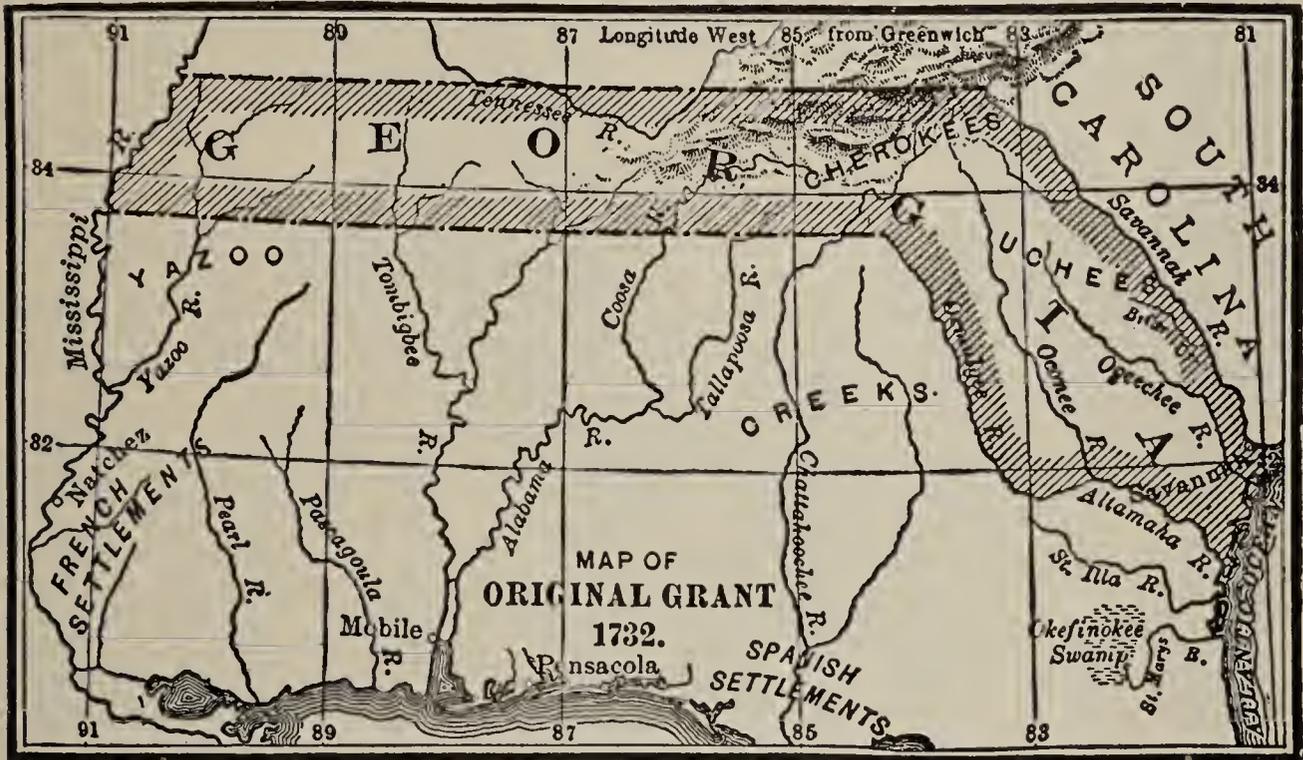
James Oglethorpe was an English soldier and statesman who became deeply interested in the condition of these unhappy debtors. He visited the jails and heard their stories and resolved to do something to aid them. Knowing there was plenty of land in America, he petitioned the king, George II, for a grant of territory between South Carolina

and Florida in which he could found a colony for the poor people of England. The grant was readily made, and the territory was named Georgia in honor of the king.

Many persons wished to join the colony. Oglethorpe received no debtor without the consent of his creditor; no criminals or wicked persons were accepted, and no person was admitted who would leave others dependent upon him for support. Oglethorpe collected thirty-five families, containing one hundred and thirty persons, and sailed with them to Georgia.

The colonists landed first at Charleston, where they were entertained by the people of that place. Oglethorpe took a few friends and went in an Indian canoe to find a site for his colony. He rowed up the Savannah River to a bluff eighteen miles from the mouth, and landed. Here he found a village of Yamacraw Indians and a trading post. Oglethorpe and the

Savannah
founded,
1733



MAP OF THE ORIGINAL TERRITORY OF GEORGIA

Indians became friends, and after a short while he brought the colonists to their new homes. The settlement was named Savannah.

Oglethorpe treated the Indians with great kindness. One of them said: "We love him because he has given us everything we wish. He has given me the coat off his back and the blanket from under him." One day an Indian strolled into the village and some one asked him if he was

not afraid. To this he replied, "I was never afraid among my enemies; why should I fear when with my friends?"

The colony of Georgia was open to the oppressed of all nations. Scarcely had Savannah been laid out when forty Jews joined the colony. A few months afterwards a ship arrived bringing a band of Salzburghers, who had been driven out of Germany

Other
colonists in
Georgia



THE PERSECUTED OF ALL LANDS WERE WELCOMED TO GEORGIA

on account of their religion. They were given a home on the river, twenty-five miles above Savannah. Later on, Swiss, Moravians, and Scotch Highlanders were given grants of land along the coast. In this way Georgia was settled and soon became a flourishing colony.

18. THE SPANISH INVASION OF GEORGIA

THE Spaniards in Florida threatened to invade Georgia, and to destroy Savannah and the other towns. Oglethorpe did not wait for them to carry out their threat but sailed with a body of soldiers to St. Augustine and bombarded the place. For twenty days his cannon threw shot and shell into the city, until over four hundred Spaniards had been killed. Oglethorpe then returned with his army to Georgia, having lost only fifty men.

Oglethorpe
attacks St.
Augustine

Two years later a Spanish army of five thousand men landed on St. Simon's Island, determined to exterminate the colony there. Oglethorpe had scarcely a thousand men to oppose them. He laid an ambush for the Spaniards, into which they marched. A deadly fire was poured upon the unsuspecting enemy, who fled into the woods leaving nearly three hundred dead. The locality was afterwards called Bloody Marsh.

Bloody Marsh

One of Oglethorpe's men had deserted and gone into the Spanish camp. The general knew that the deserter would inform the Spanish of the small size of his army, and thereupon resolved to defeat his purpose, if possible. Accordingly, he wrote to the deserter a note, telling him to be sure to inform the Spaniards that his army was small, and to keep them on the island for a few days longer so that he could attack them.

He gave the letter to a Spanish prisoner, and set him free, asking him to deliver it to the deserter. Of course the letter was a decoy letter, and, as Oglethorpe expected,

was carried by the prisoner to the Spanish headquarters. It produced great alarm in the Spanish camp. The commander thought that the deserter had deceived him, and that Oglethorpe had an immense force and would swoop down on him and capture or kill his whole army. Therefore, in great haste the Spaniards packed up and sailed away, leaving Oglethorpe in possession of the island. This ended the Spanish invasion of Georgia, and Spain made no further claim to the territory of Georgia. The question of the Spanish claim to any part of Georgia territory was settled forever.

Oglethorpe lived in Georgia for over ten years. He then returned to England, where he spent the remainder of his life in comfort, dying at the advanced age of ninety-six. He was one of the noblest men connected with the early history of our country.

Thus we see that the English colonies were firmly established along the Atlantic coast from New England to Georgia, and that the Spaniards were confined to the territory of Florida. We shall see further on in our story how both the French and the Spaniards finally gave up all the territory they owned in America.

19. THE ORIGINAL THIRTEEN COLONIES

WE have learned how different nations founded colonies in America. We have seen that the Spaniards settled in Florida, the French in Canada, and that the English colonies extended all the way between them from Maine to Georgia.

These early colonies were composed of small towns scattered along the sea coasts and rivers, while the great interior of America was as yet a wild and unknown country. It was many years before the white men knew about the rivers, forests, and plains that lay between the two oceans.

The first foothold the English had in America was in Virginia. All other efforts failed until Jamestown was settled in 1607. Virginia was the first of the original thirteen colonies, and was settled by Englishmen seeking homes, wealth, freedom, and adventure in the great new country of which all the world was talking at the time.

Then in 1620 came the Pilgrims to Massachusetts. After the Pilgrims came the Puritans, who were very much like them. From this beginning, all the New England colonies developed by the spreading out of settlements in many directions. New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Connecticut became colonies in this way, as later on did the States farther along the northern coast.

Then the Dutch came to New York, but were not allowed to stay there, for the English in New England would not permit other nations to have colonies in their neighborhood. The territory of New Jersey became a colony by grants to two English noblemen and by the absorption of Swedish

settlers who had come there to live. Maryland was started as a colony for the Roman Catholics under the good Lord Baltimore.

Pennsylvania became the home of the Quakers in 1681, under the leadership of William Penn, who afterwards added to his colony the territory now called the State of Delaware.

North Carolina and South Carolina were settled next by Englishmen, though for a long time they were but one State and called Carolina. Finally Georgia, the last of the original thirteen States, was settled by Oglethorpe, who brought over a body of poor people who could not pay their debts in England.

The names of the thirteen original colonies are: New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia.

It was clear that most of the English colonies in America were composed of people who were seeking to escape the severe laws of the Old World, and who wanted a land of freedom and opportunity in which to live in their own way. The Puritans in New England, the Catholics in Maryland, the Quakers in Pennsylvania, the Huguenots in South Carolina, the imprisoned debtors and the Germans in Georgia, all came to America to obtain freedom.

Naturally we find these colonies at the very beginning having laws that gave men freedom in every possible way.

A land of
freedom

A man might here belong to any church he chose, and worship God in any way that pleased him. In England there were two hundred crimes for which

a man might be put to death; in Pennsylvania there was only one, that of murder. In England a man's oldest son inherited all the property; in nearly all the colonies the children inherited alike. In all the colonies there was a practice that a man should enjoy the benefit of his own labors, and should pay as small a tax to the government as was possible to support it.

America, then, became a land of liberty-loving and liberty-seeking people, who would rather come to wild and forbidding shores, and brave the dangers of the seas and the terror of savages, the possibility of starvation, the cold of the winter, and the discomfort of a new country, than live under laws that were oppressive and unjust.

With this beginning, America has grown to be a country of free institutions, where one may be free in his religion, free in his speech, free in his choice of work, free to come and go and do as he pleases, so long as he does not break any of the laws that were made to protect him and his neighbors.

America,
the land of
freedom

A great writer said that "America is another name for opportunity," and so the first settlers found it. So shall we today find it if only we look around us, and enjoy the freedom our forefathers sought and gained, and, like them, are brave, industrious, and upright citizens.

America,
the land of
opportunity

QUESTIONS

1. Tell the story of Raleigh and Queen Elizabeth. For whom is Virginia named and why? What can you say of the potato and the tobacco that the colonists found in America? Where was Raleigh's

colony founded? Who was Virginia Dare? What happened to Governor White? What did he find on his return to Roanoke? What is this colony called?

2. What were the names of the two English companies that were formed to plant colonies in Virginia? Describe the settlement of Jamestown. Describe the colonists. What can you say of Captain John Smith? Tell some of his adventures. What did he make the colonists do?

3. Who was Pocahontas? How was John Smith captured by the Indians? How was he treated by the savages? How did he amuse the savages? Relate the story of the note that he wrote to his friends. What preparations were made for Smith's death? How was his life saved? Whom did Pocahontas marry?

4. How did New England get its name? Tell about the "Starving Time." How were the colonists saved? What can you say of raising tobacco? When and how was slavery introduced in America? How were wives secured for the Jamestown colonists?

5. Who were the Cavaliers and how did they live? What can you say of Sir William Berkeley? Why was he friendly to the Indians? Who was Nathaniel Bacon? What did he do? How did Berkeley act? What happened to Jamestown? What became of Berkeley? What became of Jamestown?

6. Who were the Puritans? Where had they lived? What name did they receive? What was the name of the ship that brought them to America? When and where did the Pilgrims land? Describe Miles Standish. Relate some of the adventures of Miles Standish.

7. Tell the story of Samoset and Squanto. What did Squanto teach the Pilgrims? How was Massasoit's life saved? Tell the story of Bradford and Canonicus. Describe the first Thanksgiving. By whom was Boston settled? Describe John Winthrop. How did he manage the colonists?

8. Who was Roger Williams? What were some of the Puritan doctrines he preached against? What did the Puritans declare

and what did they decide to do? What did Williams do? How was Providence founded? Who was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson and what towns did she and her followers found? Who was Thomas Hooker? What town did he and his followers found?

9. How did the English generally treat the Indians? What did they learn from the Indians? How did they protect themselves? Who was John Eliot? Describe his preaching to the Indians.

10. Who were Alexander and Philip? What happened to Alexander? What can you say of King Philip? What was King Philip's War? What was the fate of King Philip?

11. What Englishman explored the Hudson River? How did the Indians receive Hudson? Tell the story of the Indian that drank brandy. Why did the Dutch claim both sides of the Hudson River? Tell the story of the last days of Hudson. What settlements were made on the lower part of Manhattan?

12. Who was Peter Stuyvesant? What was his character? How did he control his colonists? How did the Dutch live in New Amsterdam? Why did the English demand the Dutch territory? What demand was made by the English? How did Stuyvesant treat the demand? What new name was given to New Amsterdam?

13. How were the Catholics treated in England at this time? Who was George Calvert? How did Maryland get its name? By whom was Maryland settled? How were the colonists treated by the Indians? When was Baltimore settled?

14. What were some of the customs of the Quakers? How were they treated in New England? Who was William Penn? What did William Penn propose to the king? For whom was Pennsylvania named? Tell the story of William Penn and Charles II. When was Philadelphia founded?

15. Describe the treaty between Penn and the Delawares. How did the Indians regard Penn? How did Penn always treat the Indians? How was the boundary line between Maryland and

Pennsylvania settled? What is that line called? For what did it afterwards become famous?

16. What two nations claimed the territory between Florida and Virginia? What grant did Charles II make? Of what colony was this the beginning? What settlement was the beginning of the State of South Carolina? What colonists came into this territory? What is known as the Grand Model? What industries were profitable?

17. What can you say of debtors' prisons? Who was James Oglethorpe? For what did he petition the king? When and where was Savannah founded? What did the Indians think of Oglethorpe? What other colonists came to Georgia?

18. What did the Spaniards in Florida threaten to do? What city did Oglethorpe attack? Tell the story of Bloody Marsh. Tell the story of the decoy letter. Give an account of the last days of Oglethorpe.

19. Where were the Spanish, French, and English colonies in America located? Which was the first of the original thirteen? By whom was Massachusetts settled? By whom was New York settled? By whom was Maryland settled? By whom was Pennsylvania settled? Give the names of the thirteen original colonies. Why is America called the Land of Freedom?

CHAPTER III

HOW THE FRENCH LOST AMERICA

1. MARQUETTE EXPLORES THE MISSISSIPPI

WHILE the English were making settlements in America, the French were by no means idle. Settlements had been made in Canada along the St. Lawrence River and as far as the Great Lakes. All the northern part of America by this time was claimed by the French, and Quebec had grown to be an important colony. The French outposts were far apart, extending along the Ohio, Wisconsin, and Illinois rivers, until the lands they claimed by exploration completely surrounded the lands claimed by the English.

**The French
settlements
and claims**

The wild, half-savage life of the frontier was very attractive to young Frenchmen. They liked nothing better than to dive into the deep woods, or get into light canoes and go far beyond the limits of civilization, living with the Indians until they became almost as wild as the Indians themselves.

Often these adventurous woodrangers married Indian women, and their children grew up half civilized, half savage. Sometimes these rangers stayed away from the French settlements for years, but wherever they went, and whatever they saw, they claimed it all for France.

The woodrangers, fur traders, and French pioneers had but little desire to subdue the wilderness, to cut down the forests, make farms, lay out roads, and bring the comforts of civilized life to the wilderness of the savage. They liked the roving life too well, and buying furs was much easier than raising corn.

The French villages were mere trading posts, to be used a while and then abandoned, while the rangers wandered through the woods, or plied their canoes on the rivers, buying rich furs for cheap trinkets, and going to Montreal or Quebec every year to sell what they had gathered, hoping, when they were rich enough, to go back to France. While the English were trying seriously to build up a new nation in America, the French were bent on trade with the savages or on their conversion to Christianity.

Among the French priests was Father Marquette. He and other priests built Catholic mission houses along the Great Lakes. These were little chapels made of bark, surmounted by a cross, and containing an altar. Here the good priests preached to the dusky warriors in the Indian language, trying to convert them from their savage ways. The Indians were friendly to the priests, but did not take kindly to the religion of peace and good-will.

The Indians told Marquette about a great river many miles to the west. No one could tell him into what waters it flowed. One day a Canadian trader, Joliet, came to the mission where Marquette was, and together they made plans to find out whether the river flowed into the Gulf of Mexico or into the Pacific Ocean. They

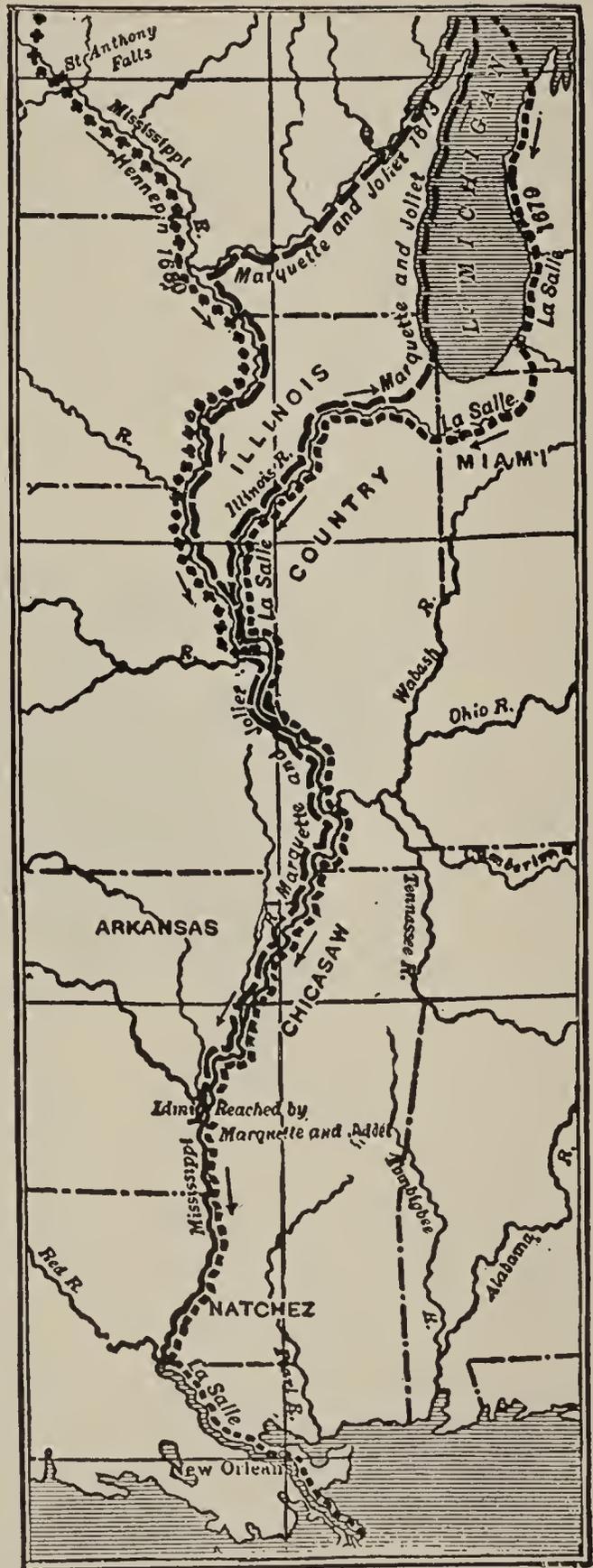
did not know they were to explore the great river which De Soto had discovered, and which we call the Mississippi.

Early in the spring, Marquette and Joliet started on their voyage.

They had two canoes and five boatmen.

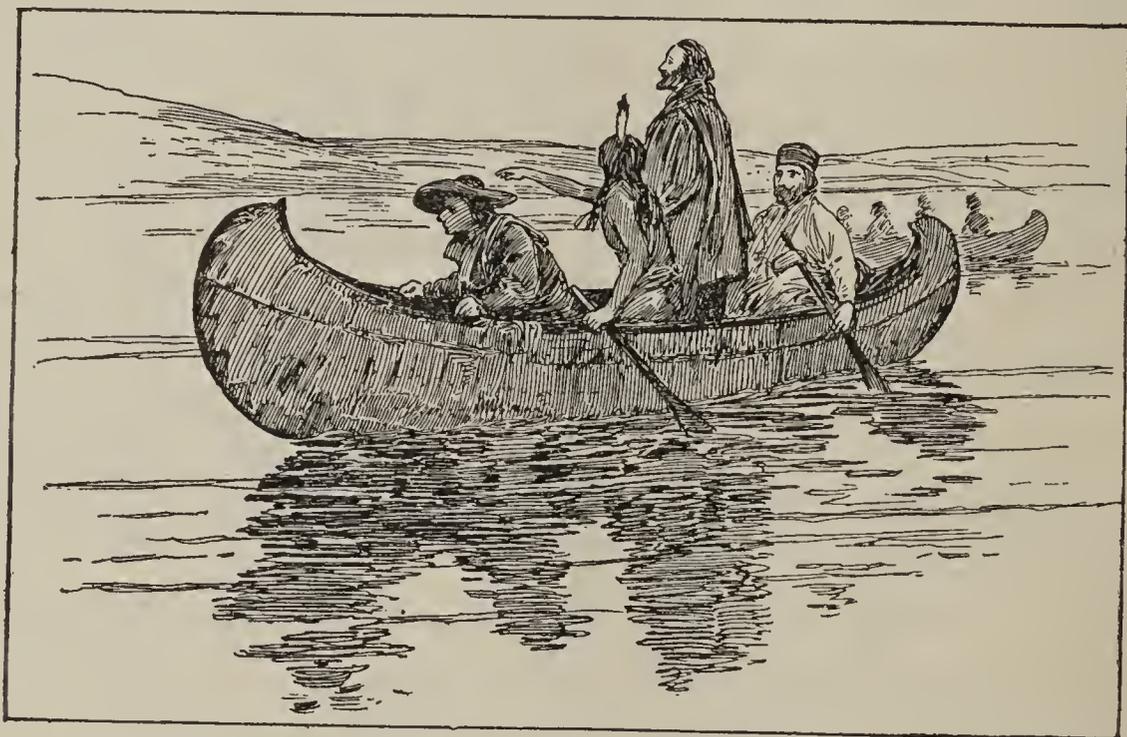
The weather was beautiful. They glided down the Wisconsin River until they came to the muddy waters of the Mississippi. On the broad bosom of this mighty stream for many days and weeks their frail canoes continued their voyage. Their course was southward. Sometimes they paddled under the shadows of great trees, then by the side of open prairies, then under overhanging bluffs. Every now and then the party would land to cook a hasty meal, but they generally slept in the canoes for fear of prowling savages and wild beasts.

Exploring
the Missis-
sippi, 1673



EXPLORERS ON THE MISSISSIPPI

One day they saw footprints on the shore. Marquette and Joliet followed the tracks until they came to an Indian village, whose inhabitants were astonished to see the white men. The Indians were friendly, and gave them plenty of food and buffalo skins. The Indians urged the white men not to go farther down the river, telling them of demons which guarded the passage.



MARQUETTE AND JOLIET ON THE MISSISSIPPI

Marquette and Joliet, however, left their newly found friends and continued their voyage. They passed the mouth of the Missouri and of the Ohio and came to the mouth of the Arkansas. At this point the Indians told the voyagers of unfriendly tribes farther down, who would not let them pass. By this time Marquette and Joliet were quite sure that the river flowed into the Gulf of Mexico. They also feared that if they went farther they might fall

into the hands of the Indians or of the Spaniards. Accordingly, they resolved to return to Canada.

The return journey was very wearisome. Joliet finally reached Canada and told the governor at Quebec of his adventures. Father Marquette returned to his mission. Death of
Marquette Nearly two years later the good priest started on a missionary journey along Lake Michigan. Worn out by work and hardship, he was so ill that his companions had to lift him into the canoe. One day they passed the mouth of a small stream and he begged the boatmen to put him ashore. The party landed, and a rude hut was built for the dying priest. As he knelt to pray, the men walked away a short distance and left him alone. When they came back Father Marquette was dead. A river near the place where he died now bears the name of this noble missionary priest.

2. THE FRENCH CLAIM LOUISIANA

NINE years after the voyage of Marquette and Joliet, Robert La Salle, a bold French explorer living in Canada, started out with a fleet of canoes and a company of Frenchmen and Indian guides, to complete the exploration of the Mississippi, to claim all the vast territory of the Mississippi Valley and the lands drained by the rivers that flowed into it in the name of the French king, and to found a great empire in the West.

Early in 1682, he began his voyage down the great river. He had a fleet of canoes, and a number of whites and Indians.

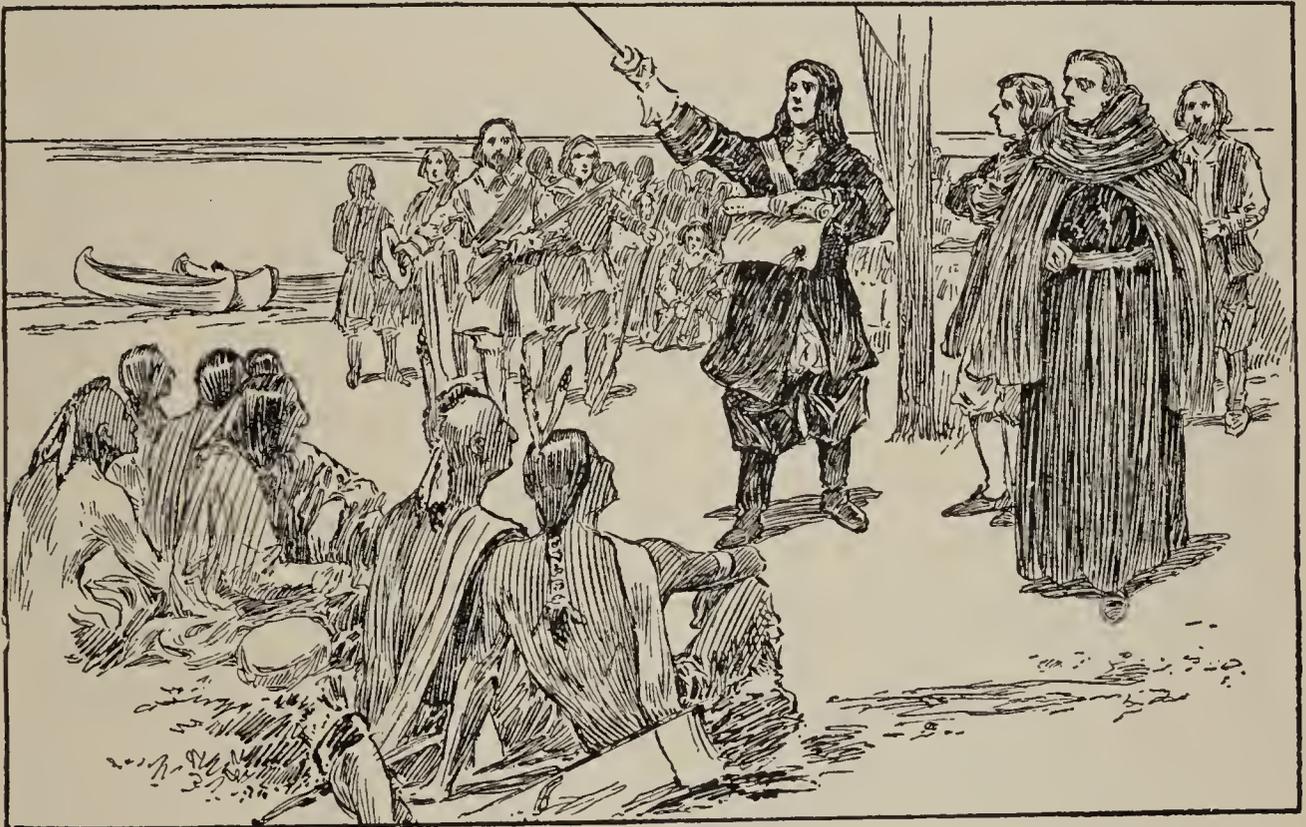
La Salle
reaches the
mouth of the
Mississippi,
1682

As they journeyed they selected sites for forts, and gave names to places, thereby hoping to get possession of the land. After much journeying and many adventures, the explorer came to the mouth of the Mississippi River. A short distance above the mouth of the river La Salle and his men landed. A cross was raised bearing the arms of France. La Salle assembled the men around him and proclaimed in a loud voice, "In the name of Louis the Great, King of France, I take possession of this country." He then named it Louisiana in honor of Louis XIV. The people shouted, "Long live the King!" Volleys of musketry were fired, hymns were chanted, and a leaden plate was buried in the earth, upon which was written, "Louis the Great reigns."

In this way did France establish a claim to all the territory drained by the Mississippi, Missouri, and other tributary rivers. It was a vast tract of land, many times larger than the possessions of the English in America.

La Salle returned to Canada, and then went to France where he told King Louis about his great adventures and his claim to all the great territory of the West. The king sent La Salle with four vessels to establish a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. But the vessels lost their way and La Salle landed somewhere on the coast of Texas. Here his followers grew weary of the

Death of
La Salle



LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI

long marches and conspired to put La Salle to death. One of his men shot him from an ambush and his body was buried somewhere in the wild regions he was exploring.

Eleven years passed before the French again undertook to colonize Louisiana. The French king placed four ships and two hundred colonists under command of Iberville, a Canadian, who had risen

Iberville

to prominence in the naval service of France, with instructions to found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. Iberville sailed across the ocean, through the Gulf of Mexico, and proceeding carefully along the coast, determined not to miss the mouth of the Mississippi.

The party entered the harbor of Pensacola, where they found a garrison of Spanish soldiers. Later on they came to Mobile Bay. Cautiously proceeding westward, they came to the low, marshy lands at



THE FRENCH IN THE OHIO VALLEY

Eighteen years after Iberville had explored the mouth of the Mississippi, Bienville, his younger brother, founded the city of New Orleans. Within four years the town had prospered so greatly that it was made the capital of the vast region called Louisiana.

France had now two important cities in America, one at Quebec and one at New Orleans, but between them lay two

the mouth of the Mississippi and turned their boats up the broad and muddy stream. Several weeks were spent in exploring the river. Iberville found no suitable place on the river for a colony. He returned to the coast and began a settlement on Biloxi Bay. Another settlement was started in a few years on Mobile Bay.

thousand miles of wilderness. To protect their claim the French, during the next fifty years, built a chain of sixty forts all the way from Montreal to New Orleans. Along the Ohio valley the French in many places selected trees, to which they nailed tin plates bearing the arms of France, and at the roots of the trees they buried leaden plates inscribed with the statement that the territory belonged to France.

During all this time the English and French were bitterly disputing their claims to American territory. For about seventy years there was war between these nations on American soil. King William's War lasted seven years, then after a short peace Queen Anne's War broke out and lasted twelve years. A long peace of thirty years passed before war broke out again; it was called King George's War. In all these wars the Indians played an important part, some being friendly and some unfriendly to the English colonies.

Wars between
the French
and English

One instance of the heroism of the times is the story of Hannah Dustin, the wife of a farmer, who lived in Haverhill, Massachusetts.

In the absence of her husband, the savages had entered the house of Mrs. Dustin, killed her little baby, and taken Mrs. Dustin prisoner. With other captives the party started on a rapid march back to Canada. In the party was a boy who understood the language of the Indians. One night as they sat around the fire, he overheard them planning to torture the captives and then put them to death.

Story of
Hannah Dustin

He told this to Mrs. Dustin and she resolved to save herself and her friends. One night when the Indians were fast asleep, she woke the boy quietly and gave him a tomahawk she had found. Then the two slipped around to the place where the Indians were, and one by one hit them all in the head, killing every Indian except one boy and a woman, who escaped. Mrs. Dustin then scalped the dead Indians, after which she and her friends started on their way home, nearly a hundred miles through the forest.

When she reached Haverhill, great was the rejoicing of her family and friends. The town paid her fifty pounds for the scalps she had brought, and her fame spread so far that even the Governor of Maryland sent her a handsome present.

3. THE YOUNG GEORGE WASHINGTON

BEFORE we go any farther with our story of the French and English conflict in America, known as the French and Indian War, let us stop long enough to find out a few facts about the early life of George Washington, one of the greatest of all Americans.

He was born in Westmoreland County, in Virginia, February 22, 1732. His home stood near the Potomac River, and was a low, one-story house, such as many farmers lived in at that day. When Washington was eleven years old his father died. His education fell to the care of his mother, who was one of the best mothers a boy ever had, and to whom her son was devoted as long as he lived.

Early life

Washington went to school as other boys did, and was a leader among his companions in running, leaping, and wrestling. He would form the boys of the school into a military company, and drill them as if they were soldiers. Then he would divide them into two armies and fight sham battles, for every boy at that time expected sooner or later to be a soldier and to fight real battles.

Washington was always an honorable and truthful boy. His mother owned a beautiful but very wild colt, which the boy undertook to ride. One morning he went to the pasture, and, with the help of some boys, caught the colt, put a bit into its mouth, and leaped on its back. The colt reared and plunged so violently that he broke a blood vessel and fell dead. Washington went straight to his mother and told her the truth about the accident. His mother was

sorry, but proud that her son did not try to conceal anything from her.

When Washington was sixteen years old, he met Lord Fairfax, an old bachelor, who owned a large tract of wild land across the Blue Ridge Mountains that he was anxious to have surveyed. Washington had learned surveying at school, and so he undertook to lay out the lands of Lord Fairfax. For many weeks he marched with chain and compass through the woods and across the streams, laying down stakes and drawing maps, living with the Indians, and learning a great deal about the hardships and customs of frontier life.

When he became nineteen years of age he was appointed adjutant-general over one of the districts of Virginia, with the title of major, and was already known as a young man of great military ability, of splendid character, and of personal bravery. All his life he had been pure, truthful, and manly.

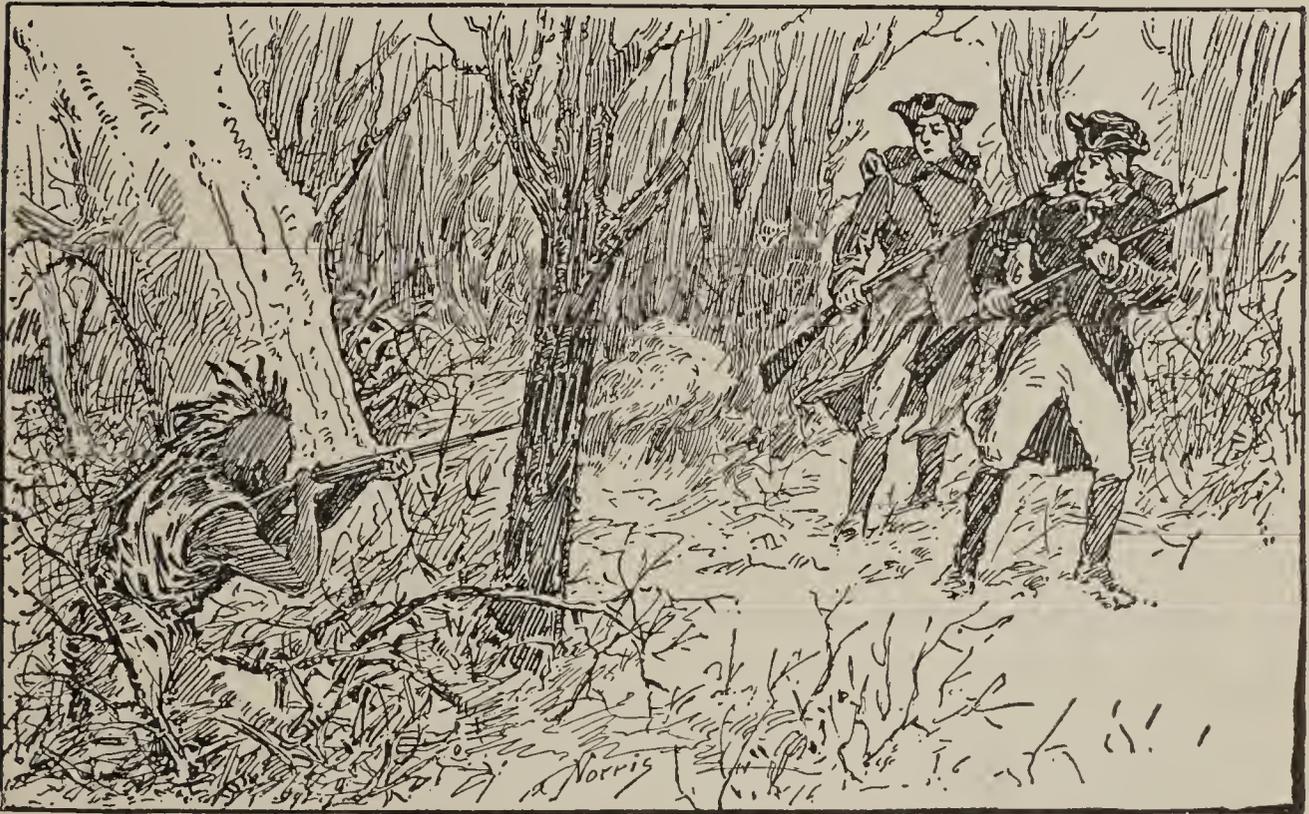
The French and English were getting ready for their final struggle to settle the question of the control of the Mississippi and Ohio valleys.

France and England both claimed the Ohio valley. The French had built forts in this region, an act which alarmed Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia. He resolved to order them to withdraw from the territory. One day he sent for George Washington, and gave him a letter addressed to one of the French officers at one of the forts not far from Lake Erie. He directed Washington to deliver the note and return with an answer.

Washington was then twenty-one years old. He knew a great deal about the Indians and the hardships of frontier life.

George
Washington

Washington saluted the governor, took the note, and with a few companions started on his journey through the wilderness. Over hills and mountains, through swamps and across rivers the party made their way. The snow was deep and the weather was



WASHINGTON IN PERIL

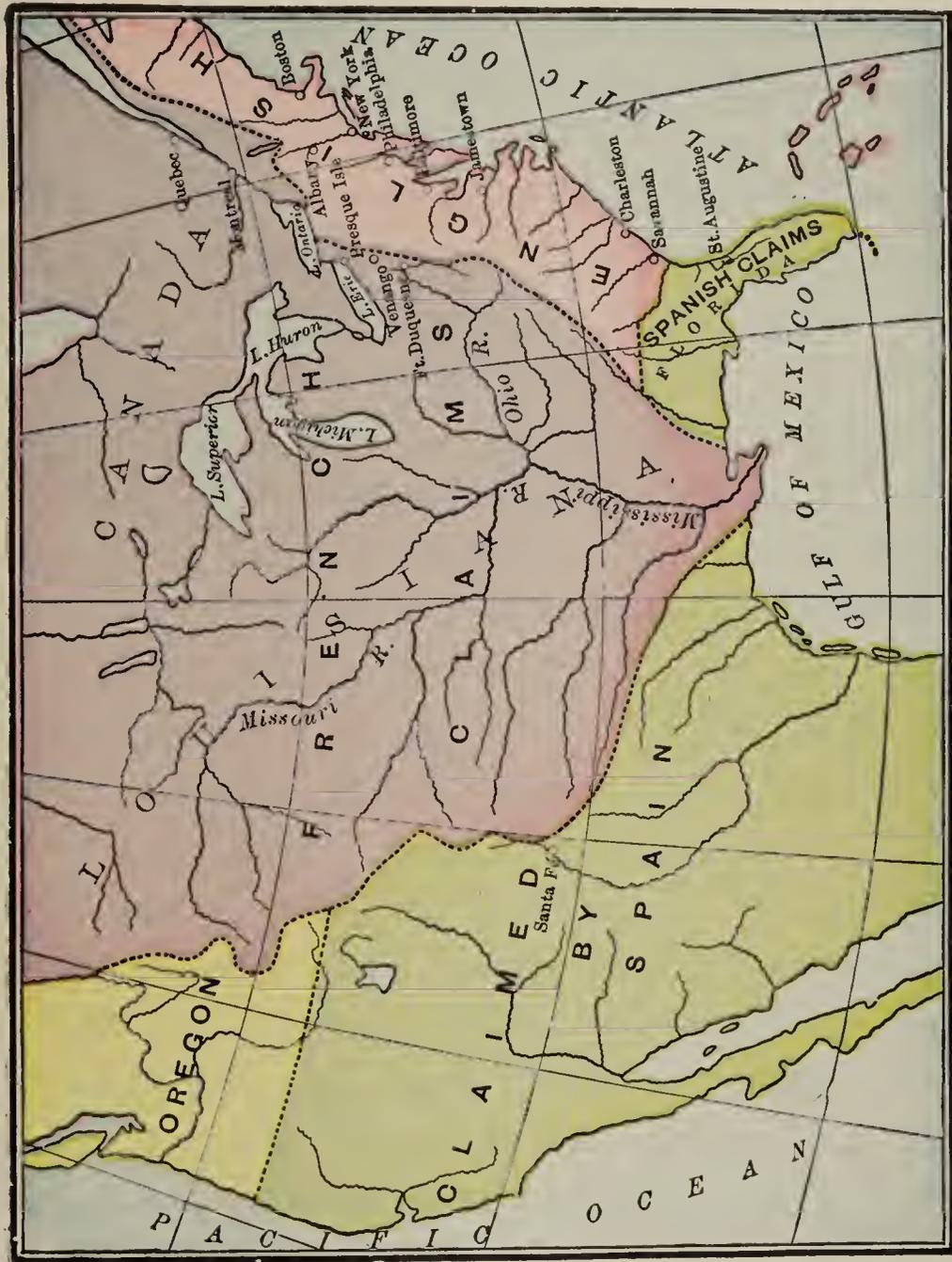
cold. At last on a bleak December day Washington and his companions reached the French fort. Governor Dinwiddie's letter was handed to the French commander, who treated Washington with much kindness, but told him that he was instructed to occupy and hold the fort, and that he

had no intention of abandoning the territory. With this answer Washington was obliged to be content.

His return journey was full of adventures. Hoping to make better time, he left his horses and started homeward on foot with a single guide. At one place Washington was shot at by an Indian, whom the guide would have killed had not Washington interfered. In crossing the Allegheny River, Washington was thrown from the raft into the icy water. He was a good swimmer and regained the raft, but was obliged to spend a bitterly cold night on an island in the river. The next morning the river was frozen over and the two went on their way.

At last Washington, after an absence of seventy-eight days and a journey of twelve hundred miles, reached Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, and reported the answer of the French commander to the governor. The answer, of course, meant war. Washington's journey had made him famous, and in Virginia he was the hero of the hour.

The French built a fort at the junction of the Allegheny and Monongahela rivers, on the site of the present city of Pittsburgh. They called it Fort Du Quesne. Washington, in command of a body of Virginia troops, marched against this fort. A short and sharp battle followed, in which ten of the enemy were killed, but Washington was not able to drive the French from their stronghold. This was the battle of Great Meadows. It was the beginning of the French and Indian War in America.



TERRITORY BEFORE THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

4. BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT

ABOUT eight months after the events recorded in the last lesson, a British general appeared at the office of Governor Dinwiddie in Williamsburg. He wore a bright uniform, and had an important, military air. This was General Braddock, who had been sent by the British government, with two regiments, to take command of an expedition against the French forts in the North and West.

Braddock set to work to collect wagons, food, and forage, and to get his army ready to move. He was a vain and impatient officer. He expressed great contempt for the plain Virginia soldiers who wore hunting clothes and had but little military training, and he boasted of what the British soldiers could do. Braddock was a good soldier, but he knew nothing about fighting Indians in a tangled forest, and his obstinacy afterwards brought him to grief.

After three months' preparation a force of thirteen hundred men began their march across the mountains to attack Fort Du Quesne. Washington was a member of Braddock's staff, with the rank of colonel. Axemen were sent on ahead to cut down the trees and prepare a road for the wagons and for the troops. Their progress was very slow. It was springtime, the weather was beautiful, the troops were well fed, and Braddock was in no hurry.

Washington warned Braddock of the ways of Indian warfare. He told him to beware of an ambush. Braddock boastingly replied, "These savages may indeed be a formid-

able enemy to your raw American militia, but upon the king's troops it is impossible for them to make any impression."

After nearly three months' marching Braddock came within a few miles of Fort Du Quesne. The French officer placed his soldiers and the Indians in the woods on either side of the road over which the English must march on their way to attack the fort.

Braddock did what Washington had cautioned him not to do; he marched straight into an ambush. On both sides was an unseen but watchful foe. Suddenly the hidden enemy opened fire on the advancing English, and whole ranks of men were slain by the flying bullets. The English regulars were in a panic. They did not know how to fight an enemy they could not see, and their bullets sank harmlessly into the trees or went uselessly into the air. They broke and ran in great disorder.

Braddock rushed into the fight and fell from his horse, shot through the lungs. Washington and the Virginia militia covered the retreat as best they could. Washington seemed to bear a charmed life. Four bullets pierced his coat and two horses were killed under him, but he escaped unhurt. Everything fell into the hands of the French, and the English scattered in all directions for safety. Four days later Braddock died, saying in his last moments, "We shall know better how to deal with them next time." When he was buried Washington himself, by the light of a pine torch, read the burial

Braddock's
defeat, July
9, 1755

Death of
Braddock

service, and the body of the brave, but foolish, general was laid away in the wild woods of western Pennsylvania. He had requested that his body be protected from the Indians. Accordingly he was buried in the middle of the road, and the whole army passed over his grave.

Three years later Fort Du Quesne was captured from the French and its name changed to Fort Pitt. When the French left Fort Du Quesne Washington himself was present and with his own hands placed the English flag upon the ramparts. He then returned to Virginia and was elected a member of the House of Burgesses.

When he came to take his seat, the Speaker of the House rose and thanked him for his services. Washington was no orator, and when he tried to respond he was so embarrassed that he could not say anything. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the Speaker. "Your modesty exceeds your valor, and that is beyond the power of language to express."

5. THE CAPTURE OF QUEBEC

THE city of Quebec is situated mainly on a bluff overlooking the St. Lawrence River. It had been the headquarters of the French in America for one hundred and fifty years. By this time it was a large and prosperous city, strongly fortified and heavily garrisoned. The English resolved to capture Quebec and thus end the war.

Among the bravest of the British officers was James Wolfe. He was now thirty-two years of age, and highly regarded for his ability and courage. He was very gentle in his nature, and had always been a devoted and dutiful son. His face was as smooth as that of a girl, but behind his soft and tender exterior beat the heart of a lion.

The capture of Quebec was entrusted to Wolfe. He was in poor health at the time, and was always made ill by a sea voyage. His aged father needed his son's presence in England, and his sweetheart, to whom he expected shortly to be married, urged him to stay at home. But Wolfe said that if his country needed his services he was ready to go.

Wolfe arrived before Quebec with his fleet of vessels. Three hundred and more feet above the river frowned the great precipice, on the top of which lay the better part of the city. There was the French commander, the Marquis de Montcalm, with a strong army ready to defend the citadel. When Wolfe saw the task before him he was indeed discouraged. However, he set about a regular siege of Quebec, bombarding that portion of the city

Siege of
Quebec

that lay along the river bank, and engaging the troops of Montcalm whenever he had an opportunity.

For two months and more the siege lasted. Wolfe was ill most of the time and very despondent. At length he hit upon a desperate plan that would be a great success or a great disaster; he resolved to scale the precipice with his troops and drive Montcalm from his citadel.

One dark night the boats were lowered, filled with soldiers, and noiselessly rowed to the shore. Wolfe was in the foremost boat. The men landed and silently began to climb the precipice. Montcalm had said that the English could never reach the citadel by that route unless they had wings, and, consequently, had not guarded the approach. When near the top the English were discovered by a sentinel, who gave the alarm.

Montcalm could hardly believe the report that the English had reached the Plains of Abraham, as the heights were called. He hastily mounted his horse and ordered his troops into battle. Wolfe was, of course, unmounted. Ill though he was, and carrying only a cane in his hand, he vigorously directed the troops. He ordered them to lie down so that the fire of the French would pass over their heads. When the enemy came within forty yards, the English troops rose and poured a deadly volley into their faces. That one discharge settled the issue of the battle.

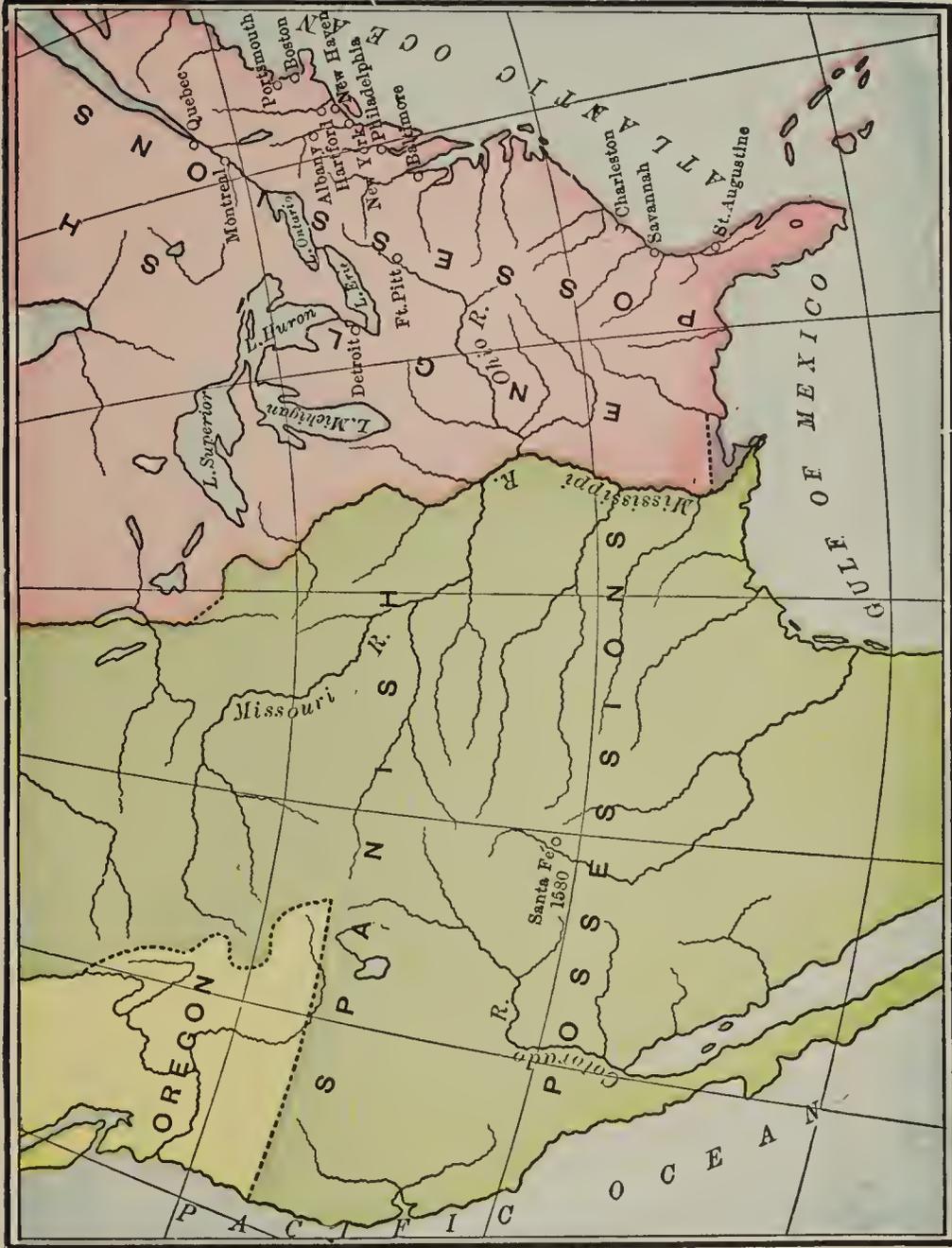
Montcalm was wounded and was borne from the field. Later on, as the English troops pressed forward, Wolfe was shot in the breast. "Support me," said he to an officer near him; "let not the brave fellows see me drop."

He was borne to the rear and in a short while heard the soldiers shouting "They run! They run!" "Who run?"

Death of Wolfe and Montcalm he asked. "The French," was the answer. "God be praised," said the hero; "I die in peace." In a few moments he breathed his last

Montcalm also lay dying of his wound. When told he could not live, he said, "I am glad of it." When told he would die in ten or twelve hours he said, "So much the better. I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

Quebec surrendered, and the power of the French in America was broken forever. By a treaty with England they gave up Canada, and all their possessions east of the Mississippi. England came into control of the larger portion of North America. Henceforward, we were to be an English and not a French nation.



TERRITORY AFTER THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

6. LIFE IN THE COLONIES

A HUNDRED and fifty years had passed since the settlement of Jamestown. English colonies had been established along the Atlantic coast all the way from New Hampshire to Georgia. They had a population of about a million and a half. The French had surrendered Canada and the region east of the Mississippi to the English. The Spaniards owned Florida and the regions beyond the Mississippi River.

There were a few large cities, such as Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and Charleston, but for the most part the villages were small and had all the appearance of pioneer settlements.

The early colonists in America had few comforts, much hardship, and but little pleasure. Sometimes on landing there was no better shelter than the caves in the hillsides. It took a strong will and a sturdy body to withstand the trials and exposures of the first settlers.

The first houses were cabins made of logs notched at the ends, with the cracks filled with mud to keep out the cold. Instead of window glass the colonists used oiled paper; in place of wooden floors the ground was packed hard and covered with sand; in place of lamps or candles, the great fireplace furnished light as well as heat.

The first
houses

Around these cabins in winter often the snow drifted, and the wolves howled. In the villages and in the frontier cabins there was always danger of Indian massacres. The colonist worked with his gun by his side and slept with it by his bed, not knowing when the war whoop of the savages

would summon him to protect his wife and children from massacre, and his cabin from destruction. He depended upon his rifle to supply game for food, to furnish skins for clothing, to protect his family from the savages, and to defend his home from a foreign enemy. The frontiersmen of America were the best marksmen in the world. At a distance of a hundred yards a



A BLOCKHOUSE FOR DEFENCE AGAINST INDIANS

mark of the size of a silver dollar was as large a target as they needed.

The early pioneer had to battle with a heartless wilderness. Life with him was hard and stern. He had no time or inclination for amusement. Therefore, he severely condemned such follies as dancing, playing cards, wearing fine clothes, and going to the theatre; they were sinful and wasteful pleasures. If he desired sport he found it in shooting at a mark, in hunting wolves

and bears, in fights between wild beasts and his dogs, in wrestling, and in all kinds of hardy games.

Gradually, however, as the settlements grew into towns and the towns grew into cities, better houses were built and more comforts were added. Furniture and utensils were brought over from England, glass was used for windows, the houses were painted, and some comforts of civilization began to appear.

In Virginia and other Southern colonies the large planters often built stately mansions, with great halls, wide verandahs, and tall columns. There were many slaves to work the fields, the climate was mild, and the people were hospitable. Life became very easy and comfortable for the great landowners of the plantations in the Southern colonies.

Most of the supplies of the colonists came from England. Ships brought in shoes, clothing, tools, and furniture, and returned loaded with tobacco, furs, lumber, dried fish, whale oil, molasses, and other things the new world afforded. Therefore, there were not many factories in America, for the people devoted themselves mainly to fishing, farming, and trading with the Indians. In New England the main industry was fishing and ship-building. In New York the fur trade along the Great Lakes and the Canadian borders was most profitable. In Pennsylvania the people raised wheat and other grains; the Southern colonies supplied tobacco, corn, and sugar.

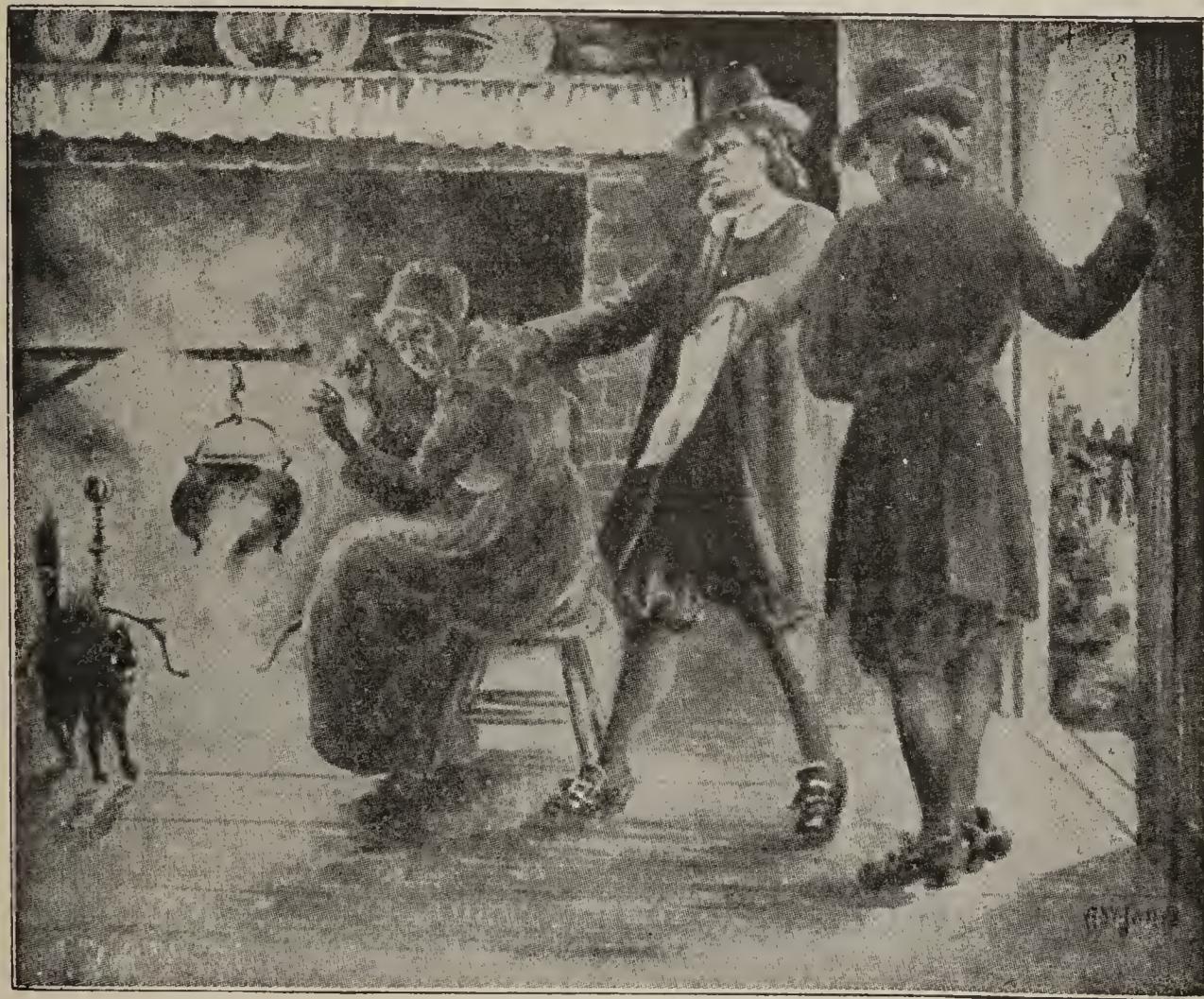
7. CUSTOMS IN THE COLONIES

SUNDAY was strictly observed in all the colonies. Any diversion or work on Sunday was punished by a fine or by imprisonment. It was forbidden to fish, shoot, sail a boat, or do any kind of work. Horses were to be used only for going to church and not then if it was possible for the family to walk. There was little or no cooking allowed on Sunday, so everybody ate cold food on that day. Nor was any one allowed to use tobacco in or near any meetinghouse. The Sabbath began at sunset on Saturday, and ended at sunset on Sunday.

Everybody was compelled to go to church. The church was usually cold and uncomfortable in winter, the sermons were always long, sometimes lasting two or three hours. Often a single prayer lasted one hour while everybody knelt on the cold floor. Nobody dared to sleep, for the tithingman was on guard to rap the men on their heads with a rabbit's foot on one end of his stick, or tickle the women's noses with a rabbit's tail on the other end of his stick, if they nodded for a moment.

The colonists believed in punishment. If a man stayed away from church, or wore fine clothes that he could not afford, or chewed tobacco near the meetinghouse, or went hunting or fishing on Sunday, or told a lie, or drank too much whiskey, he was brought before the magistrate and punished. If a woman was a common scold, she was ducked in the water. If a man was a drunkard, he was compelled to wear a big "D," made of red cloth, sewed to his coat.

The pillory and stocks were set up in the village green, or in some other public place. Offenders were made to stand in the pillory or to sit in the stocks, so that passers-by could see them and make sport of them.



CHARGED WITH BEING A WITCH

If a person was condemned to be hanged, the execution was in public, and was made a great occasion. People came from miles around to witness the scene, and preachers made long speeches warning the people against sin.

Among the curious superstitions of New England was the belief in witches. We know that there are no such things as witches, but in those days people thought that Satan and the evil spirits entered into men and women and led them to do many wicked things. If the cattle died, if there was a drought, if anybody fell down in a fit, or if anything unusual or dreadful happened, people said a witch did it, and began to accuse some one of witchcraft. The belief in witchcraft became worse in Salem, Massachusetts, than anywhere else.

Some children who claimed to have fits when certain persons came near them, charged these persons with being witches. They even described the witches' sacrament, and said that one of the witches had asked them to sign the devil's book. These foolish stories were believed by the people. Then one person began to accuse another. The madness spread and everybody seemed in danger of being called a witch. Many were thrown into prison; nineteen were hanged, and one aged man, who refused to open his mouth in his own defence, was cruelly pressed to death between two stones. The people at last came to their senses, the prison doors were opened, and reason resumed its sway.

8. DISCOMFORTS IN COLONIAL DAYS

IN colonial times people suffered much discomfort. There were no stoves, and cooking was done in fireplaces. There were no knives and forks except for the wealthy, and ordinary folks ate with their fingers; there were no china dishes, and everybody, except those who could afford pewter, ate from wooden bowls or trenchers. Such things as kerosene oil, coal, and matches were quite unknown. Steamships, railroads, electric cars, telegraphs, and telephones, so familiar and necessary to us, had not been dreamed of.



IN OLD STAGECOACH DAYS

Traveling in those days was avoided as much as possible. If one had to make a journey he went on horseback, if possible, and generally along with other travelers for protection. After a while the stagecoach began to ply between the large towns, passing through the villages. Traveling was slow and wearying. A stagecoach took three days to go from New York to Philadelphia, a journey now made in less than two hours.

Traveling

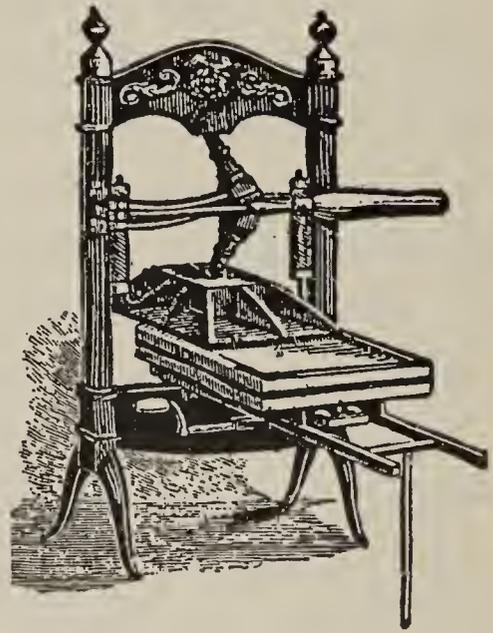
The stagecoach was without springs and cushions, the horses usually were overworked, the roads were full of ruts, and often so muddy as to be almost impassable. The coach generally started at three o'clock in the morning, no matter how cold the weather. The horses were changed at intervals. The traveler was jolted along for eighteen hours until he was put down at an inn, where he was offered very bad food and a very hard bed. Before daybreak the next morning he was off again, and so on for a week, at the end of which time a traveler from Boston found himself in New York, more dead than alive.

If a wealthy man was compelled to travel he went in his own coach, attended by his own servants, and was given entertainment by hospitable people who lived along the road. In Virginia, where the inns were so bad that one could hardly endure them, and the homes of the planters were large enough to hold many guests, it was the custom to station a servant at the gate of a great country mansion, and all travelers were invited to stop and spend the night.

There was but little mail in those days. All the letters for the entire country delivered during a whole year were not equal to the letters of New York city now delivered in one day. The mail was carried by post riders, who set out at irregular times on their journey by the bridle paths and trails through the forest when there was enough mail to pay for the expense of delivery. Some places received mail but once a month. There were no

postage stamps, but letters were paid for according to length. There were not forty newspapers printed in all the colonies at this time, and these were small sheets containing little news.

There were not many public schools in colonial days such as we have now. Most of the schools were private schools supported by the church. In the large cities there were a few good schools. In Massachusetts there was a law requiring every community of fifty or more families to support a free school. Harvard College in Cambridge, Massachusetts, and William and Mary College in Virginia were among the earliest of the colleges to be founded in America. In the Southern colonies the rich planters had private tutors for their families or sent their children to England to be educated. For the great mass of the people everywhere the schools were very badly equipped, the term was short, and books very hard to get.



AN OLD HAND PRINTING
PRESS

9. SERVANTS AND SLAVES

LABORERS were greatly needed by the colonists in early times. There was an unlimited demand for servants, for workmen of all kinds, and for hands to cultivate the fields. The demand far exceeded the supply. To meet this need a great many poor white girls and boys, and even men and women, were brought over from England, their employers paying their passage over, and allowing them to pay it back by their labors after their arrival.

Even criminals were sent over and sold into service to the farmers and small manufacturers, but this practice was not popular, since criminals were as dangerous in one part of the world as in another. It also happened that gangs of kidnappers seized men and even children in the alleys and along the wharves in London and other English towns and hurried them on board ships to be sold into service in America. Probably as many as ten thousand vagabonds and criminals were thus sent into the colonies.

But the need for a large and reliable laboring class had to be met, and Africa was the easiest country from which to get it.

We have already seen that in the year 1619, a Dutch ship brought a load of negroes to Jamestown and sold them to the planters in that colony. It was not long before slavery found its way into all the colonies, and negro slaves were found in Boston, New York, and Philadelphia, as well as in Charleston and Savannah.

In those days it was not considered wrong to hold negroes in slavery. There were many who believed that the condition of the negro was improved by bringing him from the darkness of Africa and putting him into 'civilized and Christian communities. Therefore the slave trade flourished.

The slave
trade

Slave ships from New England carried cargoes of fish and other things to European ports, then sailed along the African coasts and bought negroes who had been captured in the wars among the tribes, and returned to America with their unhappy prisoners. Many died on the voyage, and their bodies were thrown into the sea.

Slave ships

When a slave ship arrived in port and it was announced that a cargo of negroes was for sale, the slave dealers gathered by the ship's side or in the slave market of the town. The owners sold the negroes by auction or at private sale to the dealer, who, in turn, sold them to the farmers for field hands, or to people of the town for house servants.

The slave
dealer

The negroes were generally quiet and good-natured. They went to their work cheerfully, soon learned the English language, and adopted the dress and customs of their masters. Certainly they fared better in America than they did in Africa, except that they were slaves, and for that they did not seem to care.

Slavery in

In New England the negroes were mainly used for house servants. The climate, however, was too severe for them. They did not thrive in a region of snow

New England

and ice, to which they were not accustomed. In the Southern colonies, where the climate was more like that of Africa, and where agriculture was the main occupation of the people, the negroes thrived well.



OLD-TIME SLAVE QUARTERS

The Southern planters bought the negroes from the slave traders, gave them comfortable homes in the slave quarters, and put them to work in the tobacco fields and the rice swamps. In this way a great slave system grew up in the South under circumstances which seemed fortunate and right at the time, and to which no

Slavery in
the South

one raised any objection. The negroes were generally well treated, were happy in their new homes, became devoted to their masters, and were satisfied with the condition that fate had awarded them.

QUESTIONS

1. What can you say of the French outposts in America? What can you say of the French woodrangers? Describe the French frontier villages. Upon what did the French seem bent? What had Father Marquette and other priests done? What had they heard? Describe the voyage of Marquette and Joliet. What river did they explore?

2. What was the purpose of Robert La Salle? What did La Salle do when he reached the mouth of the Mississippi? What claim was established by his exploration? Describe the death of La Salle. Describe the explorations of Iberville. What were the first settlements in Louisiana? When was New Orleans founded? How did the French protect their claims? What wars ensued between the English and the French? Describe the heroism of Hannah Dustin.

3. When and where was George Washington born? Describe his early life. Give some incidents illustrating his character. What service did he perform for Lord Fairfax? What did Governor Dinwiddie direct Washington to do? Describe Washington at the time. Describe the journey and the delivery of the message to the French. Describe the return journey. Where did the French build a fort and what did they call it? Describe the battle of Great Meadows.

4. Describe General Braddock. What preparations did he make for his campaign? What kind of officer was Braddock? Describe Braddock's march. Of what was he warned and what did he reply? Describe Braddock's defeat and his death. What

name did Fort Du Quesne afterwards receive? How did Washington show his modesty?

5. Describe the city of Quebec. What can you say of James Wolfe? What was the name of the French commander? Describe the scaling of the precipice. Describe the death of Wolfe and of Montcalm. What was the result of the surrender of Quebec?

6. Describe the condition of the colonies at this time. Describe the hardships of the colonists. Upon what did they depend largely? What were the sports of the colonists? What follies were severely condemned? What improvements were gradually made? Describe life in Virginia. What were some of the industries of the colonists?

7. What was forbidden on Sunday in colonial times? When did Sunday begin and when did it end? Describe church service. What were some of the punishments in colonial times? Describe the pillory and the stocks. Describe public hangings. What can you say of the belief in witches? How were witches punished?

8. What were some of the discomforts of colonial times? How did people travel? Describe a journey by stagecoach. What hospitality was shown to travelers? What can you say of mail? How was mail carried? What can you say of schools in colonial times? What colleges were among the first to be founded in America?

9. How was the demand met for laborers in America? What can you say of the importation of criminals and vagabonds? To what extent did slavery spread in America? Describe the slave trade. Describe slave ships and slave dealers. What can you say of the negroes themselves? Why was New England unsuited for slavery? Why did a great slave system grow up in the South?

CHAPTER IV

HEROES OF THE REVOLUTION

1. PATRICK HENRY

THE king of England seemed to care very little for the American colonies, except in the way of trade. The colonists were not allowed to trade with any merchants except English merchants. They ^{Trade laws} were not allowed to manufacture cloth or hats, or to make anything out of iron, but were required to send the wool, fur, and iron to England to be manufactured there. Goods had to be carried in English vessels manned by English sailors. They had to pay heavy duties on sugar, molasses, and other things which they needed.

The French and Indian War had cost a great deal of money. The British government declared the war had been fought largely in defence of the colonies ^{Taxation} in America, and that they must pay their share of the expense. The colonists would not have objected had they been consulted as to the raising and the amount of taxes, but they did object to being taxed without having a word to say about it. This was "taxation without representation," and was little short of tyranny.

The British Parliament passed the Stamp Act, which required all bonds, deeds, licenses, and contracts to be

written on stamped paper. This paper was stamped in England, brought to America, and the colonists were required to buy it. It cost from one cent to fifty dollars a sheet, according to its use. The Stamp Act caused great indignation in America. The colonists refused to buy the stamped paper and declared King George to be a tyrant.

The great mass of the English people had nothing to do with the making or carrying out of these unjust laws. Only a small portion of the people were allowed to vote, with the result that Parliament was composed largely of the king's friends, as blind and obstinate as the king, George III, himself. The body of the people had much the same mind about oppressive laws as did the colonists, and many of them sympathized in secret with their kindred over the seas.

The greatest and wisest men in Parliament, such as Burke, Fox, Barré, and Pitt, stoutly denied the justice or wisdom of the acts of Parliament. Pitt exclaimed, "I rejoice that America has resisted." But George III would have his way, and the result was a war by which he lost his most valuable colonies in the new world.

Among the great orators in America of that time was Patrick Henry, of Virginia. He was employed as counsel in the case of the clergymen who were suing the Virginians for their salaries. The dispute arose about the value of tobacco in which the salaries were paid, and Henry was employed to represent the people against the clergymen. It was known as the "Parsons' Case."

On the day that Henry spoke, the courthouse was crowded. Henry's father was one of the judges. It was Henry's first speech, and his beginning was timid and awkward; but gaining in self-possession he made such an eloquent plea that the jury awarded the clergymen just one penny for damages.

Oration in
the Parsons'
Case

Henry became a member of the House of Burgesses of Virginia. News came that the Stamp Act had been passed. Henry listened to the speeches of others, but he thought they were too timid to express what the occasion demanded.

Reaching for an old law book, he tore out a blank page, wrote a resolution on it, had it read to the members, and then began to speak. It was one of the great speeches of

the Revolution, and the members listened spellbound by his fearless eloquence. He concluded his speech by saying: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I his Cromwell, and George III . . ."

At this point several members cried out "Treason! Treason!" Henry was not afraid, but turning towards them



PATRICK HENRY ADDRESSING THE
BURGESSES

said, "George III may profit by their example!" Henry expressed the feelings of all the colonists.

Seeing the determination of the people, the British government repealed the Stamp Act, and quiet was restored for a while in America.

2. SAMUEL ADAMS

THE king's troops were in Boston trying to overawe the people. They paraded the streets by day, and with their drunken shouts and brawling disturbed the quiet of the night. On Sunday they raced horses on the Common, and sang rude songs before the church door. They insulted the people and often came to blows with the citizens, who made sport of them, calling them "redcoats," and other names.

One night a body of citizens had a quarrel with some soldiers on the streets of Boston. From angry words they came to blows. Some one rang the church bell, and a crowd rushed into the moonlit streets. They pressed upon the file of soldiers, who unexpectedly fired their guns, killing several of the citizens, and wounding others. This is known as the Boston Massacre.

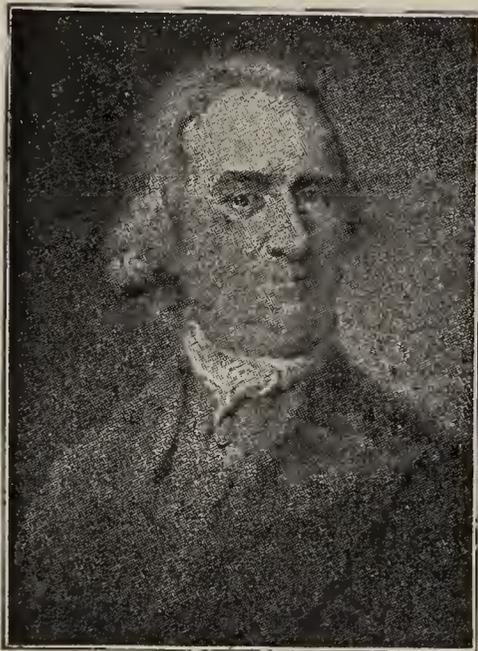
The Boston
Massacre,
March 5,
1770

Samuel Adams, then fifty-eight years of age, who is known as "The Father of the Revolution," was a leading citizen of Boston. He had written much about the tyranny of the king and the oppression of the British laws, and had urged the people everywhere firmly to resist all oppressive measures. A great meeting of the citizens of Boston was held the day after the massacre. They resolved that the British soldiers must leave Boston. Adams took their message to the governor.

Calling upon the governor, Adams made the demand. "I will remove one regiment," replied the governor. Whereupon Adams, pointing his finger at him, said, "The voice

of ten thousand freemen must be respected, and their demands obeyed. If you have power to remove one regiment, you have power to remove the other. Sir, it is both regiments or none." The governor, in alarm for his own safety, ordered the troops to leave Boston immediately.

The British Parliament laid a tax on tea, glass, paper, and a few other things. The colonists resisted all these taxes,



SAMUEL ADAMS

and refused to buy any of the articles taxed. The ships carrying tea lay idle in the harbors. Nobody would drink tea so long as it was taxed.

Several tea ships lay in the harbor of Boston. The citizens would not allow the tea to be landed, and the ships could not depart. The customhouse officers were on the point of seizing the tea and storing it in the town. Seven thousand people gathered in and about the Old South Meeting House, and Adams presided over the meeting. He had hoped for news that the ships would sail away, but no such news coming, he arose and said quietly, "This meeting can do nothing more to save the country."

Hardly had he finished, when shouts were heard in the streets. A body of citizens dressed as Indians were on their way to the ships to "see how tea would mix with salt water." Adams probably knew about it beforehand and

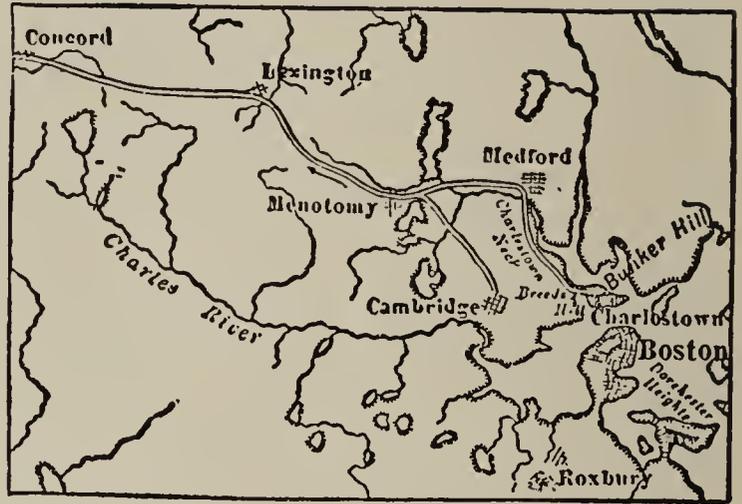
had helped to devise this plan of destroying the tea. The crowd followed the disguised citizens, the ships were boarded, the tea was thrown into the water, and the people quietly dispersed to their homes. This is known as the Boston Tea Party.

**The Boston
Tea Party,
December
16, 1773**

Samuel Adams became a member of the Continental Congress at Philadelphia, and was received with great honor wherever he went. He lived to see the independence of the American colonies and the formation of the American Union. In his old age he was elected governor of Massachusetts a few years before his death.

3. THE MINUTEMEN AT LEXINGTON

THE British troops were again in Boston, and General Gage was in military command. Gage had orders to arrest John Hancock and Samuel Adams, and send them to England for trial. Upon hearing that they were in Lex-



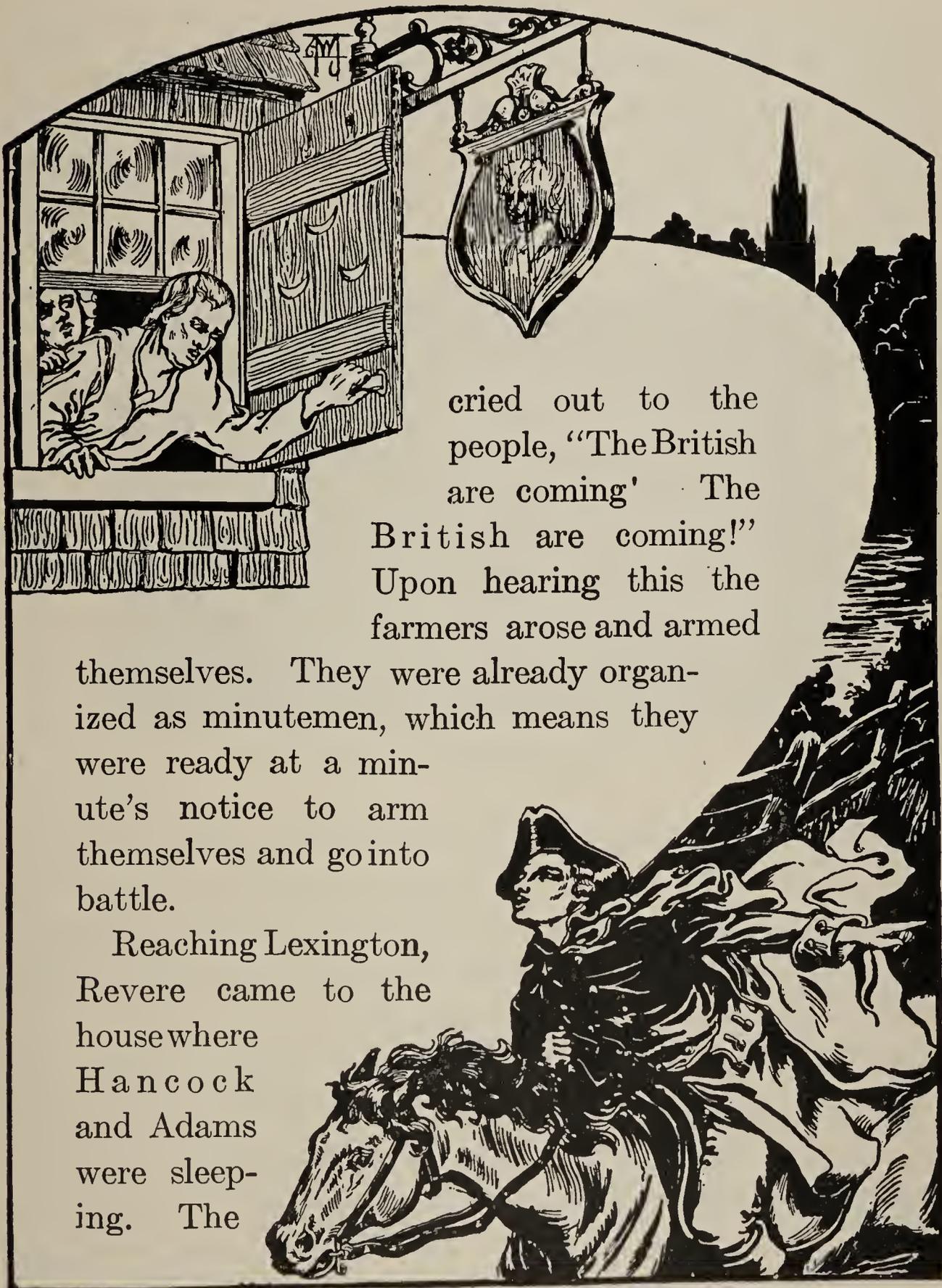
PAUL REVERE'S RIDE



OLD NORTH
CHURCH

ington, visiting a friend, he resolved to capture them there, as well as to destroy the arms and provisions which the patriots had collected at Concord, a few miles beyond Lexington.

One night a force of eight hundred troops marched out of Boston on their way to Lexington. The purpose Paul of Gage, however, had been Revere's ride discovered. Across the Charles River Paul Revere, his horse by his side, waited for the signal that the troops had started. The signal was a lantern to be hung in the belfry of the North Church; one lantern if the troops went by land, two if they went by sea. The signal appeared, and Revere dashed off in the darkness ahead of the troops. As he flew along he

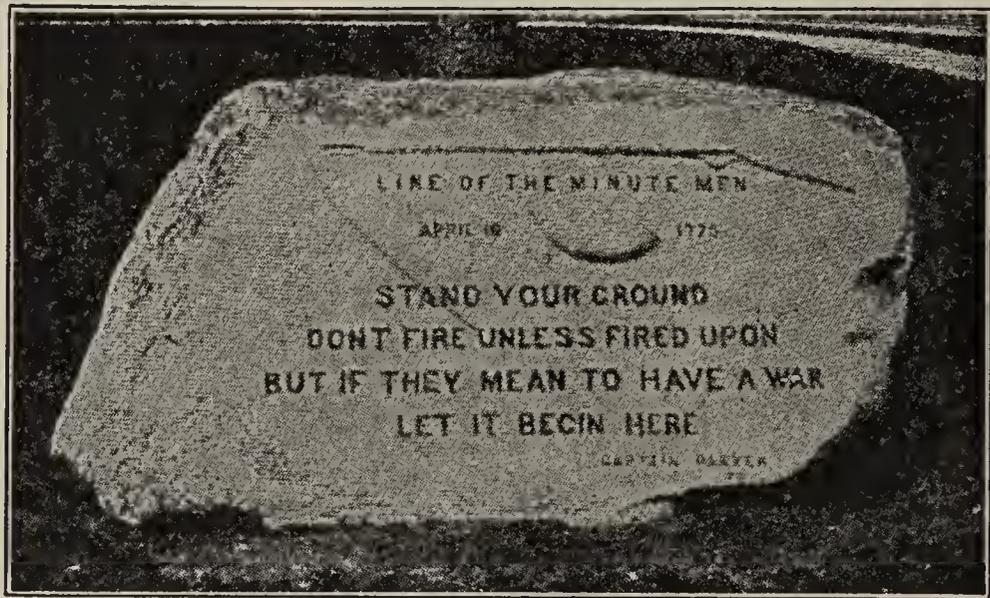


cried out to the people, "The British are coming' The British are coming!" Upon hearing this the farmers arose and armed

themselves. They were already organized as minutemen, which means they were ready at a minute's notice to arm themselves and go into battle.

Reaching Lexington, Revere came to the house where Hancock and Adams were sleeping. The

house was guarded, and the sergeant told Revere not to make so much noise. "Noise!" cried Revere, "there will be noise enough before long; the regulars are coming!" Hancock recognized Revere's voice, and from an upper window asked what was the matter. Upon being informed, he and Adams dressed quickly and escaped.



THE LEXINGTON TABLET

By sunrise the troops reached Lexington. Fifty mounted men were drawn up on the village green under command of Captain John Parker. Parker had said to his men, "Stand your ground; don't fire unless fired upon; but if they mean to have a war, let it begin here."

Major Pitcairn, the British officer, rode forward and shouted, "Disperse, ye villains!" But the patriots stood firm. Pitcairn gave orders to fire, but his troops hesitated. Pitcairn pointed his own pistol and fired. His troops then discharged their guns and killed eight of the minutemen and wounded

The minute-
men at Lex-
ington

ten others. The minutemen retreated and the British moved on. Adams and Hancock, who were walking across the fields, heard the noise of the guns. Adams remarked, "Oh, what a glorious morning is this!"

At Concord the British found that most of the military stores had been removed. They set fire to the courthouse, cut down the liberty pole, spiked a few cannon, and started back to Boston. The farmers had gathered from far and near and lined the road. On every tree and behind every rock there seemed to lurk a marksman. It was one long ambush. The British began to run. By the time they reached Lexington, where reënforcements met them, they were completely exhausted and fell on the ground, "their tongues hanging out like dogs after a chase." They continued their flight, and three hundred were killed on their way to Boston. This was the battle of Lexington, the first battle of the Revolution.

The battle of
Lexington,
April 19,
1775

News of the battle aroused the people of all the colonies. The patriots of New England assembled an army around Boston. Israel Putnam, of Connecticut, while plowing his field, heard of the battle, and leaving the plow in the furrow mounted the horse and rode a hundred miles in eighteen hours to join the army. The people of Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, passed resolutions declaring that they no longer owed allegiance to England. This was the first declaration of proposed independence.

Excitement
following the
battle

4. GENERAL GEORGE WASHINGTON

THE American army needed a commander-in-chief, and all eyes turned to George Washington. He was chosen without opposition. He was then forty-three years old, but was known throughout the country as a great soldier and a noble man. He was tall, athletic, and hardened by his life as a surveyor and by his experience as a soldier.

George
Washington
chosen com-
mander-in-
chief

Washington was now in the prime of his life. Wherever he went he attracted attention by his splendid height and his soldierly bearing. His eyes were light blue and so deeply sunken under his brows that they gave him a grave and dignified expression. He was very strong, an excellent shot, a good swordsman, and a fine rider. When he was a young man, he excelled in wrestling, and in throwing. He was fond of fine clothes and dancing, and liked to go to parties and engage in social gatherings of all kinds.

His
appearance

He was so modest in his manner that when he was notified of his selection as commander-in-chief he declared he did not think he was equal to the command of the army.

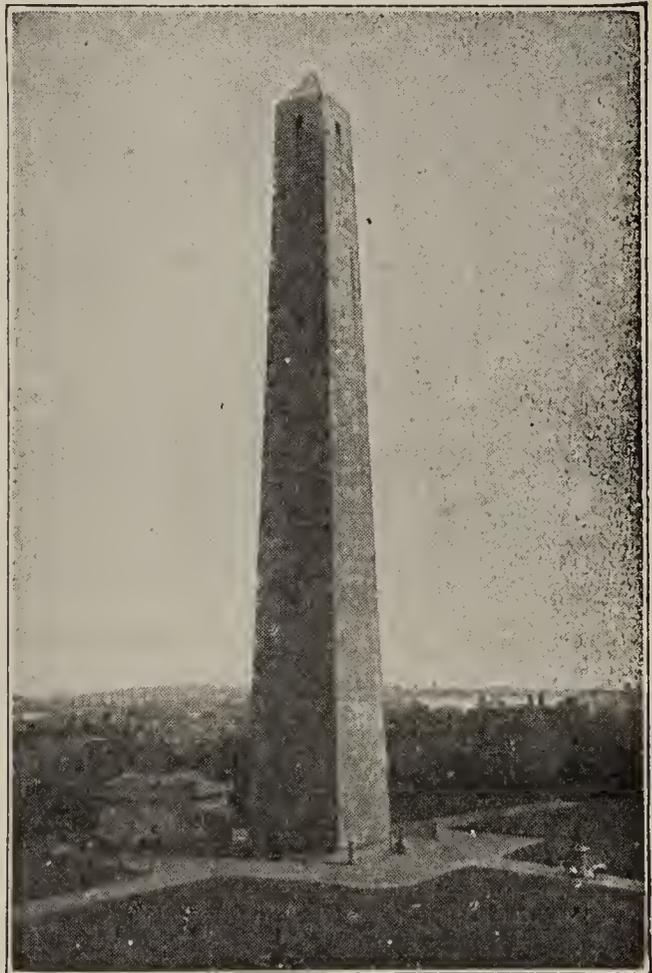
He refused to take any pay for his services, but said that he would keep an account of his expenses, which the government might pay after the close of the war.

Before Washington had arrived near Boston the battle of Bunker Hill had been fought. The British attacked the Americans as they lay in the trenches. Twice they charged the American lines and twice they were driven back. On the third charge the Americans, having no ammunition, met the British

Battle of
Bunker Hill,
June 17, 1775

with clubbed muskets and heavy stones. The defence was a brave one, but the patriots were compelled to retreat. When Washington heard of the way the militia had stood the fire of the British, he said, "The liberty of the country is assured."

When Washington arrived before Boston he was received with great enthusiasm by the soldiers. Under an elm tree, in Cambridge, he reviewed the troops and took command of the army. He made a very martial appearance as he sat on his horse, with a broad band of blue silk across his breast, and a three-cornered hat with the cockade of liberty in it.



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

BUNKER HILL MONUMENT

The soldiers in Washington's army knew very little of military discipline and were poorly provided with arms and ammunition. They were hardly more than a mob of enthusiastic and patriotic farmers, who were willing to fight, but knew nothing of the rules of warfare. For months Washington drilled the troops and enforced order. He was on the lines every day, visiting every part of the camp and seeing the progress of the work on

Drilling the
troops

the fortifications around Boston. The British inside the city were quietly waiting to see what the Americans would do.

When all was ready, Washington placed his cannon on the heights so as to command Boston, and sent word to the British General Howe, who had succeeded General Gage, that he must move out of Boston or be prepared to stand an attack. Howe was astonished when he saw the American cannon pointing at him from a hill overlooking Boston.

There was nothing left for him to do but to fight, surrender, or sail away from Boston. He decided to sail away, and accordingly put his army aboard his ships, and went to Halifax, leaving behind more than two hundred cannon and a great quantity of powder and muskets, all of which fell into the hands of the Americans. Washington marched into Boston with his army, and was received with open arms by the people of the town. Meetings were held in Faneuil Hall, "The Cradle of Liberty," and patriotic resolutions were passed by the people.

Thus Washington began that great career which has endeared him to the hearts of all Americans. He showed his genius by organizing an army out of rough, untrained militia and leading it to the overthrow of the trained soldiers of Europe.

**The British
leave Boston
March 17,
1776**

5. ATTACK ON CHARLESTON—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

DURING the siege of Boston a British force had left that city to attack Charleston. When the people heard of the approach of the enemy they hastily built a fort of palmetto logs on Sullivan's Island and mounted cannon for its defence. Colonel Moultrie was in command. There were those who laughed at Moultrie's fort and declared that the British guns would knock it over in a half hour. "We shall see," said Moultrie. "If they do, we shall be behind its ruins and keep their men from landing."

When the British fleet arrived and the attack on the fort began, it was found that the cannon balls could do but little injury. The balls sank into the earth or into the soft palmetto wood, leaving the fort unharmed. The soldiers of the fort took careful aim and did much damage to the British ships. The enemy finally gave up the attack and sailed away. A fort on Sullivan's Island has ever since been called Fort Moultrie. During the bombardment, the flagstaff of the fort was broken by a cannon ball and the flag fell outside the fort. Sergeant Jasper leaped down and, in the face of the enemy's fire, recovered the fallen flag and, tying it to the sponge staff of a cannon, fastened it upon the walls of the fort.

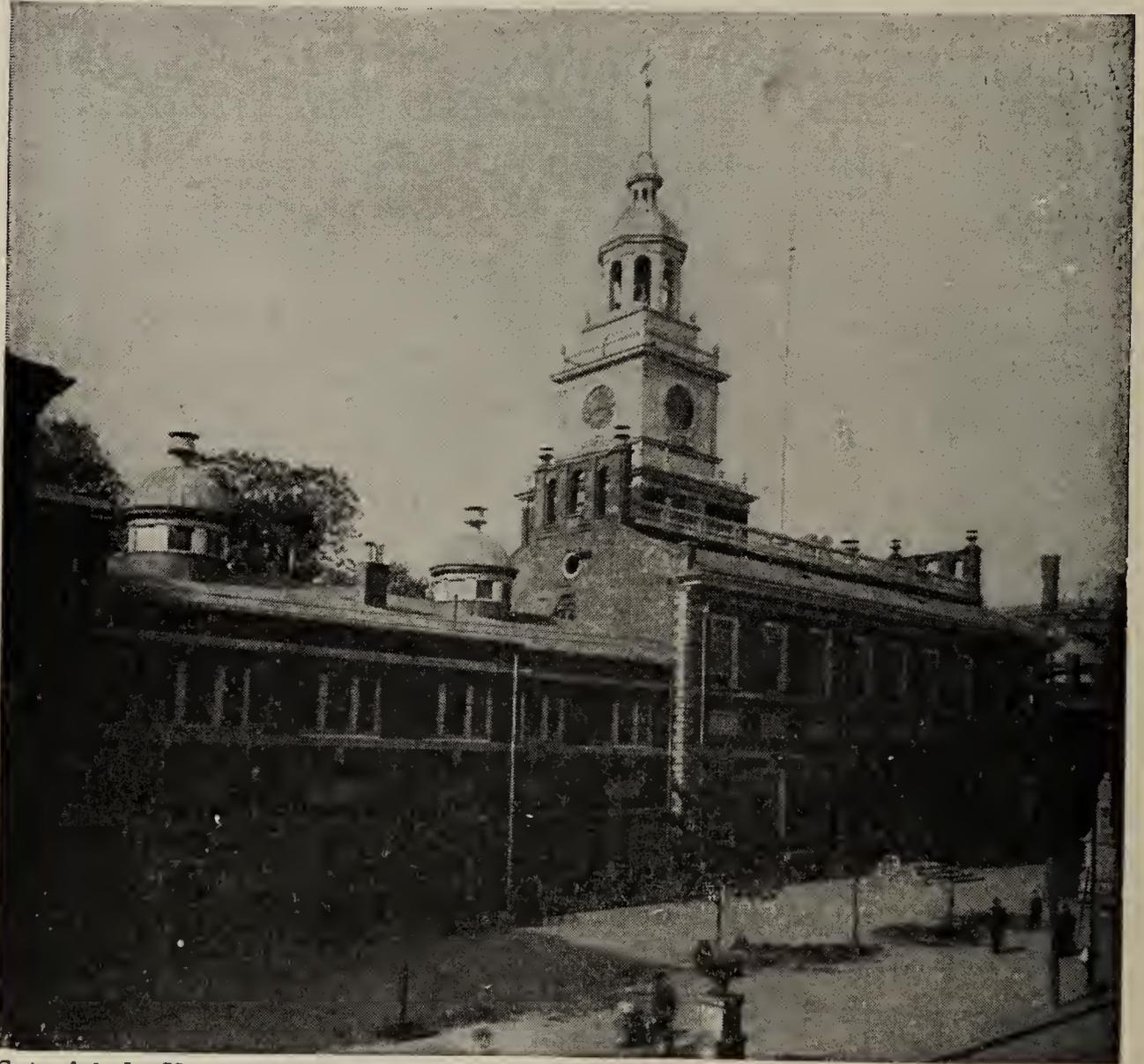
Defence of
Charleston

Fort Moul-
trie, June,
1776

Sergeant
Jasper

Up to this time the colonists had been fighting for their rights as subjects of Great Britain, but now they determined to fight for independence. A Continental Con-

gress had been meeting in Philadelphia. It was composed of delegates from all the colonies. Richard Henry Lee, of



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA

Declaration
of Independ-
ence, July
4, 1776

Virginia, introduced a resolution that "these colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states." A committee was appointed to draw up a Declaration of Independence. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, then thirty-three

years of age, and one of the youngest of the delegates, was chosen to write the great document.

The debate lasted several days. Finally the Declaration of Independence was agreed to, adopted by Congress on July 4, 1776, and signed by the delegates.



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

When the Declaration was finally adopted, John Hancock, the president, signed his name in a bold hand "so that the king could read it without spectacles." Then all the others signed it. Franklin remarked, "We must all hang together or we shall all hang separately."

Postriders carried the news in haste to all parts of the country. The Declaration was read to the soldiers in the



JOHN HANCOCK

field. From pulpits and platforms it was read to the people. Everywhere there was rejoicing over the great event. Torchlight processions, bonfires, speeches, the firing of guns, and the ringing of bells gave evidence of the joy of the colonists that the war in which they were engaged was henceforth to be a war for freedom. We can well understand why the Declaration of Independence is the most important of all our state papers, and why the Fourth of

July is the greatest of all our national holidays.

6. TRIALS AND TRIUMPHS OF THE PATRIOTS

THE British decided to attack New York City, and get control of the Hudson River, so as to cut off New England from the rest of the colonies. Washington hastened from Boston with his army. His forces were not strong enough, however, and the British compelled him to leave New York City. Thereupon Washington began a retreat across New Jersey.



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE

It was now the dead of winter and the weather was very cold. The American troops were greatly discouraged, and hundreds of them left the army, believing the cause to be lost. It was a gloomy hour for the patriots. Washington reached the Delaware River and crossed over at Trenton. The British were behind him, but when they arrived at Trenton they

The retreat
across New
Jersey

decided to wait a few days for the river to freeze over. They thought Washington was in full flight.

It was the night of Christmas, and the British troops in Trenton were celebrating the occasion with drinking and feasting. Washington put his worn and almost exhausted men into boats, and in spite of the floating ice recrossed the Delaware, and marched nine miles in the darkness, and in the face of a blinding snowstorm, until he reached the camp of the British. The British troops, which were hired soldiers from Germany and were called Hessians, were taken entirely by surprise.

Battle of
Trenton,
December,
1776

The commander at Trenton was named Rall. He had made his headquarters in the house of Abraham Hunt, a merchant of the place. Rall was very fond of drinking and playing cards. On Christmas night he and Hunt were in a warm room, before a big fire with plenty to drink before them, and a game of cards in progress.

The conduct
of Rall

A servant came in and handed Rall a note. He was so interested in the game of cards that he thrust the note in his pocket and forgot it. The next time he thought of it he was being carried mortally wounded into a tavern near by, and Washington had taken a large body of his troops as prisoners. When the note was opened it was found to contain a warning of the plans of Washington, which was sent by a tory and delivered to the servant at Hunt's house.

It was too late to prevent the capture of his army. A thousand soldiers surrendered to Washington.



WAR TERRITORY IN THE EASTERN AND MIDDLE STATES

The Americans had lost only four men, two of whom had frozen to death, and two were killed in the battle.

A few days afterwards the British general, Cornwallis, arrived from New York to attack Washington at Trenton. He thought he had Washington in a trap, and went to sleep at night saying, "At last we have run down the fox, and we will bag him in the morning." But Washington was more of a fox than Cornwallis thought. All night long a few men were engaged in building camp fires and making a noise as if throwing up breastworks, while the rest of the army slipped away to Princeton. When Cornwallis arose he could hardly believe his eyes. There was nothing but an empty camp before him. Washington was in Princeton, where he gained another great victory over the British. The tables were now turned. There were rejoicing and hope everywhere, instead of gloom and despair.

Battle of
Princeton,
January 3,
1777

A British army, under the command of General Burgoyne, marched down from Canada through New York state. An American army had opposed them all the way, burning bridges, cutting down trees across the roads, and doing everything possible to worry the British troops. At Saratoga the two armies met in battle and the British surrendered to the Americans. It was a great victory. When the king of France heard of it he said that the Americans were worthy of freedom, and forthwith acknowledged their independence.

Surrender of
Burgoyne,
October 17,
1777

Among the foreigners who had come over to help the Americans was the Marquis de Lafayette. He was only

nineteen years old, but was an ardent lover of liberty. At a dinner party in Germany he listened to an account of the struggles of the American colonists for freedom. He was so deeply moved that he arose from the table and declared that he would go to America and offer his services to Washington. He said, "The welfare of America is closely bound up with the welfare of mankind."

He had inherited a large fortune, and at his own expense fitted out a vessel that brought him to America. Congress made him a major-general. He became the devoted friend of Washington, and served valiantly through the war. Of all the foreigners who have served our country no one is so tenderly beloved as Lafayette.

The British had moved against Philadelphia. They sailed down Chesapeake Bay, and though Washington met them in the battle of Brandywine, they succeeded in capturing the city. Washington retired with his army to Valley Forge, where the troops spent a winter of dreadful suffering. Many of the men had no blankets and were compelled to sit by a scant fire all night to keep from freezing. Some died from want of clothes, and others perished from lack of food, yet the brave soldiers kept up their courage, and there were few desertions.

When the British held Philadelphia, the headquarters of the adjutant-general were in the house of a Quaker named Darrah. One night the officer said to Mrs. Darrah, whose name was Lydia. "I will have

some friends here tonight, so you may prepare the best room for me and them, and then you and the members of your family may go to bed at an early hour."

The room was prepared, and the friends came. The family went to bed, but Lydia rose and stole in her stockingfeet to the door of the room and overheard the officers talking. She heard them discussing an order from General Howe arranging for a secret attack on Washington. That was enough for the brave woman. The next morning, on the pretense of going to the mill for flour, she trudged through the snow for five miles and gave word to Washington of his danger.

The British tried to make the attack, but Washington was ready for them, to their great chagrin. When the troops marched back in disgust at their failure to surprise the Americans, the officer remarked, "It is very strange how Washington could have found out our purpose. I cannot understand it." Mrs. Darrah could have told him, but she did not. This was but one instance of many in which the heroism of the women in the cause of liberty was shown during the war.

7. MARION AND SUMTER

AFTER a winter spent in Philadelphia the British started on their way to New York. Washington followed them and gave battle at Monmouth, New Jersey. It would have been a victory for Washington if General Charles Lee had not disobeyed orders. Instead of attacking the British as he was told to do, he retreated. For this disobedience he was court-martialed and dismissed from the army.

It was at the battle of Monmouth that Molly Pitcher distinguished herself for bravery. She was busily engaged carrying water to the thirsty soldiers. Her husband was serving one of the cannon, and was shot down in her presence. She did not stop to waste time in tears, but seizing the ramrod she undertook to serve the gun as well as her husband had done. All during the battle the brave woman continued to do service at the big gun with as much coolness and courage as a man. When Washington heard of it he conferred on her the rank of lieutenant, and Congress granted her half pay for life. She was afterwards known as Captain Molly.

The British finally reached New York, and Washington drew his lines closely around them to prevent their leaving. The scene of war was then changed to the Southern colonies.

The British began by capturing Savannah and Charleston, and overrunning Georgia and South Carolina. It was hard to get many troops to oppose the British in these distant colonies. The patriots were brave, however, and offered all the resistance they could.

Francis Marion, of South Carolina, raised a company of his neighbors and called them "Marion's Brigade." They had no uniforms and no tents, and served without pay. They beat out old saws to make swords, and melted pewter mugs and dishes to make bullets. They depended upon the fields and gardens of the people to supply corn for the horses and potatoes for the men. Sometimes the brigade numbered seventy or eighty men, then again it numbered only twenty. They made themselves famous, however.

Marion's men annoyed the British by shooting at them from ambush.

Francis Marion They captured their horses and supply wagons, they rescued prisoners and broke up the British camps. They never came to open battle, and if pursued they scattered, every man for himself, into the swamps and woods to come together again at some place agreed upon. At one time Marion heard that ninety British soldiers, with one hundred and fifty prisoners, were on their way to Charleston.

With thirty men he swept down upon them in the darkness, captured the whole party, and rescued the prisoners. So difficult was Marion to follow that he became known as "The Swamp Fox."



ONE OF MARION'S MEN

Marion was a man of small stature and of few words. On looking at him one wondered how he could be so great a soldier. He never sullied his fame by an act of cruelty. "Never shall a house be burned by one of my people," he said; "to distress poor women and children is what I detest." When he said that he had in mind many of the cruel things that the British soldiers had done in the South.

Thomas Sumter was another soldier in this wild warfare. Unlike Marion, he was tall and powerful. He became known as "The Game Cock." The British had burned his house and turned his family out of doors. Sumter called his neighbors together and organized a band to fight the British wherever he could find them. Cornwallis said, "But for Sumter and Marion, South Carolina would be at peace." Sumter's men rode their own horses, wore hunting shirts, and carried long rifles with which they could hit a mark the size of a man's hand at a distance of two hundred yards.

This kind of war is known as "guerrilla warfare," because it was carried on by bands of soldiers, each fighting for itself and without regular organization into an army. The brave troops of Carolina and Georgia did great damage to the British, and kept them in check until they were driven out of the South.

Nancy Hart lived in a cabin in Elbert County, Georgia. She was a tall, strong, cross-eyed, high-tempered woman who cordially hated the British. A party of them gave her a visit one day while her husband was at work in the field. They ordered her to cook them a

Bravery of
Nancy Hart

breakfast. She soon had the smoking meal before them. They stacked their guns in a corner and sat down to eat. Nancy edged round to the guns, and, seizing one, pointed it at the British, saying, "I will shoot the first man that moves." No one could tell from her cross-eyes whom she was aiming at, and all sat terrified and trembling.

"Go," said she to one of her children, "and tell your father I have captured six base tories." One of the men advanced upon her. She fired, and the man fell dead. Seizing another musket, she held the others at bay until her husband and several men arrived. The tories were then taken out and hanged in front of the cabin, Nancy declaring that shooting was too good for them.

8. THE END OF THE WAR

ONE of the saddest incidents of the Revolutionary War was the treason of Benedict Arnold. He had been a good soldier, but was disappointed about promotion and had fallen into bad habits. He had been reprimanded by Washington for his conduct, which made him so angry that he decided to turn traitor to his country.

He requested to be put in command of West Point, an important fort on the Hudson River. Washington granted the request hoping that Arnold would henceforth act as a soldier should. But Arnold sent word to the British in New York that he was ready to surrender the fort for thirty thousand dollars and an officer's position in the British army.

Treason of
Benedict
Arnold,
September,
1780

Major André, a young British officer, was sent to meet Arnold and make all arrangements. At the meeting Arnold gave up important papers and agreed upon the manner of surrendering the fort. André started back to New York on horseback. At Tarrytown he was stopped by three men who asked him where he was going. Supposing they were friends he replied, "I am a British officer on important business. Please do not detain me."

The three men, however, were patriots, and in spite of André's attempt to bribe them they carried him into the American lines. Here the papers were discovered, and the brave young officer was in a few weeks tried, convicted, and shot as a spy. Arnold, however, was warned of his own fate and escaped into New York.

After Arnold reached the British in New York he was given a commission as an English officer. He led a band of Tories and Hessians in a warfare of destruction in Connecticut, his native state. At one time he was fearful of capture, and asked an American prisoner, "What will the Americans do with me if I fall into their hands?" The prisoner replied, "They would cut off the leg that was wounded in the service of your country; the rest of you they would hang."

After the war Arnold went to England to live, but was treated with the contempt he deserved. At one time he was asked to write a letter of introduction to some friends in America. To this he replied, "I was born and reared in America, but now I can call no man there my friend."

It is said that when Arnold was ill and about to die, he asked to put on his old American uniform. His epaulets and sword were brought to him. He looked at them sadly, and said, "With these I fought my battles. May God forgive me for ever having worn any others!"

General Cornwallis was the British commander in the South. He had overrun Georgia and South Carolina, and was pushing his way northward, hoping to make an easy conquest of North Carolina. He sent a force of twelve hundred men to make a raid into the western part of that state. The hardy backwoodsmen began to gather in great numbers to oppose the British.

From across the Alleghenies and from the defiles of the mountains they came in hunting shirts, and with sprigs of hemlock in their hats, armed with rifles that rarely

missed their mark. Three thousand of them gathered and faced the British at King's Mountain, on the line between the Carolinas.

The British were on the top of the mountain with a ravine behind them. The British officer, Ferguson, cried out, "Boys, here is a place from which the rebels cannot drive us!" He spoke too soon. The backwoodsmen hitched their horses to the trees and charged up the mountain from three sides. Advancing from tree to tree they took deadly aim, and the British fell in great numbers, while the Americans lost but few men. The whole British force surrendered, and the backwoodsmen returned to their homes beyond the mountains. Cornwallis, though much discouraged by the loss of his forces at King's Mountain, pushed on through North Carolina and into Virginia, until he finally came to

Yorktown.

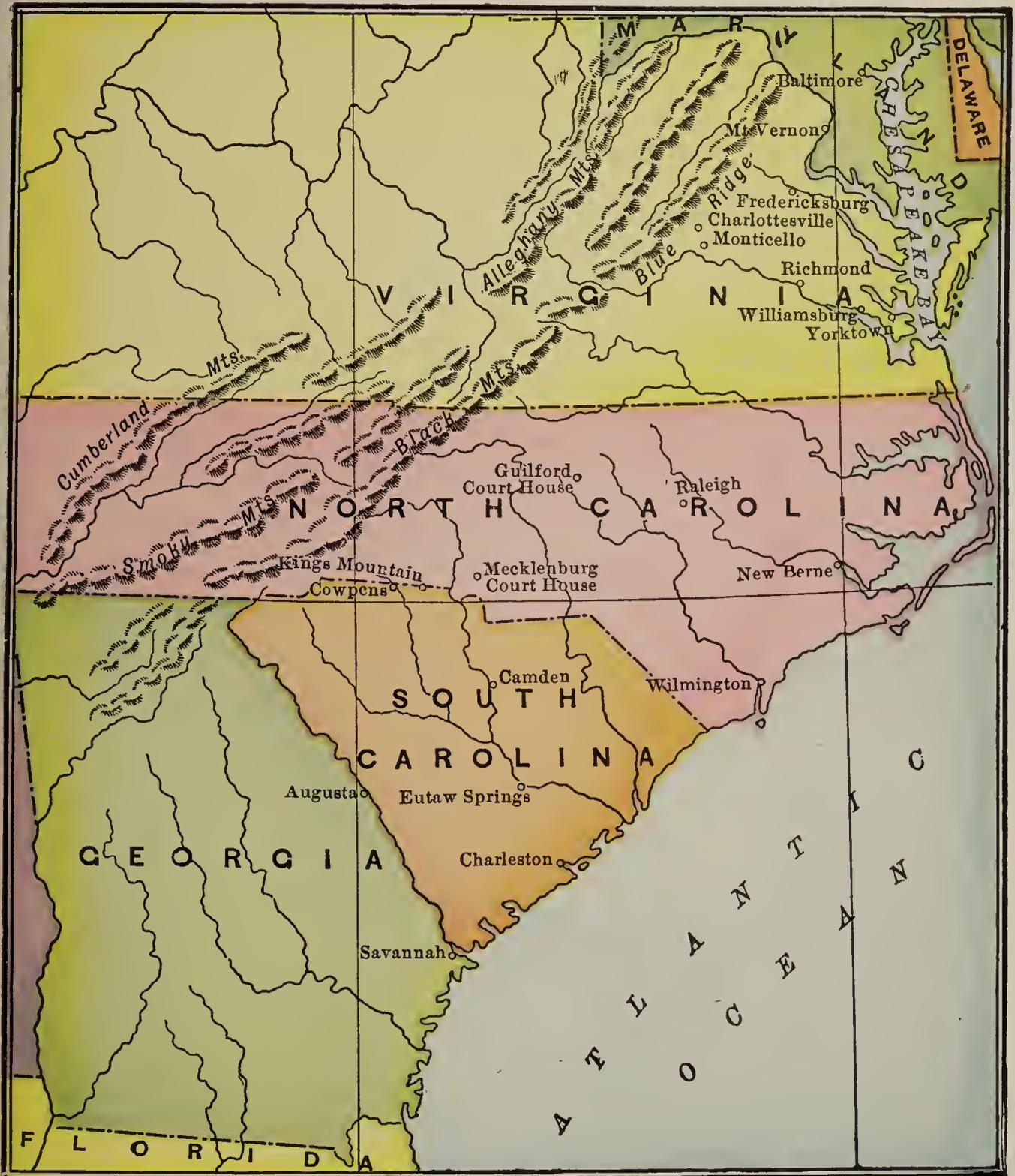
General Nathanael Greene was in command of the American forces in the South. Nathanael Greene

When he took charge of the army it was in a forlorn condition. There was only one blanket to every three soldiers, and provision for only three days. Once Greene spoke to a barefoot sentinel saying, "You must suffer from



NATHANAEL GREENE

The battle of
King's Moun-
tain, October
7, 1780



WAR TERRITORY IN THE SOUTH

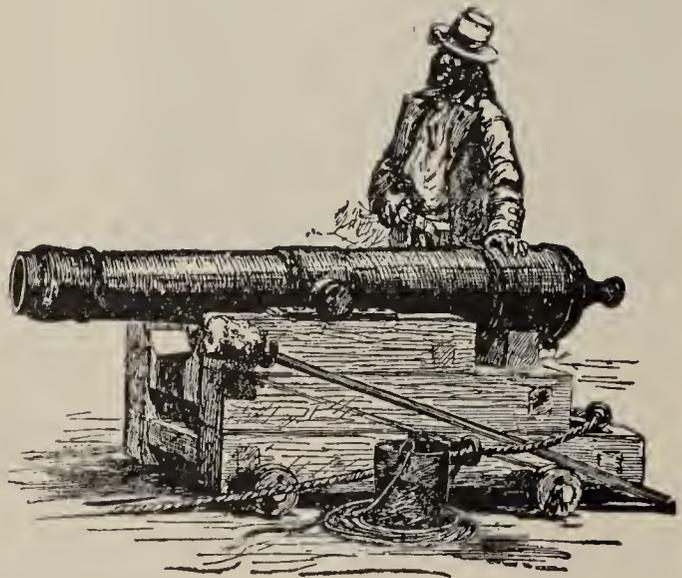
cold." "Yes," said the soldier, not recognizing the general, "but I do not complain, for our commander has no supplies for his men."

Upon another occasion Greene alighted at an inn which had been turned into a hospital. Upon being asked how he was, he replied, "Hungry, tired, alone, and penniless." The landlady brought him two bags of money she had saved, saying, "Take these, you and your men need them and I can do without."

Cornwallis reached Yorktown, and Washington hastened from New York to capture him. A French fleet blockaded the harbor and the British were trapped completely. After a brave resistance Cornwallis surrendered to Washington. This practically ended the war. A treaty of peace was signed between Great Britain and the colonies, by which the thirteen colonies in America were acknowledged "free and independent."

By the terms of the treaty our boundary lines were Florida on the South, the Mississippi River on the West, and Canada on the North.

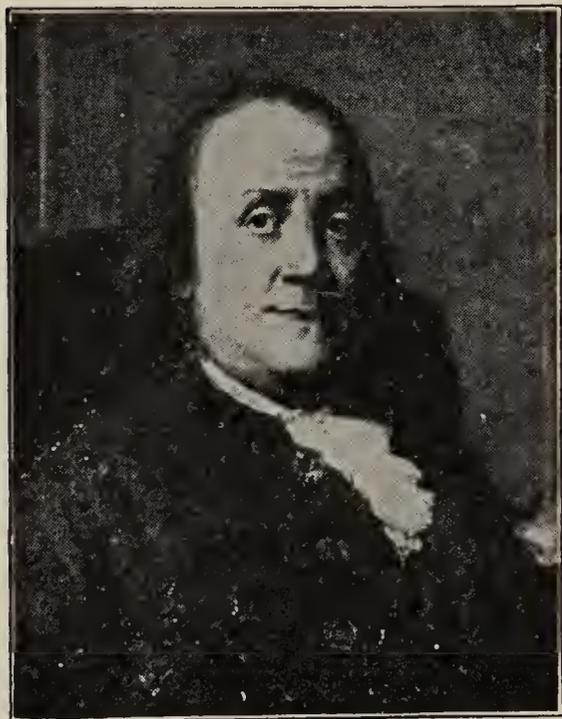
Surrender of
Cornwallis,
October 19,
1781



A CANNON OF REVOLUTIONARY TIMES

9. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

ONE of the most notable men of the time of the Revolution was Benjamin Franklin. He was born in Boston, January 17, 1706. He was the son of a candlemaker, and was one of seventeen children. His father was too poor to send him to school very long, but the young Franklin studied while he worked at his father's trade. When a young man he went to Philadelphia and became a printer.



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

When Franklin arrived in Philadelphia looking for work as a printer, he had but a few coins in his pocket. With these he bought a loaf of bread and began munching on it as he was walking along the street. A pretty girl with laughing eyes saw him from one of the windows as he was passing by. She laughed outright at the uncouth boy, very much to his chagrin. She afterwards became his wife.

For many years he published "Poor Richard's Almanac," full of quaint sayings and homely wisdom. The following are some of the maxims of Franklin taken from "Poor Richard's Almanac."

"A word to the wise is sufficient." "God helps those who help themselves." "Keep thy shop, and thy shop will keep

thee." "Constant dropping wears away the stone." "A small leak will sink a great ship." "Creditors have better memories than debtors." "Better go to bed supperless than in debt." "A sleeping fox catches no poultry."

Franklin had very practical ideas. He persuaded the people to put their books together in one common stock for a public library. He formed a debating society of his friends to discuss scientific subjects. He became interested in electricity. By means of a kite held by a silk cord he proved that the clouds were full of electricity when there is a storm. He invented the lightning rod to protect houses against being struck by lightning.

Practical
ideas

Franklin suggested that a great deal of heat was wasted by chimneys, and devised the open stove, which is still called the Franklin stove. He persuaded the people of Philadelphia to pave the streets and light them by lamps, to have night watchmen, and to form fire companies.

When Franklin was forty-five years of age he was made deputy postmaster-general for the colonies. He astonished the people by proposing to have a regular mail once a week between New York and Boston. This was thought to be a wonderful achievement. At that time there were about seventy post offices in the whole country. Letters that left New York on Monday reached Boston on the following Saturday.

At the beginning of the French and Indian War, Franklin had proposed, at the convention of delegates of the colonies at Albany, to form a union of the colonies for their mutual protection. He presented the plan, and it was approved

by the convention. It was not approved, however, by the British government, and was not allowed to go into operation.

Franklin was in England as the agent of the Pennsylvania colony when the Stamp Act was passed, and did all he could to prevent its becoming a law. He was invited to appear before the House of Commons to discuss the subject. He was asked many questions, to which he gave ready and able answers. He told the statesmen of England many things about the colonies that they did not know before. His answers made a great stir. He was asked if the colonies would submit to any kind of Stamp Act. He replied boldly, "No, they will never submit to it!"

When asked what the people would do about making contracts and collecting debts, he said, "I can only judge of them by myself. I have a great many debts due me in America, and I would rather they should remain unpaid than submit to the Stamp Act." He also said, "I have some property in America. I will freely spend nineteen shillings in the pound to defend my right of giving or refusing the other shilling." It was largely by his influence that the Stamp Act was repealed.

After the war began in earnest, Franklin was sent to France to gain the friendship of that nation for the colonies. The French people hailed him as the friend of mankind, and crowds followed him through the streets, while the shop windows displayed his picture for sale. He was admired for his simple manners, for his ready wit, and for his plain

dress. He wore no wig, had a great cap of fur, used large spectacles, and carried a walking stick.

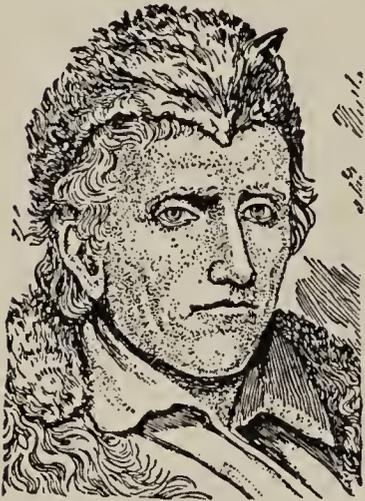
Franklin soon won the heart of the French people. Money was raised in France to aid the Americans, and French officers offered their services. French ships were fitted out to fight our battles, and French soldiers enlisted in the American army. Franklin induced the king to take sides openly with the American colonies, and to acknowledge their freedom and independence.

When the war was over, Franklin was one of the representatives of the American government at Paris in making the treaty of peace with England. After the treaty had been signed, a dinner was given in honor of the event. The English ambassador offered the following toast: "England—the glorious sun at midday, that illumines the world." The French minister arose and offered his toast: "France—the full moon rising in its splendor to drive away the shades of night." All eyes turned on Franklin as he arose and asked the company to join him in the toast: "The United States—the Joshua who commanded the sun and the moon to stand still, and they obeyed him."

On leaving France he was given the portrait of the king, framed in a double circle of four hundred and eight diamonds. The king gave him the use of the queen's litter to bear him to the coast. When he reached America he was received with great enthusiasm by the people.

10. DANIEL BOONE MOVES INTO KENTUCKY

DANIEL BOONE was a hunter who lived in a cabin in North Carolina. One day a friend told him of the fine



DANIEL BOONE

hunting grounds in the region now known as Kentucky. Boone with five

Boone's
hunting trip
into Ken-
tucky

companions started on a

hunting trip across the mountains.

The party went on foot, each man

carrying his pack. For five weeks

they toiled through the forests until

they came to the blue-grass region of

Kentucky. There they found buffa-

loes, deer, elks, wolves, bears, and panthers. It was a

hunter's paradise. The other members of the party

returned to North Carolina, but Boone remained for three

weeks alone in the great woods with his trusty rifle.

After Boone went home he decided to move his family into Kentucky. Others joined him, making a party of

Boonesbor- thirty. They started out, cutting a trail

ough, 1771 through the forest and blazing the trees as

they went along. In a few months they selected a place

on the Kentucky River and began a fort, which afterwards

was named Boonesborough. More settlers followed along

the trail, the fort was strengthened, and more cabins were

built.

The Indians were very unfriendly. The savages who had been lurking about captured two girls who were rowing on the river, and started off with them. One of them was

Boone's daughter. The girls tore shreds from their dresses, and unobserved by the savages dropped them on the way to guide any who might follow. The settlers soon missed the girls and following their trail rescued them from the savages.



THE INDIANS CAPTURE TWO YOUNG GIRLS

Upon another occasion Boone was captured by the Indians and carried across the Ohio. One of the chiefs wanted to adopt him as his son, and Boone was obliged to submit. All his hair was plucked out except a scalp lock, he was painted and dressed like an

Captured by
the Indians

Indian, and lived for several months among the savages. They watched him closely, however. The old chief counted the bullets and measured the powder he gave to Boone, and required him to bring in game for every bullet he used. Boone was more cunning than the Indians, for he cut the bullets in half, and stinted himself in the use of powder, thus saving a store for future use.



EARLY PIONEER SETTLEMENT IN KENTUCKY

At last he heard the Indians plotting to destroy Boonesborough. Pretending to go on a hunt, he started on his way to Kentucky. A band of warriors pursued him, but he easily threw them off the trail and came to the Ohio. Here he found a canoe and rowed across the river. He killed a turkey and

Saves
Boones-
borough

ate it, the first thing he had eaten for many hours. In five days, traveling one hundred and sixty miles, he came to Boonesborough and gave the alarm in time to save the settlement from destruction.

Other pioneers came into Kentucky, following the trail that Boone had made over the mountains. More cabins arose in the clearings, and more forts were built to protect the settlers from the watchful and dangerous Indians. Kentucky grew and prospered. The forests furnished game in abundance, the blue grass gave splendid pasturage for cows and horses, the streams supplied fish, while the gardens and fields yielded plenty of corn, fruit, and vegetables.

As for Boone himself, he ever loved the frontier. When the settlements in Kentucky grew too thick he moved deeper into the forest. The roar of the wild beast was sweeter music to his ears than the human voice. He spent his old age hunting in the wilds of the Missouri woods.

11. GEORGE ROGERS CLARK

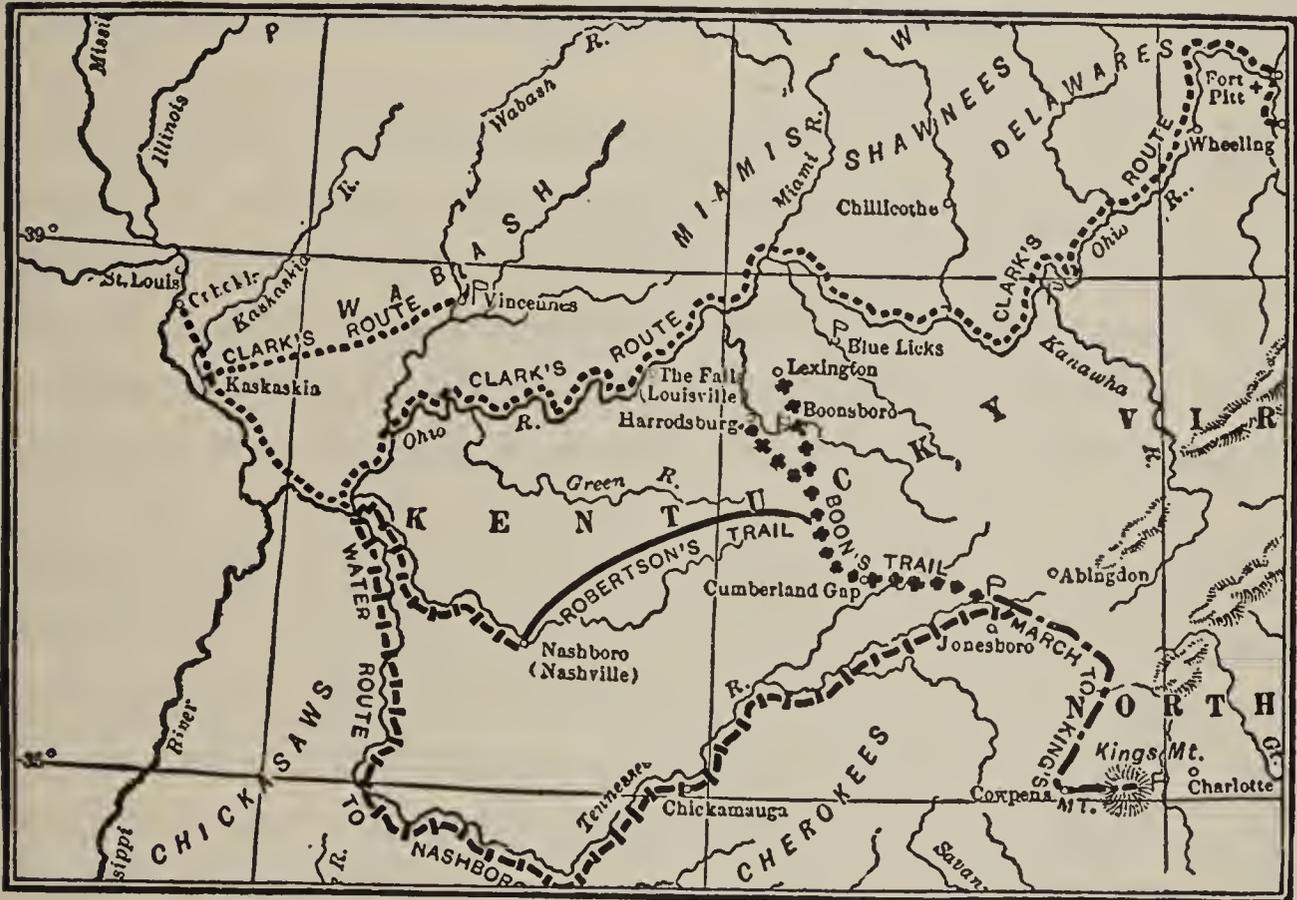
THE British occupied forts at Kaskaskia, Vincennes, and Detroit, in what was known as the Northwest Territory. They were so far from the seat of war during the Revolution that they were almost forgotten. George Rogers Clark, of Kentucky, determined to capture these forts from the British. He went to Virginia and laid his plans before the governor, Patrick Henry, and asked for a body of troops "to defend Kentucky."

Early one summer he started down the Ohio with nearly two hundred men. After rowing a thousand miles the party landed. They hid their boats in the bushes and started overland to Kaskaskia in order to escape the spies that they knew guarded the Mississippi River. It was a march of more than a hundred miles through low, marshy land. The men waded the creeks, swam the rivers, and cut their way through the swamps and prairie grass until they came to the fort.

When they arrived at Kaskaskia it was night, and the people were having a dance. The commander of the fort was asleep and nobody suspected an enemy near. Clark posted his men around the hall and quietly entered. He stood leaning against the doorpost until some one saw him and gave the alarm. "Go on with your fun," said Clark, "but remember that you are now dancing under the flag of Virginia." The fort surrendered at once.

Clark next determined to march against Vincennes. It was winter and the prairie lands were flooded with water

and covered with ice. The streams were swollen, and there were no bridges. The distance was one hundred and sixty miles, and rain fell during most of the time that Clark and his men were on their way. Often the men for hours at a time waded in water up to their waists, and on reaching



PIONEERS OF THE WEST AND NORTHWEST

dry ground could find nothing with which to make a fire. More than once they spent the night in wet or frozen clothes. It was one of the most heroic marches on record.

When Clark reached Vincennes he demanded the surrender of the fort. Hamilton, the governor and commander, was amazed that Clark could reach Vincennes in such weather. He was playing cards and drinking when he

heard of the arrival of the Virginians, and swore that he would not surrender the fort. An attack was begun by Clark's men. They were the best marksmen in the world, and could easily shoot through the loopholes of the fort. The fort soon agreed to surrender, and Clark and Hamilton met to make the terms.

Capture of
Vincennes,
February,
1779

Hamilton was a cruel man and had offered to buy from the Indians the scalps of all their white captives. He was called the "Hair Buyer." While the conference was going on, a party of Indians approached the fort with a lot of scalps. When Clark's men saw their bloody trophies, they seized the Indians, tomahawked them before the fort, and threw their bodies into the river.

Hamilton surrendered Vincennes, and all the Northwest Territory fell into the hands of the Americans. When the Revolution was over and a treaty of peace was made, all the region around the Great Lakes, out of which the states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin and a part of Minnesota have since been made, was considered a part of the United States. If it had not been for George Rogers Clark, all that territory might now have been a part of Canada.

12. ROBERTSON AND SEVIER

JAMES ROBERTSON was a friend of Daniel Boone and, like him, loved the deep forest and the wild frontier. He made a hunting trip through Kentucky, and his stories of the beauty of the country so excited his neighbors that sixteen families agreed to move with him into eastern Tennessee.

James
Robertson

The party traveled on foot, driving the cows ahead of them, and with their household goods strapped on the backs of pack horses. On reaching the Watauga River they decided to make a settlement. For six thousand dollars' worth of blankets, paints, and muskets, Robertson purchased from the Indians the use of the lands along the river for a term of years.

The Watauga
settlement,
1771

After eight years Robertson decided to move further westward. He and eight companions found their way through the wilderness until they came to the great bend of the Cumberland where Nashville now is. Here they decided to found a settlement. The settlers soon followed, coming in boats on the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers. Nashboro, as it was then called, soon became a thriving colony.

Nashville,
1779

John Sevier, a companion and friend of Robertson, was the greatest Indian fighter in the Southwest. It is said he fought thirty-five battles. He was a very handsome man, tall, blue-eyed, of slender build and erect figure. When he and Robertson were at the Watauga settlement the Indians made an attack on the fort. The siege lasted three weeks, and the

John Sevier
and Kate
Sherrill

men and women became weary of the confinement. Upon one occasion one of the women, Kate Sherrill, ventured out of the fort and was pursued by the Indians. She ran for the gates like a deer. The Indians were close behind her. Sevier, through a loophole, shot the foremost savage, just as Kate reached the stockade. She sprang up so as to catch the top with her hands and was drawn over by Sevier. He afterwards married her.

Sevier lived in a big one-story house on Nolichucky River, and was known as "Nolichucky Jack." He kept open house for everybody, and was the leader in establishing good government, as well as in fighting the Indians. During the Revolution news was brought that the British were ravaging the country of North Carolina. Sevier collected a thousand of the settlers along the Watauga, mounted them on swift, wiry ponies, and set out across the mountains. Every man carried a rifle, a tomahawk, and a scalping knife. The officers had no swords, and there was not a bayonet nor a tent in the party. When they reached North Carolina they joined the backwoodsmen and defeated the British at King's Mountain, as we have already seen in another lesson. After the battle Sevier and his men returned to Tennessee.

Sevier was hospitable and generous. Even the Indians liked him because he treated them kindly whenever they visited him. He fought them whenever they gave him cause, but never abused them nor violated their confidence. Everywhere in Tennessee he was the idol of the people.

Service at
King's
Mountain

When word came that "Nolichucky Jack" was in town crowds went out to meet him, to shake his hand, and talk with him.

The pioneers kept swarming over the mountains. By the close of the Revolution twenty-five thousand people had moved into Tennessee and Kentucky. When Tennessee became a State, John Sevier was chosen its first governor, which office he held for twelve years. His name is still a household word among the people of east Tennessee.

Thus we see that the colonies had not only won their independence from the mother country, but had begun to spread out over the great continent they had acquired by conquest and treaty.

QUESTIONS

1. What were some of the hardships of the trade laws of England? What was taxation without representation? What was the Stamp Act? Who was the king of England at this time and what can you say of his character? What did some of the greatest and wisest men in Parliament deny? Who was Patrick Henry? What was the Parsons' Case? Describe the oration of Henry on that occasion. What did he say in his speech against the Stamp Act? What did the British government then do?

2. Describe the conduct of the British troops in Boston. Describe the Boston Massacre. What can you say of Samuel Adams? Describe his interview with the governor of Boston. What new tax did the British Parliament lay upon the colonies? How did the people treat this tax? Describe the Boston Tea Party.

3. What did General Gage at Boston resolve to do? Describe Paul Revere's ride. Describe the escape of Hancock and Adams.

What happened at Lexington? What did the British do at Concord? Describe the battle of Concord. What incidents followed the battle? What was the first Declaration of Independence?

4. Who was chosen commander-in-chief of the colonial army? Describe Washington at this time. Describe the battle of Bunker Hill. Where did Washington take command of the army? Describe Washington's army at this time. By what means did Washington force the British out of Boston?

5. What defences were prepared for Charleston? Describe the bombardment. Describe the bravery of Sergeant Jasper. What resolution was introduced in the Continental Congress by Richard Henry Lee? What committee was appointed? Who wrote the Declaration of Independence? When was it adopted and signed? How was the declaration received by the people?

6. Describe Washington's retreat across New Jersey. What were the British at Trenton doing? Describe the conduct of Rall. What was the result of the battle of Trenton? Describe the battle of Princeton. Where did Burgoyne surrender? What did the king of France acknowledge? Who was Lafayette and how did he help America? Describe the sufferings at Valley Forge. Tell the story of the patriotism of Lydia Darrah.

7. Tell the story of Molly Pitcher at the battle of Monmouth. What cities in the South did the British capture? How did Marion and his men wage war? What was Marion called? Describe Marion's appearance and character. Describe Thomas Sumter. What was he called? What is guerrilla warfare? Describe the bravery of Nancy Hart.

8. Of what treason was Benedict Arnold guilty? How was Major André captured? What was the fate of Major André? Tell some incidents of the later life of Arnold. What was the result of the battle of King's Mountain? Who was in command of the American forces in the South? Describe some incidents in the career of General Greene. Where did Cornwallis surrender?

9. Describe the early life of Benjamin Franklin. Describe his arrival in Philadelphia. What were some of his maxims? What were some of his practical ideas? What did he persuade the people of Philadelphia to do? What did Franklin think about the Stamp Act? How was Franklin treated in France? Tell the story of Franklin's toast. How was he treated on leaving France?

10. Describe Boone's hunting trip into Kentucky. What settlement was made in Kentucky? How did the Indians treat Boone? Tell the story of Boone's escape and the saving of Boonesborough. How did Kentucky increase in population? Where did Boone spend his last days?

11. What did George Rogers Clark determine to do? Describe his voyage down the Ohio and the hardships of the men. Describe the capture of Kaskaskia. Against what city did Clark next advance? Describe the hardships of the march. Describe the attack on Vincennes. Why was Hamilton called the Hair Buyer? What territory fell into the hands of the Americans?

12. Who was James Robertson? Describe the Watauga settlement. When was Nashville settled? Who was John Sevier? How did he save Kate Sherrill? By what name was Sevier known? What service did he render at King's Mountain? Describe his popularity.

CHAPTER V

THE UNITED STATES

1. ORGANIZING THE GOVERNMENT

THERE were about four million people in the United States at the end of the Revolution, most of them living in New England and the middle colonies. The cities were small, and by no means had the splendid appearance that many of them have today. The people were heavily in debt on account of the war, but everywhere there was rejoicing that the country was free of English rule, and the people faced the future with determination and confidence.

During the war the colonies had been bound together by mutual agreement because they faced a common danger.

Need of a permanent form of government Delegates from all the colonies had met in a Continental Congress and Articles of Confederation had been agreed upon mainly for governing the country in time of war. Now that peace had come it became plain that the country needed a permanent form of government that would bind all the colonies together into one nation. The states might be independent of England, but they could not remain independent of one another. A general government for all was needed.

public officials are sworn to support it, all laws are made in accordance with it, and today we are living under the great and powerful government created by it.



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

MOUNT VERNON

George Washington was chosen the first President of the United States. On his way to New York to be inaugurated, at every town and village crowds of people went out to meet him. When he reached Trenton he was met by a party of young girls dressed in white, who scattered flowers in front of him while he rode under triumphal arches. When he reached New York he was inaugurated amid the shouts of the people, the waving of flags, and the booming of cannon.

George
Washington
the first
President,
1789

Washington was President for two terms, or eight years. At the end of his second term he retired to Mount Vernon, where he died, and was buried amid the tears and mourning of a grateful people.



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

THE WASHINGTON MONUMENT

When Washington was inaugurated New York was the capital of the country. The

Washington becomes the capital city, 1800

next year Philadelphia became the capital. After ten years the seat of government was moved to the banks of the Potomac, where a capital city had been laid out and named Washington in honor of the great soldier and statesman. At that time Washington City was hardly more than a wilderness. The capitol building was unfinished, the President's house was in an open field, there was but one good hotel, and there was no business and but little society. Today it is one of the most beautiful and brilliant cities in the world.

2. ELI WHITNEY INVENTS THE COTTON GIN

IN early days all the manufacturing was done in the homes of the colonists and largely by hand. There were almost no machinery for the people to work with and no factories for them to work in. The spinning wheel and the hand loom were the main dependence of the people for cloth, except for such as was brought from England.

Even in England the methods were simple and the product small until her growing commerce made it necessary for English inventors to devise some machinery to increase the output of the country, to meet the demand for cloth. It was not long before the spinning jenny for making thread and the power loom for weaving cloth and the steam engine for driving machinery were all invented and put into operation in England.

Then began the industrial revolution and the factory system in England. Towns grew up around the mills and **The industrial revolution** workers ceased to labor in their homes and began to labor in the central factories. But England guarded her secrets and forbade any exportation of machinery for fear that other countries would deprive her of the benefits of her manufactures.

The Americans resorted to smuggling and to inventions of their own, so that by the end of the American Revolution **Samuel Slater** the secrets of machinery for making cloth were fairly well known in this country. It was not until 1789, however, that the way for establishing mills and factories became open by the arrival in America of Samuel Slater, who knew all about the English machinery

and who built entirely from memory the machinery for a small factory in Pawtucket, Rhode Island, in 1790. This was the beginning of the factory system in America and for this Slater has been called "the father of American cotton manufactures."

The demand now was for more cotton to manufacture into cloth. There was thus a need for more raw material, since machines could turn out a great deal more product than the old hand system could possibly do.

Very little cotton was raised in the South at this time. The seed had to be separated from the lint by hand, a very difficult process. One person could not clean more than a pound of cotton in a day, and a whole family could not clean more than eight or ten pounds.

Just after the Revolutionary War a ship carried eight small bags of cotton to England. They were seized on the ground that such a quantity of cotton could not be raised in the United States. While Washington was President, three hundred and ninety-nine bales were exported in one year from the United States, which was considered a wonderful crop. A cotton field of thirty acres near Savannah was considered a curiosity.

Eli Whitney was a young man who had come from New England to Georgia to teach school and practice law. He was living at the home of Mrs. Nathanael Greene, widow of the Revolutionary general, fourteen miles from Savannah. He had always been fond of inventing things, and had made a number of useful articles for Mrs. Greene. One day Mrs. Greene had

Eli Whitney
and Mrs.
Greene

a number of guests for dinner, and they were discussing the raising of cotton. One of them remarked, "What a pity that some one does not invent a machine for separating the seed from the cotton!"

Mrs. Greene at once thought of the young man who had aided her several times, and said, "Why not ask Mr. Whitney to make a machine of this sort? He can do anything."

Whitney was sent for, some seed cotton was given him, and the difficulties explained. He had to make his own tools, and even his own wire. After several months' labor he succeeded in making a machine that did as much work as many hands. He had invented the cotton engine, or the cotton gin as we now know it.

The cotton gin invented, 1793

As soon as the farmers learned about the cotton gin and the work it could do, they began to plant cotton in quantity. By using the Whitney gin, they could clean all the cotton they could raise. In a few years a hundred thousand bales were shipped to England. Cotton land rose in price, slaves were brought to the fields, and the great industry of the South was started.

The first effect of the invention of the cotton gin was to increase the quantity of the cotton raised in the South.

Effect of the cotton gin on the South

Since that time the farmers have planted more and more cotton, until today twelve million or more bales are raised every year. The second effect was to fasten slaveholding on the South. The negroes were well suited for work in the cotton fields.

Their labor was cheap and easily controlled. The demand for cotton by the Northern and foreign mills increased every year. So the Southern farmers bought more slaves and planted more cotton. At the present day the South not only raises cotton, but has many fine cotton mills.

3. THOMAS JEFFERSON

WHEN Patrick Henry was delivering his great speech against the Stamp Act, a young man stood leaning against Jefferson as the door listening to the burning words of the a student orator. The young man was Thomas Jefferson. He had come from his home in Virginia when he was seventeen years of age, to become a student at William and Mary College. He had always loved books and while at college often studied fifteen hours a day. He was a friend of Patrick Henry and shared a room with him. His heart was fired by the eloquence of his friend, and he resolved to take part in the great questions of the day.

Jefferson was a tall, athletic young man, a dead shot with a rifle, and a daring and skilful horseman. He was His accom- fond of company, and liked to gather a few plishments friends in the tavern of the town to spend an evening in talking and in music. He was not an orator, though he was a successful lawyer before a jury. He became famous as one of the most profound thinkers and writers on political subjects that our country has known.

He was a scholar of great learning. He seemed to know everything. It was said that he "could calculate an eclipse, survey an estate, tie an artery, plan an edifice, try a case, break a horse, dance a minuet, and play the violin." An acquaintance said, "When he spoke of law, I thought he was a lawyer; when he talked about mechanics, I was sure he was an engineer; when he got into medicine, it was evident that he was a physician; when he discussed theology, I was convinced that he must be a clergyman; when he talked

literature, I made up my mind that I had run against a college professor."

When the Revolution came on, Jefferson was a delegate from Virginia to the Continental Congress. Richard Henry Lee, also of Virginia, introduced a resolution declaring that "these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states." Jefferson was appointed on the committee to draw up a declaration to that effect. When the committee met, the members asked Jefferson to write it as the expression of the common feeling of all the delegates and of all the colonies.

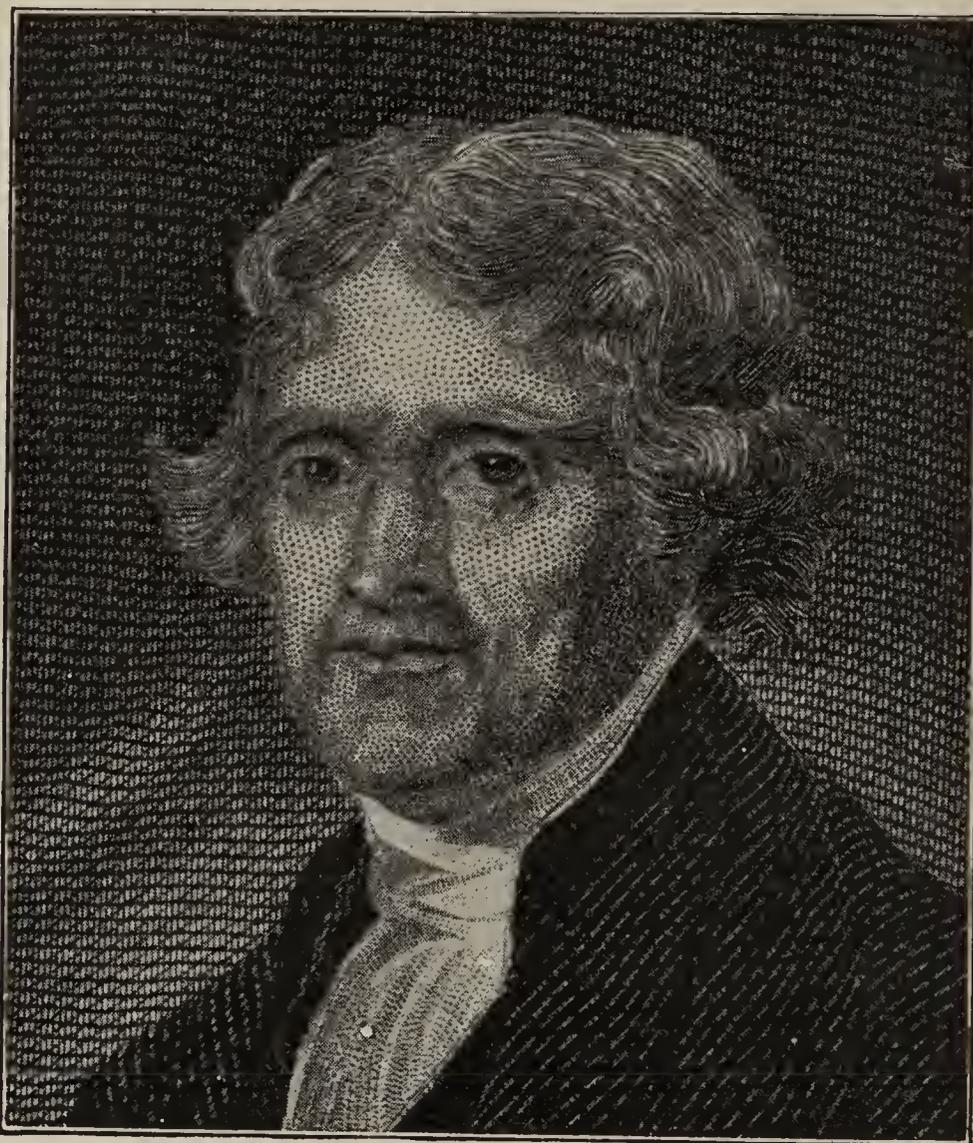
He then wrote the Declaration of Independence. Benjamin Franklin and John Adams changed a few words, and the report of the committee went to the Congress. During the debate on its adoption, Jefferson, who could write but could not make a speech, listened impatiently but silently to the criticisms of his work. Franklin sat near him and consoled him with amusing stories.

Writes the
Declaration
of Inde-
pendence

Jefferson was at one time a member of the legislature of Virginia. While there he succeeded in having the legislature repeal the old law of that state requiring every one to support the Episcopal church which was the established church in Virginia, whether he belonged to it or not. He is called the "author of religious liberty in Virginia." He is also the founder of the University of Virginia, and planned a system for public education from the lowest grades through the University itself.

Jefferson's
reforms

Jefferson afterwards became governor of Virginia, and was minister to France at the time the Constitution was adopted. When Washington was President he was selected Secretary of State. After a few years' service he retired to



THOMAS JEFFERSON

live in his beautiful home, Monticello, in Virginia. When John Adams was elected President to succeed Washington, Jefferson was elected Vice-President.

Jefferson was the founder and leader of the political party that in those days was known as the Anti-Federalist Party, which later on became the Republican Party, and which today is known as the Democratic Party. After the term of office of John Adams expired, Jefferson was elected President of the United States.

Becomes
President,
1801

Jefferson believed very firmly in what is known as States' Rights, which is the right of the states to decide many questions for themselves, and which holds the government to a strict construction of the Constitution. All powers not expressly given to the general government are reserved to the states themselves.

Jefferson was very simple and friendly in his manners. He shook hands with all who came to see him, gave no great balls and parties, dressed with simplicity, and lived quietly and studiously at the White House, loved and admired by all who knew him.

4. STEPHEN DECATUR PUNISHES THE PIRATES

TRIPOLI is a small country on the northern coast of Africa, and is one of the Barbary States. When Jefferson was President the rulers of these States were pirates. Their vessels attacked and plundered the merchant ships of all nations, as they tried to pass through the Mediterranean Sea. Several nations, in an effort to protect their merchant ships from attack, paid tribute to the pirates, instead of punishing them and destroying the pirate vessels.

The United States also had been paying tribute to the pirates, but this did not save the American vessels and seamen from attack and robbery. American sailors were made slaves and were compelled to work on the farms or in the groves of rich Tripolitan landowners. American officers were shut up in loathsome prisons, given poor food, and subjected to many insults. American vessels were robbed of their cargoes and many of them destroyed by the pirates. It was by no means an unusual occurrence for a preacher in an American church to announce to his congregation that some member or neighbor had been captured by the pirates in the Mediterranean, and to ask for money to be paid for his ransom.

The pirates were getting more insolent than ever, were demanding more tribute money, and were more regardless of their promises.

An American ship captain was compelled to haul down

his own flag and run up that of Algiers. This was very humiliating to the officers and men of the American ship. The next year the ruler of Tripoli was very insulting to those who brought the tribute money and declared the tribute was not large enough. All this brought on war between the United States and Tripoli.

Our navy consisted of only six small vessels. Four of them were sent to fight the pirates on the Mediterranean. Our little fleet gave a good account of itself. Several pirate ships were captured, and others were driven away from their attack on merchant vessels.

One accident befell the American fleet. The frigate *Philadelphia* while giving chase to a pirate ship, struck on a rock in the harbor of Tripoli, and was compelled to surrender. The pirates swarmed aboard, plundered the ship of everything valuable, and took the seamen and officers ashore as prisoners. It was a sad and discouraging mishap to the Americans.

For months the *Philadelphia* lay helpless on the rocks in the harbor of Tripoli. It was manned by a pirate crew and guarded by pirate ships. At last Lieutenant Stephen Decatur, in command of a little vessel that had been captured from the pirates, was ordered to destroy the *Philadelphia*. It was a cold night in winter, and a heavy wind was blowing. With no lights to guide him, Decatur sailed close to the *Philadelphia* before he was discovered. The pirates on board, not knowing what vessel it was, called out to him to keep off.

Lieutenant
Stephen
Decatur

Decatur kept on until his vessel touched the *Philadelphia*. He then cried out, "Board her!" His men sprang aboard, drew their swords, and soon overpowered the pirate crew. Many of the pirates were cut down, and others driven overboard into the sea. Knowing that he could not move the ship, Decatur ordered it to be set on fire. Flames arose quickly from the sides, while Decatur escaped without the loss of a single man.

After this the harbor was bombarded by the American fleet until the ruler of Tripoli was forced to make terms of peace. After that no more tribute money was paid to the pirates, and no more American merchant vessels were disturbed as they sailed on the Mediterranean Sea. Our little navy had won the respect of the world by punishing the pirates and bringing them to terms.

When Decatur returned to America he was received everywhere with great respect. He was hailed as the hero who had carried the American flag to victory in our first war in foreign waters. Congress voted him a sword for his bravery, receptions were held, speeches of congratulation were made, and everywhere the people were proud of the deeds of the navy which, though small in size, was yet so great in valor.

5. PURCHASING AND EXPLORING LOUISIANA

WHEN Jefferson was elected President, the Mississippi River was the western boundary of our country. Beyond was the great territory known as Louisiana, which was again in possession of the French. New Orleans, also a French possession, was the seaport for the products of the Mississippi valley. The farmers along the Ohio and Mississippi loaded their produce on rafts or in boats and floated it down to New Orleans, to be carried in ships to foreign markets.

It was important for the United States to own New Orleans. The farmers of the West needed for their trade an outlet which no foreign country could close at its pleasure. Therefore Jefferson sent commissioners to France to buy New Orleans.

The Louisiana Purchase, 1803

France was at war with England and was badly in need of money. Consequently, that country proposed to sell not only New Orleans but all the Louisiana territory for fifteen million dollars. The trade was promptly made and Louisiana came into our possession.

It was a great bargain for America. We secured the city of New Orleans and gained control of the Mississippi River. We added to our territory a domain larger than the original thirteen states. The size of the United States was doubled and our western boundary was advanced from the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains.

All the vast area was but little known to the white man. It had not yet been explored and all the wonders of the great West were quite unknown to the settlements on the Atlantic. New Orleans was a small town of eight or ten

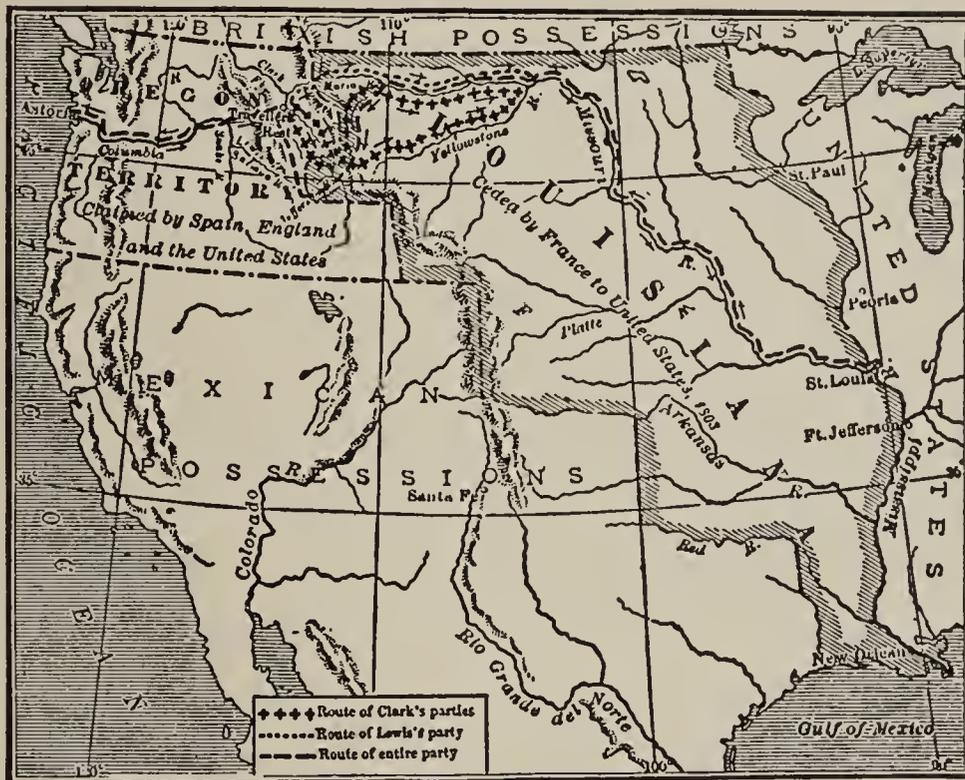
thousand people, living in wooden houses. It gave but little indication then of the great and beautiful city it has since become. St. Louis had only about one thousand people, mainly boatmen or traders with the Indian tribes of the West. Along the river were a few scattered villages, and occasionally some hunter or trapper would penetrate the deep forest beyond the great river. For the most part, however, the great Western country so well known to us today was an unexplored region inhabited by Indians of whose nature and condition the white men were entirely ignorant.

Jefferson selected two young men to explore our new possessions. One was Captain Meriwether Lewis, his own secretary; the other was Captain William Clark, the brother of George Rogers Clark. They were both young men who had seen service on the border. They were both Virginians, eager for adventure, and entered into the enterprise with all their spirit. They were directed to visit the Indian tribes and tell them of the change of ownership; also to study the plants and animals and observe the soil and climate of the West. They were provided with boats, provisions, and arms, as well as presents for the Indians.

The journey was to be a long one—several thousand miles, and most of it was on rivers unknown to the explorers. The party consisted of forty-three brave men. They were accustomed to hardship, knew the secrets of the forest and streams, and started out with confidence and hope.

With boats loaded with coffee, sugar, crackers, dried meat, tools, clothing, and presents, the party dropped down the Ohio, passed up the Mississippi, and spent the winter at the little village of St. Louis. In the spring of 1804 they started up the Missouri. In many places the current was swift, and often the driftwood

Exploring
the West



THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION

nearly upset the boats. The men explored the regions along the river and killed deer, bears, and other game for food. Near the bluffs opposite the present city of Omaha, a council was held with the Indians. The peace pipe was smoked, presents were distributed, and the Indians were told that the land now belonged to the Great Father at Washington. The place was named Council Bluffs.

After traveling sixteen hundred miles the party camped for the winter. In the spring they started again, passed the mouth of the Yellowstone, and at last came in sight of the Rocky Mountains. It was a dangerous trip, through wild canons, over slippery heights, and along steep precipices where one false step would mean instant death. Weary, ragged, half-starved, and footsore, they came to the other side of the mountains.

After a long march they reached the Columbia River. Here they built canoes and descended the river until they came to the Pacific Ocean. They had crossed the western half of the American continent, and were glad enough to build a comfortable camp and spend the winter on the Pacific slope. In the spring they began their long journey homeward. They crossed the mountains and floated down the Missouri until they came to St. Louis, after an absence of two years and four months.

Every one had given them up for lost or dead. Hence there was great joy at their return, and great interest was taken in the wonderful story they had to tell.

Return of
the party,
1807

6. ROBERT FULTON PERFECTS THE STEAMBOAT

ONE morning a crowd of people stood on a dock in New York city waiting to see a strange sight. Robert Fulton had announced that he had made a boat that would move by steam power, and had invited a number of friends to join him in the first trip of the boat up the Hudson River to Albany. On all sides were graceful sailboats, and when the people saw Fulton's ugly little craft with a smokestack sending out clouds of smoke they were much amused and called it "Fulton's Folly."

Fulton had always been fond of inventing things. When he was a boy he made the lead for his own pencils; he astonished the citizens of his town by making his own fireworks for a Fourth of July celebration; he suggested plans for improving guns; and one day, on a fishing trip, worked out a plan for moving the boat by paddle wheels turned by a crank.

When Fulton became a man he learned to paint pictures, but his mind was always on practical things. He suggested a scheme for canals and locks, he devised a submarine torpedo boat, and at last became interested in the experiment that others were making to propel a boat by paddle wheels moved by steam power. The steamboats that others had made had not succeeded for various reasons, but Fulton resolved to make one that would be a success. When he made his steamboat he named it the *Clermont* in honor of the home of his friend Robert Livingston, who provided money for the building of the boat. It was then

Robert Fulton
builds the
"Clermont"

that he invited his friends for the trial trip, and the crowd gathered to see them start.

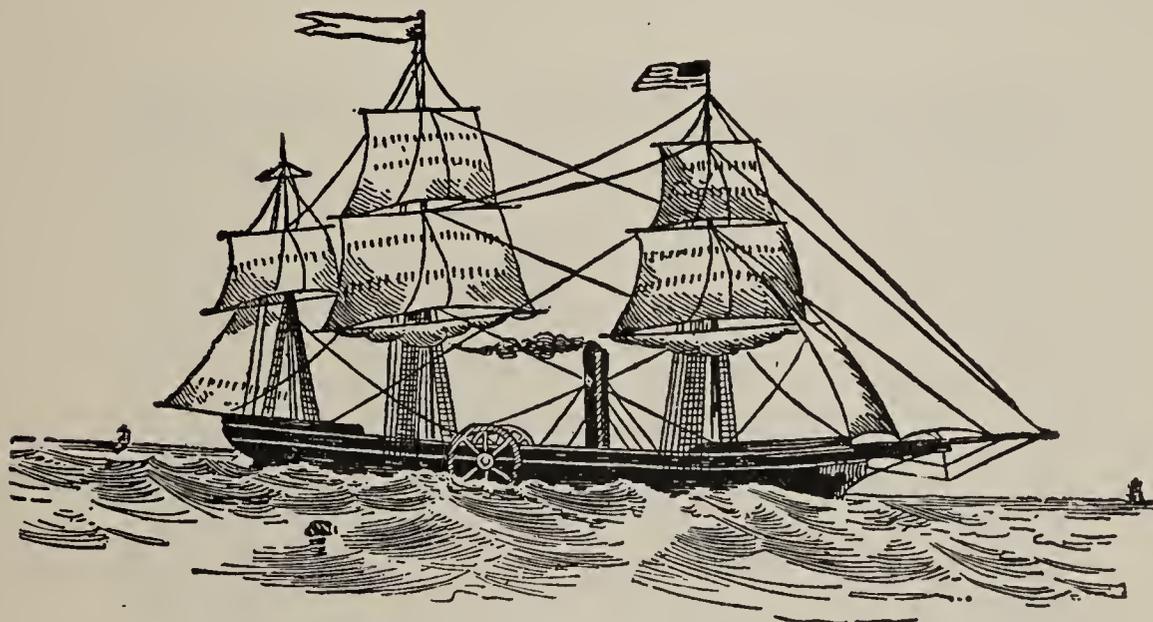
The boat was quite an ungainly affair. Livingston, who was on board, said, "It looks like a sawmill mounted on a scow and set on fire." Fulton moved among his guests and tried to make them cheerful. They were doubtful about the success of the experiment and felt very foolish as the crowd on shore made fun of them. Fulton gave the order for the engines to start, and to the surprise of every one the boat moved boldly away from the shore.

A cheer arose from the crowd and from the passengers. The boat stopped and the cheers ceased. The people on board begged to be put ashore, for they thought the boat was a failure and were afraid it might sink. Fulton asked them to wait a half hour while he found out what was the matter. He went below and in a few minutes made things right. The engines started, the boat moved, the crowds cheered again, and the guests smiled. This time the boat did not stop, but kept on its way up the river. As it passed the sailing vessels, the villages on the shore, and the farmhouses by the way, the people waved their hats and handkerchiefs and shouted congratulations.

At last the *Clermont* reached Albany, and started on its return down the river. This was accomplished in safety, and Fulton's boat was pronounced a success. The *Clermont* soon began to make regular trips up the Hudson, charging seven dollars from New York to Albany.

The "Clermont" starts on its voyage, 1807

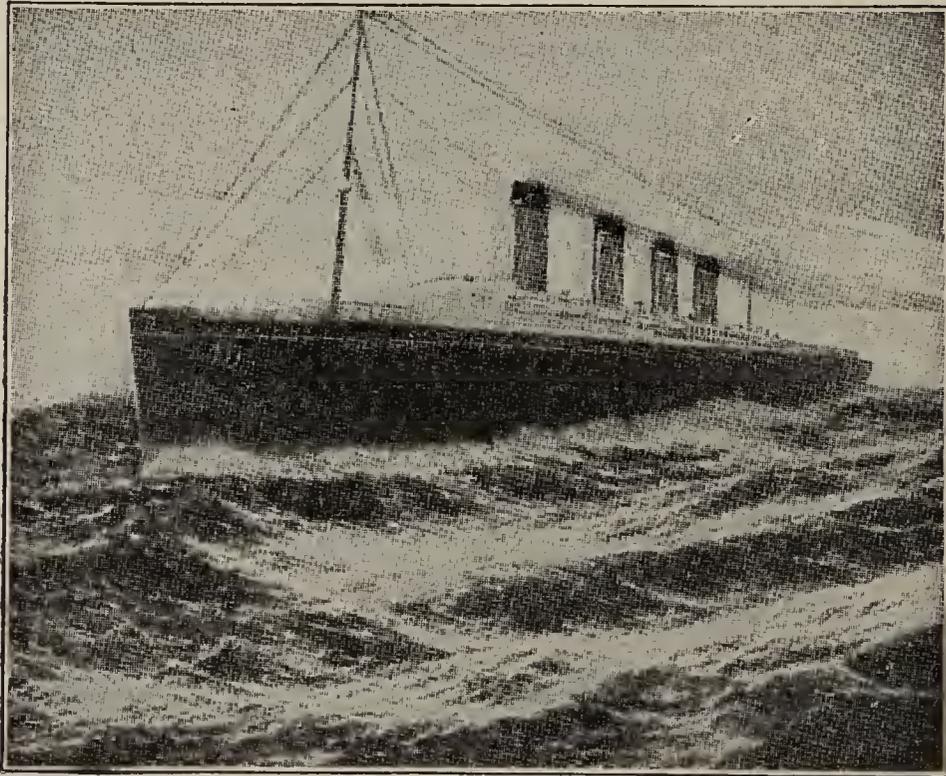
Within a few years a number of other steamboats were built and used for carrying passengers and freight up and down the Hudson River and around the harbor of New York. Steam ferryboats also came into use.



THE "SAVANNAH"

The attention of the people was now turned to steam navigation. Fulton himself put a boat on the Ohio River at Pittsburgh in 1811. A few years later steam- The steamship boats were making regular trips between St. "Savannah" Louis and New Orleans. In 1819 a steamship named the *Savannah* made the first voyage of a steamship across the Atlantic Ocean. The vessel was built for a company in Savannah, Georgia, and had side paddle wheels and also carried sails. When the people in the ports of Europe saw the strange sight of a ship coming into harbor with smoke rolling from its funnels, they hastened to the water's edge with offers to put out the fire.

Since that time have come the great passenger and freight vessels that cross all oceans in every kind of weather, and monster battleships for the navy of all great nations, and many kinds of steam-driven vessels of smaller size, that add greatly to the business and comfort of all people.



A STEAMSHIP OF THE PRESENT DAY

7. THE WAR OF 1812

AFTER Jefferson's term of office expired, James Madison, of Virginia, became President. It was during his administration that the second war with England occurred. It is also called the War of 1812.

England and France had been at war for some time. The United States tried to avoid favoring either country, and wished to remain neutral in the war. England, however, passed a law that any American ship caught trading with France should be seized. France likewise passed a law that any American ship caught trading with England should be seized. Thus the American ships could not safely trade with either country, and our commerce suffered greatly.

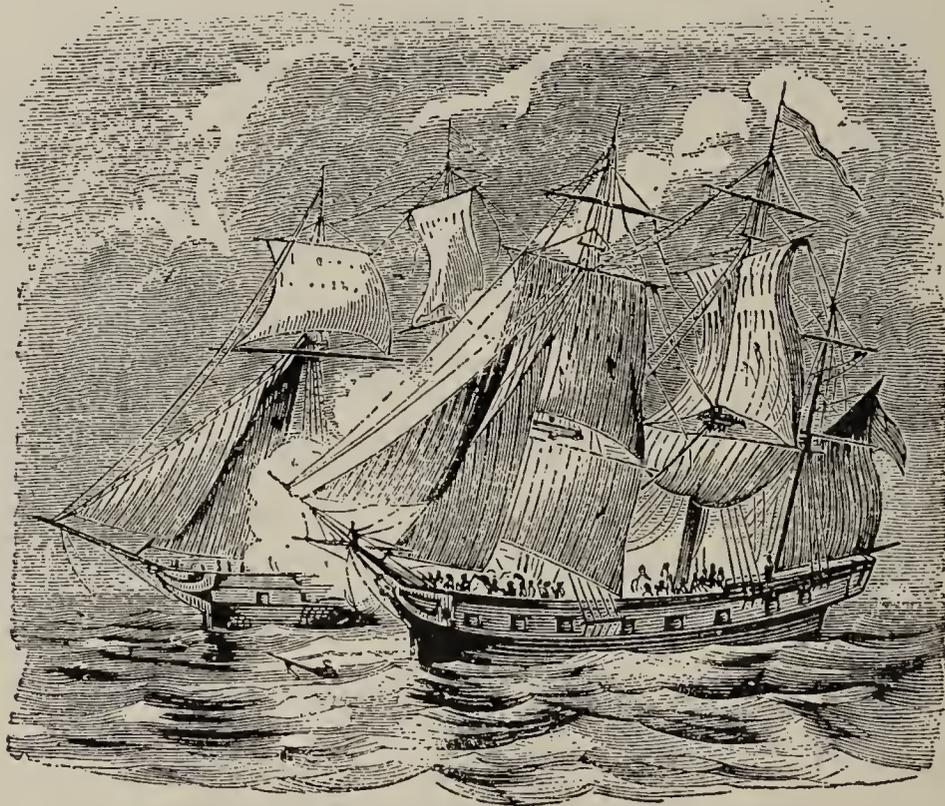
Many of our vessels were seized upon various pretexts, and their cargoes captured. French vessels seized over ten million dollars' worth of American property. **Impressing** England, however, was more offensive than **seamen** France. Her war vessels stopped our merchantmen on the seas, sent armed men aboard, mustered the crew, and seized the sailors for the British service. The British officers said they were searching for English seamen only, but they made little effort to find out whether those they seized were born in England or in the United States. This was called "impressing seamen." The English had declared their rule to be "Once an Englishman always an Englishman."

Hundreds of American sailors were seized and forced to enter the British service. A storm of protest arose from all parts of the country. England insisted upon her right to

impress seamen from American vessels, and to forbid us trading with France. Thereupon war for the second time was declared against England.

War declared
June 18,
1812

The war lasted about two years and a half. The battles were mainly along the Canadian border, since Canada was a British possession, or were fought at sea. There was a great difference between the powerful nation of England and the young



WARSHIPS OF 1812

nation on this side of the Atlantic. England had over eight hundred war vessels of all kinds, the United States had almost none. England had a hundred and fifty thousand seamen, the United States had about six thousand. But England was engaged in other wars and the demands upon her resources were very heavy.

The American vessel *Constitution* fell in with the British man-of-war *Guerrière* near the coast of Nova Scotia. The British ship had challenged any American vessel to combat and the *Constitution* went out to accept the challenge. The two ships drew near each other, the American ship withholding its fire until it came in close range. The British ship poured its broadsides into the *Constitution*, but without serious damage. At last the vessels came fairly abreast. The men were in pistol range and could easily see one another.

The *Constitution* opened fire upon her enemy. Broadside after broadside was poured into the *Guerrière*. Her masts fell one by one, and soon she was a helpless wreck upon the water. Her commander surrendered after he saw it was useless to continue the struggle.

During the battle it was noticed that several of the enemy's cannon balls fell from the *Constitution* without piercing the wooden sides. An old sailor cried out, "She is an old ironside, sir, she is an old ironside." From that time the *Constitution* was called "Old Ironsides."

Some months later Captain Lawrence in command of the *Chesapeake* sailed out of Boston harbor to engage the British ship *Shannon*. The fight lasted but a short time and the *Chesapeake* was completely disabled by the shots of her enemy. Lawrence was mortally wounded, and as he was carried below the decks he said to those around him, "Don't give up the ship." These words have been an inspiration to every American seaman since that time.

The "Chesapeake" and the "Shannon"

The most famous naval battle of the war was the battle of Lake Erie. The Americans decided to get control of Lake Erie and Oliver H. Perry, a young naval officer, was sent to accomplish the task. Perry had to cut timber from the woods and build the ships for his fleet; the iron, stores,



COMMODORE PERRY CHANGES SHIPS AT THE BATTLE ON LAKE ERIE

canvas, and guns had to be brought in sledges from distant cities. After a winter spent in building the fleet, Perry summoned his men on board, sailed into the lake, and challenged the British ships to battle.

It was a desperate engagement that followed. Perry's flagship was shot to pieces and was about to sink. In the midst of the battle, Perry took his little brother, twelve years

old, and entering a small boat reached another vessel, in spite of the bullets of the enemy. The battle continued fiercely until several of the British ships were rendered useless, and surrendered. The others tried to escape, but were pursued and captured. Perry sat down while the smoke of the battle was still in the air and wrote a message to the commander-in-chief, saying, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

Battle of
Lake Erie

This great victory gave us control of Lake Erie, and compelled the British to retire into Canada. The result filled the people with pride and enthusiasm. We had won many naval victories in the war. We had proved that ship for ship, man for man, and gun for gun, America was more than a match for England.

At one time, the British fleet sailed up Chesapeake Bay and landed an army that captured Washington City. President Madison and the Cabinet barely escaped. The British burned the Capitol and other public buildings, and then proceeded to Baltimore. That place was bombarded for many hours, but was not captured by the British.

Washington
burned by
the British,
August, 1814

During the bombardment of Fort McHenry, which was the main defence of Baltimore, Francis S. Key, who was detained on board a British ship, watched the firing of the guns all night long. In the early morning he saw that the flag was still there. The fort had not surrendered. On the back of an old letter he wrote the "Star Spangled Banner," which has since become our national song of rejoicing.

The "Star
Spangled
Banner"

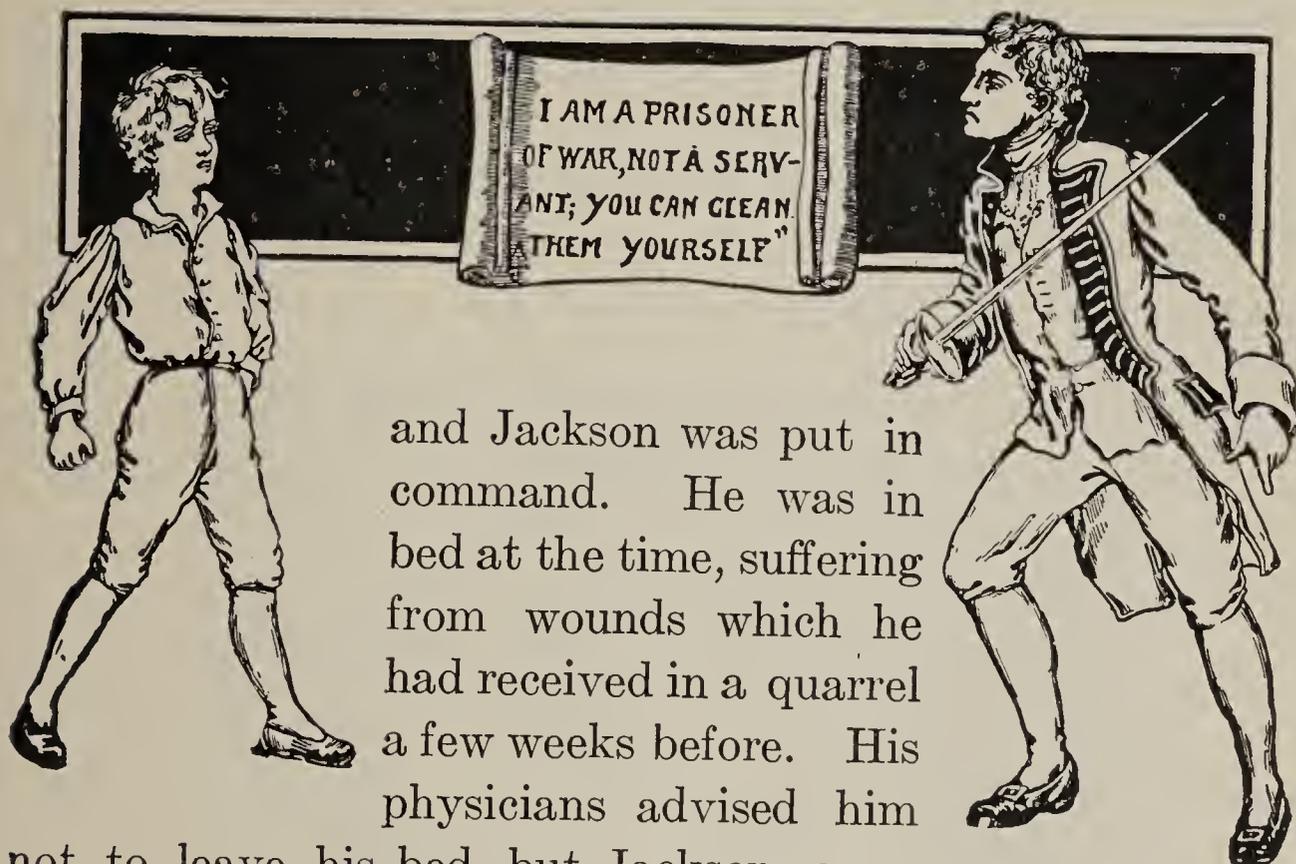
8. ANDREW JACKSON AND THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS

BEFORE we come to the end of the War of 1812 we must learn something of Andrew Jackson. During the Revolution he was a poor country boy, living on the border line between North Carolina and South Carolina, tall, freckle-faced, and full of fire and mischief. He had learned the terrors of war, for the British had killed many of his neighbors and friends, as well as his own brother. When he was thirteen or fourteen years of age he was taken prisoner and a British officer said roughly, "Boy, clean my boots!" The fiery young Jackson replied, "I am a prisoner of war, not a servant; you can clean them yourself." The officer struck him on the head with a sword, leaving a scar that he carried all his life.

When Jackson became a man he moved to Nashville, Tennessee, and began to practice law. The country was rough and full of Indians, and the villages were far apart. He often rode many miles through the forests to reach the court. His high temper led him into many quarrels and fights, and he fought a number of duels. When Tennessee became a state he was elected to Congress, and afterwards became a senator. He was not fond of political life, however, and soon retired from office.

During the War of 1812 Jackson was in command of the forces that defended the southern border. At Fort Mims, in Alabama, the Creek Indians had fallen upon the garrison and massacred several hundred men, women, and children.

Tennessee raised a body of troops to punish the Creeks



and Jackson was put in command. He was in bed at the time, suffering from wounds which he had received in a quarrel a few weeks before. His physicians advised him not to leave his bed, but Jackson arose, and almost fainting from weakness he put his arm in a sling, mounted his horse, and started on his campaign.

Campaign
against the
Indians

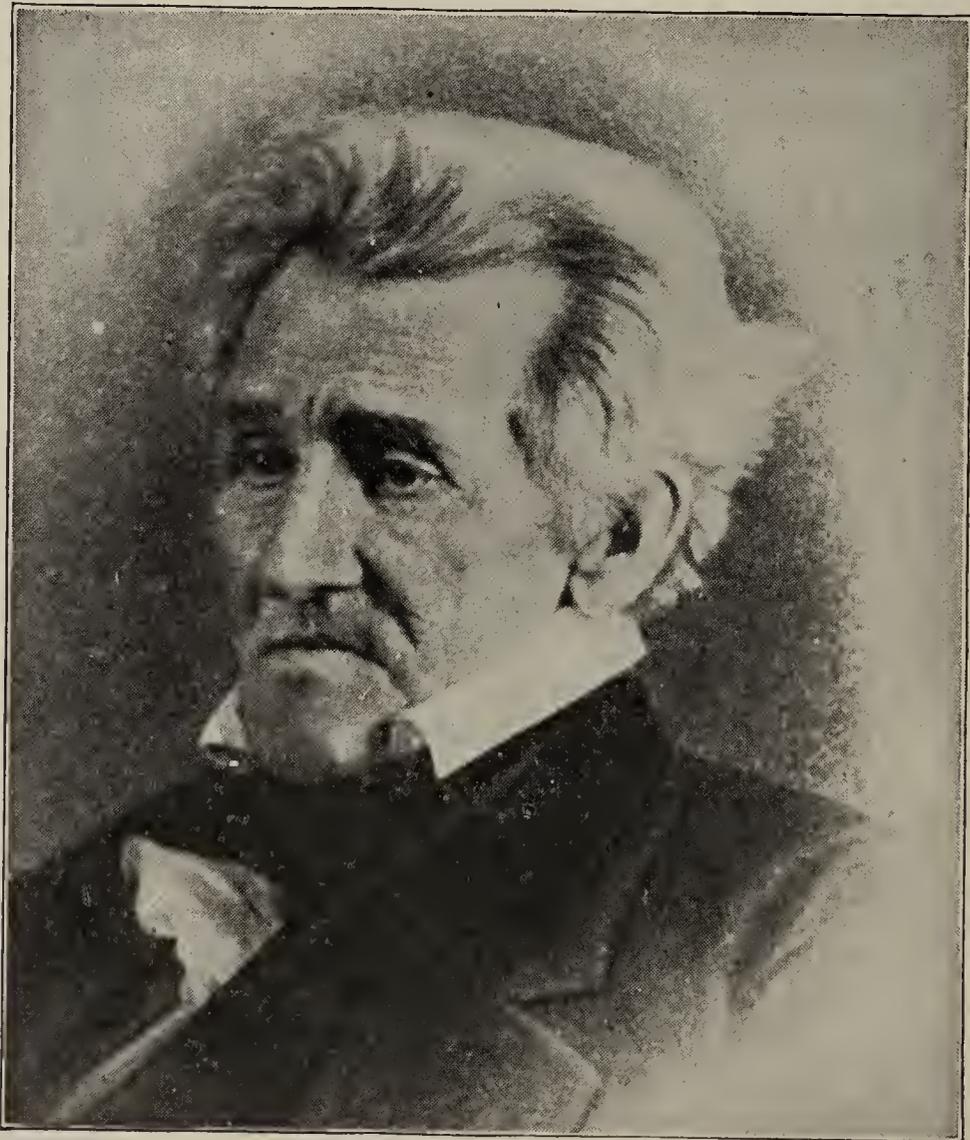
During the campaign some soldiers grew mutinous because food was scarce, and threatened to return home. Jackson, with his wounded arm still in a sling, rode up to them and taking his pistol in his free hand, pointed it at them saying, "I will shoot the first man that moves." The soldiers knew he was a man of his word, and there was no further trouble from the mutinous men. They admired and loved Jackson, but they were also afraid of him.



JACKSON AND THE
BRITISH OFFICER

The Creeks had been stirred up by Tecumseh, a famous Indian warrior. Tecumseh was probably the greatest American Indian that the race ever produced. He was a noble soldier, and never allowed his prisoners to be tortured. Upon one occasion he came

Tecumseh



ANDREW JACKSON

upon a number of Indians engaged in torturing a lot of captives while a British general looked on unconcerned. Tecumseh furiously thrust the Indians aside, freed the poor

wretches from their torture, and turning to the general, said, "Why do you allow such an outrage?" "Your warriors cannot be restrained," was the reply. "You are not fit to command," cried Tecumseh. "Go home and put on dresses like a woman."

Tecumseh was an able general, skilled in woodcraft and strategy. He was personally very brave. As an orator he had few equals; no one could resist his splendid eloquence.

When Tecumseh went to Alabama to stir up the Creeks, he found them unwilling to rebel against the whites. He angrily told them, "Your blood is white. You do not want to fight. You do not believe the Great Spirit has sent me, but you shall believe it. I am going back to Detroit. When I get there I shall stamp my foot on the ground and shake every house in your village."

After he left, the Indians counted the days until he should reach home. About the time he was due there, an earthquake shook the village. The Indians rushed wildly from their dwellings, crying, "Tecumseh is in Detroit: we feel the stamp of his foot."

Jackson continued in pursuit of the Creeks. He defeated them at the battle of Horseshoe Bend on the Tallapoosa River. The power of the Indians in the South was broken forever, and they were glad to sue for peace. Jackson had marched his army long and far, and had endured much hardship without complaint, and so his soldiers named him "Old Hickory" because he was so tough.

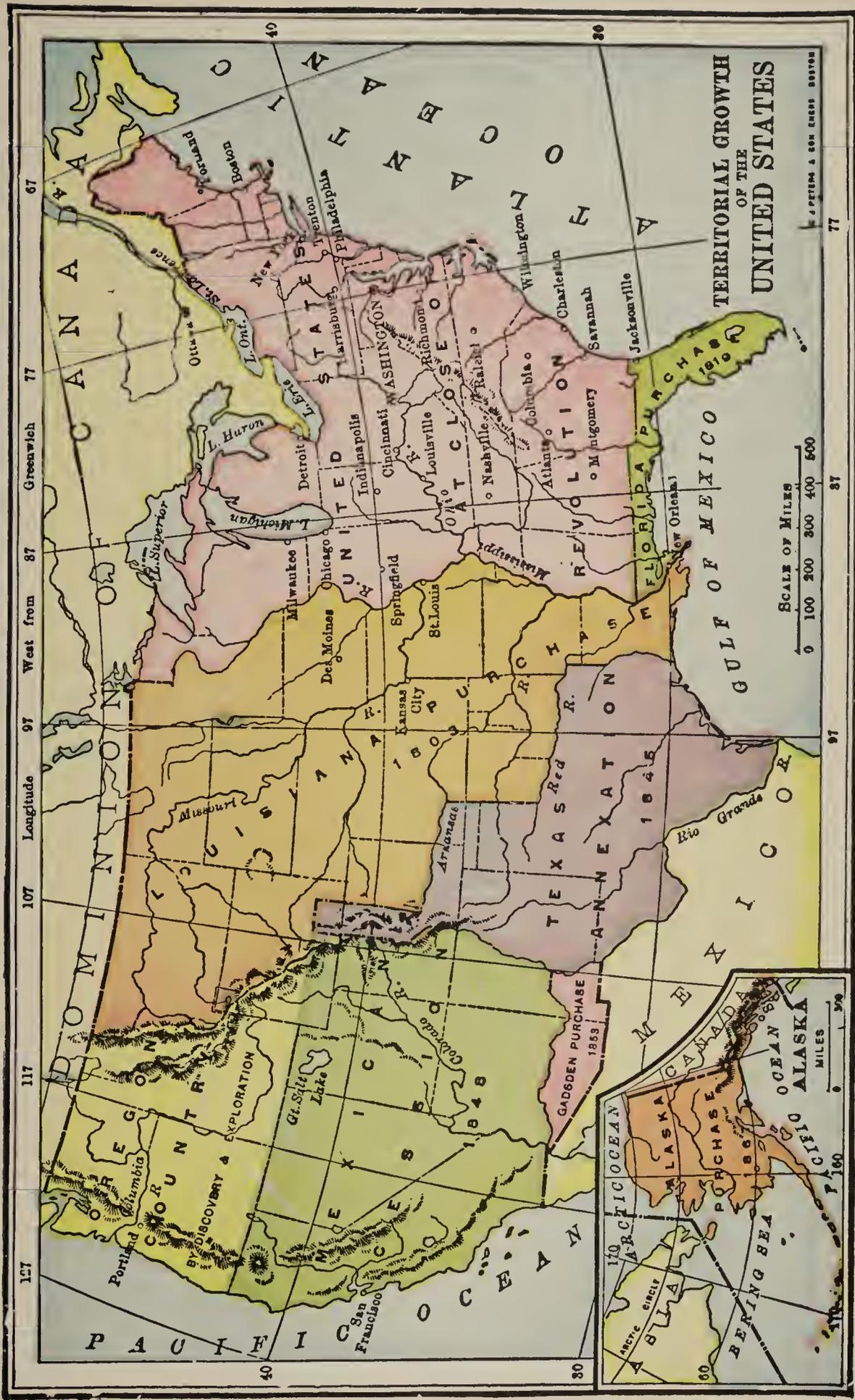
The British threatened to attack New Orleans. General Jackson hurried his army to that place. He found the

people in a panic of fear and distress. He immediately declared martial law. The British landed below the city and Jackson began to build his defences. Day and night for weeks the work went on. Every horse, mule, ox, and cart in the city was put into service. The British advanced at night, but Jackson was on the watch. The sleeping army was aroused and by four o'clock every man was in his place. By daybreak the battle began, but it was over in two hours. The slaughter of the British, as they advanced against the American earthworks, was frightful. The killed and wounded fell in heaps until hundreds were slain. General Jackson lost only a few men. The British withdrew from the attack and sailed away.

The battle of New Orleans was fought two weeks after a treaty of peace had been signed in Europe between England and the United States. There were no cables or telegraph lines, or swift sailing steamboats, in those days to carry the news. The news of the great victory at New Orleans reached the Northern states almost simultaneously with that of the signing of the treaty of peace that closed the war. Everywhere there was great rejoicing.

Battle of
New Orleans,
January 8,
1815

Treaty of
Peace, De-
cember 24,
1815.



**TERRITORIAL GROWTH
OF THE
UNITED STATES**

SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500

W. B. BROWN & SON ENGRAVERS BOSTON

127 117 107 97 87 77 67
Longitude

Greenwich

West from

117

127

77

87

97

100

110

120

130

140

150

160

170

180

190

200

210

220

230

240

250

260

270

280

290

300

310

320

330

340

350

360

370

380

390

400

410

420

430

440

450

460

470

480

490

500

9. PROGRESS AND IMPROVEMENTS

AFTER the War of 1812 was over there came a long era of peace and prosperity. James Monroe, of Virginia, succeeded James Madison as President. His term of office is known as the "Era of Good Feeling," because there were no political quarrels or wars to vex the country. The administration of Monroe is chiefly noted for his famous message to Congress, in which he declared that the European governments should no longer found any colonies in America, or interfere in the affairs of any American country. This is known as the "Monroe Doctrine," and is one of the established principles of our government.

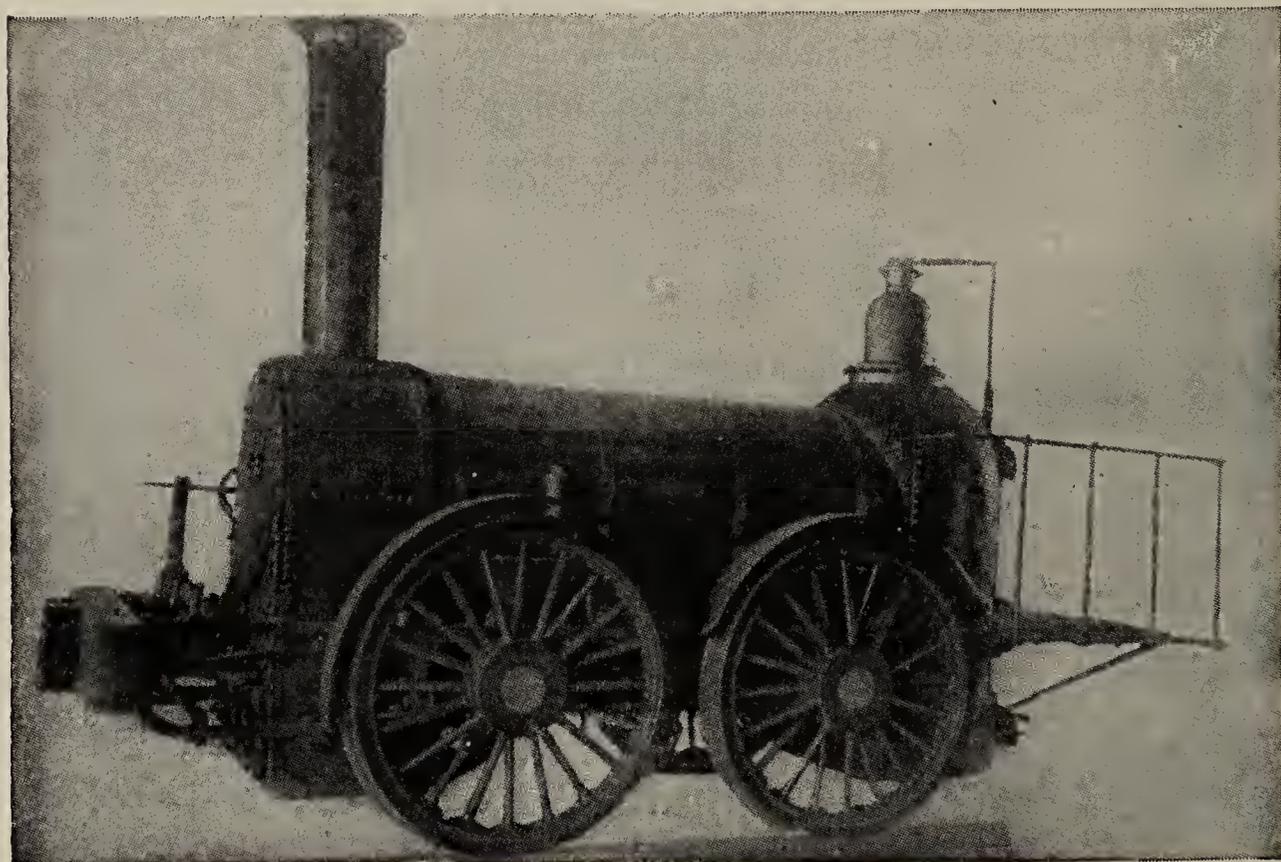
The Monroe
Doctrine,
1823

John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, became the next President. The spirit of progress and improvement had seized the people. One of the greatest enterprises of that day was the Erie Canal, which was to connect the Hudson River with Lake Erie. This canal is nearly four hundred miles long, and canal boats and barges carry great quantities of freight from one end to the other at very little expense. When it was opened the farmers and merchants of the West abandoned the wagon roads and began to use the canal instead.

The Erie
Canal, 1825

By this time there were ten millions of people in the United States. Instead of thirteen states there were twenty-four. Throughout the North, people were building mills and factories, and in the South more cotton was raised every year. Steamboats were plying on nearly all the large rivers, roads were opened between the large towns,

and the nation was showing great progress and prosperity. Coal was coming slowly into use, and even gas was being introduced into a few large cities.



Copyright by International Film Co., Chicago

AN EARLY LOCOMOTIVE

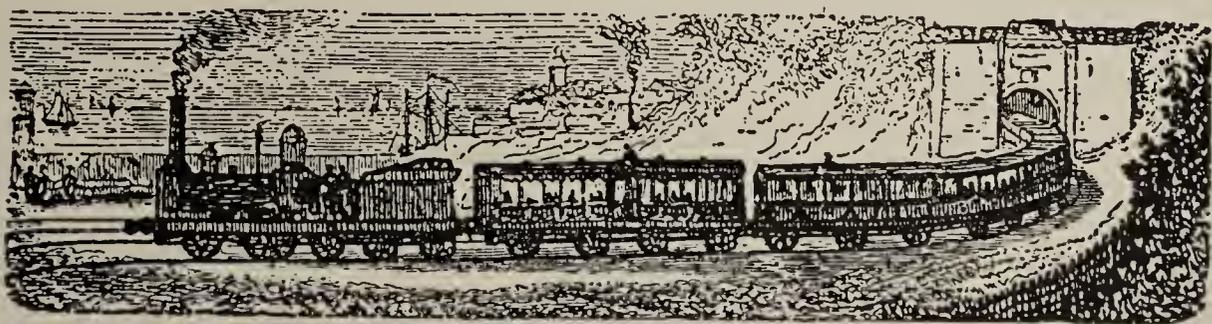
The locomotive and the railroad car came into notice about this time. The longest and the most important

Beginning of of the early railroads in America was between
railroads, Charleston and Hamburg, South Carolina.
1830

The locomotive used on this road was a very crude affair. It was the first locomotive built in the United States for actual service on a railroad. It was fed with fat pine and sent out clouds of smoke and showers of hot cinders. At the end of a trip the blackened passengers

looked like negroes. A sad accident happened. The negro fireman, tired of hearing the hissing steam, fastened down the steam valve, and then to make sure sat on it. The result is easily imagined.

On some of the early railroads, the coaches for the passengers were like huge barrels mounted on trucks. The conductor walked on a little platform outside and collected fares through small windows. The rails were flat, and not very securely fastened to the ties, so that they occasionally curved like snakes and ran



ONE OF THE FIRST RAILROAD TRAINS

through the bottom of the cars, to the great danger of the passengers.

The speed of the early locomotive was very slow. When the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad announced that it would use steam power instead of horse power on its road, people were in doubt which was the means of faster travel. On a trial of speed between the engine and a stagecoach the horse came in as winner.

A trip over the Mohawk Valley road was an occasion of great display. The engineer wore a dress coat and the rude coaches were full of distinguished guests in

Trying experience of passengers

fine clothes. The coaches were held together by slack chains, so that when the train started nearly everybody was thrown out of his seat. The engine sent out so much smoke that the passengers were almost blinded and choked, and the hot cinders made them so uncomfortable that they raised their umbrellas. But as the umbrellas soon caught fire they were thrown away, while



Copyright by International Film Co., Chicago

A MODERN PASSENGER TRAIN

the guests spent their time beating each other with hats, handkerchiefs, and canes to put out the fire. Nevertheless, the trip was declared a great success.

From this beginning railroads grew rapidly. In ten years there were three thousand miles of road and hundreds of locomotives and comfortable coaches. Today the rail-

roads of the United States, if put into a straight line, would reach nine times around the world. Express trains go fifty miles or more an hour, and every comfort is provided for the passengers.

Of late, American engineers have made electric locomotives of great speed and power, which in our large cities



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

A FLYING MACHINE

are taking the place of steam locomotives. The flying machine has already been tested to a speed of more than a hundred miles an hour. In modern warfare it is used for fighting, scouting, and bombing, and for photographic purposes.

10. HENRY CLAY

MANY of the great men of America were born in the country, with few advantages, spending their early life in poverty, toil, and hardship. They became eminent by faithful work, hard study, and close attention to duty. Henry Clay was one of these. When he was a boy in Virginia he attended school in a log schoolhouse, plowed barefoot in the fields, and could often be seen riding a pony to mill, seated on a meal sack. People soon began to call him the "Mill Boy of the Slashes," because the Slashes was the name of the district in which he lived. In after life he was proud of the name they had given him.

When he was about fifteen years of age he moved to Richmond and became a copying clerk in one of the courts. When he first entered the clerk's office he was tall and awkward and wore a badly fitting suit of clothes which his mother had made for him.



THE MILL BOY OF THE SLASHES

The other clerks laughed at him, but they soon learned to respect him for his good nature and intelligence. Every night when the other clerks went out for amusement Clay went home to read.

His industry
and studi-
ousness

He studied law and was soon admitted to the bar. He made special effort to train his voice and memory to become a great orator. He would read some good book, such as history, and then recite aloud the words or give the sense of what he had read. It was his custom to go into the woods or into a barn and try out his speeches. He would select some subject, study it well, and then make a speech on it, in the woods, or with the cattle of the barn for an audience. He also organized a debating club among the young men of Richmond and discussed the great issues of the day. By study, persistence, and practice he laid the foundation of his great career. When he was twenty-one he moved to Kentucky and began to practice law. He was successful from the start, and soon had many clients. It has been said that no murderer who was defended by Henry Clay ever suffered the extreme penalty of the law. He soon entered public life, was elected to the state legislature, then was appointed to the United States Senate, and later was elected to the House of Representatives. He was chosen as Speaker, or presiding officer, seven times, serving fourteen years in all. He was a great orator. He had a rich, musical voice, and whenever he spoke crowds came to hear him. He was polite in his manners, never forgot a name or a face, and made many friends by his genial smile and warm hand-grasp.

Clay as a
lawyer and
an orator

When Clay was Speaker of the House of Representatives the great question of slavery was disturbing the country. By this time all the Northern states had freed their slaves, and slave holding was confined to the Southern states. In the North there was a growing sentiment against slavery, while in the South, where slave labor was profitable, the feeling was very much in favor of it.



HENRY CLAY

From time to time new states had been admitted to the Union. Some were free states and some were slave states. It so happened that the number of each kind had been kept equal, so that advocates from neither side of the slavery question could control the government. By this time there were twenty-two states, eleven free and

eleven slave. Then the question came up of admitting Maine and Missouri as states. Maine would be a free state, and if Missouri came in as a free state, then the free states would be two more in number than the slave states.

A great discussion on the admission of Missouri arose in Congress. Should slavery be permitted in Missouri or

not? It seemed as if the Union itself was in danger. To bring peace to the country, Henry Clay came forward with a compromise. He proposed that Missouri should come in as a slave state, but that all the rest of the Louisiana territory, north of the line that forms the southern boundary of Missouri ($36^{\circ} 30'$), should forever be free territory. This is known as the "Missouri Compromise." Both sides agreed to it, and the dangerous question of slavery slept for a while.

The Missouri
Compromise,
1820

Clay became known as the "Great Pacificator" on account of his successful efforts in preventing the dispute regarding slavery and the tariff from breaking up the Union.

11. DANIEL WEBSTER

DANIEL WEBSTER was born on a farm in New Hampshire. He was a delicate child, unable to do hard work, but was wonderfully bright. What time he was not at play he spent in some quiet corner reading a book. He entered school when very young and soon learned all his teacher was able to teach him. He was known far and wide as a remarkable child. One day a storekeeper showed him a copy of the Constitution of the United States printed on a cotton handkerchief. Webster did not rest until he had saved enough pennies to buy it, and when he bought it he did not rest until he had learned the Constitution by heart.

Webster's father was a poor man with but little learning. He was wise enough, however, to know the advantages of an education. One day he told his son he intended to send him to college. Webster was so anxious for an education that he could not speak for emotion. He afterwards said, "A warm glow ran all over me, and I laid my head on my father's shoulder and wept." At college he was a hard student, and in a short time was the best speaker and writer in his class.

When Webster left college he began to practice law, and later moved to Boston. He was no longer delicate and slender, but had become a man of noble appearance, sturdy and dignified. His eyes were dark and his brow was massive. People said, "When Daniel Webster walked the streets of Boston he made the buildings look small." Once when he visited Europe some one said, "Surely there goes a king!"

A great wit said, on looking at his dignified appearance, "He is a small cathedral by himself."

At the laying of the cornerstone of the Bunker Hill monument in 1825 Daniel Webster delivered a great oration. The eager crowd pressed forward and came near carrying away the platform on which the speakers were sitting. They asked him to appeal to the crowd to move back. Webster paused in his speech and begged those in front to desist. "We cannot, Mr. Webster," they cried; "it is impossible." "Impossible!" thundered the great orator. "Nothing is impossible on Bunker Hill." The great crowd, swayed by his eloquent words, rolled back like waves from the shore.



DANIEL WEBSTER

Webster was elected a member of the United States Senate from Massachusetts. At that time one of the great questions agitating the country was the tariff. In order to raise money to run the government, taxes or **Tariff for revenue** duties were laid on many articles brought from abroad and offered for sale in America. The money thus raised for this purpose was called a tariff for revenue, and everybody was content to pay it, so long as it was used only to pay the expenses of the government.

After a while, however, the government increased the duties on certain articles in order to keep foreign goods from being sold in America at a less price than the same kind of articles could be profitably manufactured and sold in this country. This was called a tariff for protection, and only those sections engaged in manufacturing were benefited by it.

The tariff for protection bore hard on the Southern people because they had to buy manufactured articles mainly from New England, and the high prices threatened to reduce the South to poverty. They therefore complained loudly of the tariff. The New England manufacturers replied that without the high prices their mills would have to be shut down, and then they would be the ones reduced to poverty. A quarrel began between the agricultural states and the manufacturing states. Some of the Southern states threatened to disregard the tariff laws of Congress, and to declare them null and void inside their borders.

This condition of affairs brought about a great debate in the United States Senate between Robert Y. Hayne, from South Carolina, and Daniel Webster, from Massachusetts. Hayne declared that the people of the Southern states were compelled by the tariff law to buy manufactured articles at a price they could not afford, that New England was getting rich and the South was getting poor, and that it was unconstitutional for laws to oppress one section in order to enrich another. Under such conditions a state had the right to refuse to obey the laws.

**The Hayne-
Webster de-
bate, 1830**

Daniel Webster replied to the arguments of Hayne. He was in the prime of his life, forty-eight years of age; his hair was black, his forehead high, his eyes dark and sunk under shaggy brows. His frame was massive, and his voice deep and vibrant, like the rolling of a drum. He had said, on the morning of the debate, "The people shall learn this day, before the sun goes down, what I understand the Constitution to be."

Webster's
reply to
Hayne

When he rose to speak the galleries were crowded with people. The senators were in their places and realized that a crisis was at hand in the affairs of the nation. Webster spoke for four hours, delivering one of the greatest speeches of his life.

Webster argued that no single state could be the judge of the wisdom of the laws of Congress; that the union of the states could not be broken by any one of them, and that no state had the right to nullify a law of the land.

12. JOHN C. CALHOUN .

JOHN C. CALHOUN was born and reared in South Carolina. When a boy he worked in the field with his father Calhoun as a student and listened to his stories of Revolutionary times as they sat by the fire on winter nights. He grew up a quiet, thoughtful boy, fond of rambling through the woods and of reading books on history. When he was about twenty years of age he entered Yale College and soon was the leader of his class. The president was so struck with his studiousness and ability that he said, "Calhoun will be a great man—perhaps the President of the United States."

After studying law for several years he began to practice in South Carolina, but he did not enjoy it. He called reading law "a dry and solitary journey." He preferred history, the great deeds of great men. He soon entered public life and was sent to Congress about the time the War of 1812 began. The members were delighted with his powers of oratory. His great blue eyes glowed like coals of fire, his hair fell in masses about his broad forehead, and his rich voice poured out a volume of ringing words.

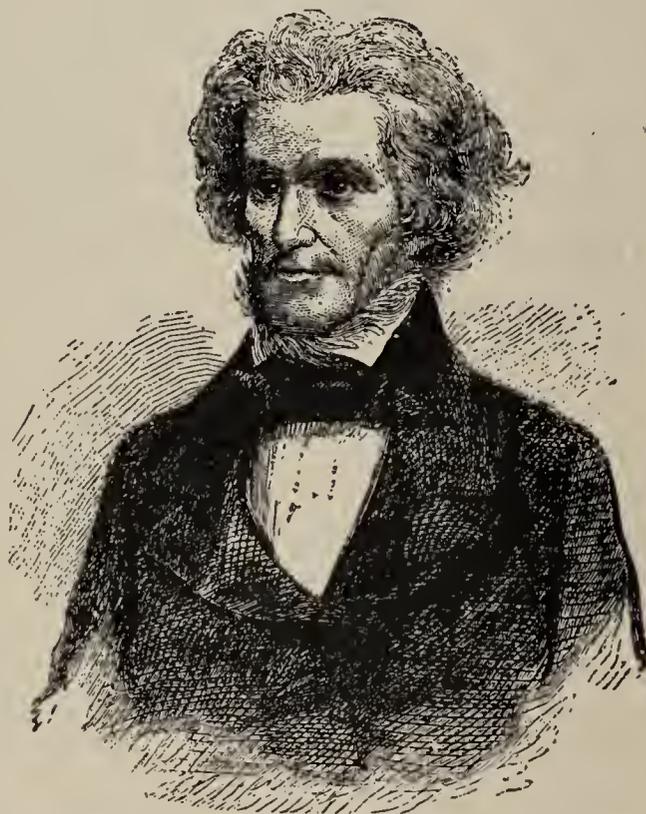
Andrew Jackson succeeded John Quincy Adams as President of the United States. Calhoun was Vice-President. In that office it was his duty to preside over the Senate. It was the time of the great agitation over the question of the tariff. Calhoun wrote a letter to the people of South Carolina in which he told them there would always be a conflict between the interests of the North and the South;

Calhoun's
advice to
South Caro-
lina, 1832

that the Southern people who used slave labor to raise cotton and tobacco could not have the same interests as the Northern people who used free labor to manufacture cloth and iron; that the tariff was designed to help the Northern states and to hurt the Southern states. He therefore declared that the way to protect South Carolina from this unjust law was to declare it null and void so far as South Carolina was concerned.

South Carolina took his advice and passed an ordinance of nullification. President Jackson threatened to send troops into that state to enforce the tariff, and to hang any man who shed a drop of blood in opposition to the laws. He secured the passage of a bill by Congress known as the Force Bill, giving him the power to use the army and navy to enforce the collection of the tariff.

But South Carolina was a plucky state and Calhoun was a determined leader. It looked as if civil war would follow. Henry Clay, however, secured a compromise measure by which the tariff was reduced a little every year, and South Carolina repealed the ordinance of nullification.



JOHN C. CALHOUN

When Clay was told that his compromise measures would defeat his ambition to be President of the United States, he made the reply, "I would rather be right than be President."

Calhoun was in public life for nearly forty years. He resigned the office of vice-president in order to become a United States senator. With Clay and Webster he formed "the great trio" of senators whose wonderful abilities controlled the destinies of the country for more than a generation. Calhoun was the great leader of the Southern people, the advocate of the rights of the states, and a firm believer in preserving the institution of slavery.

13. MORSE INVENTS THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH

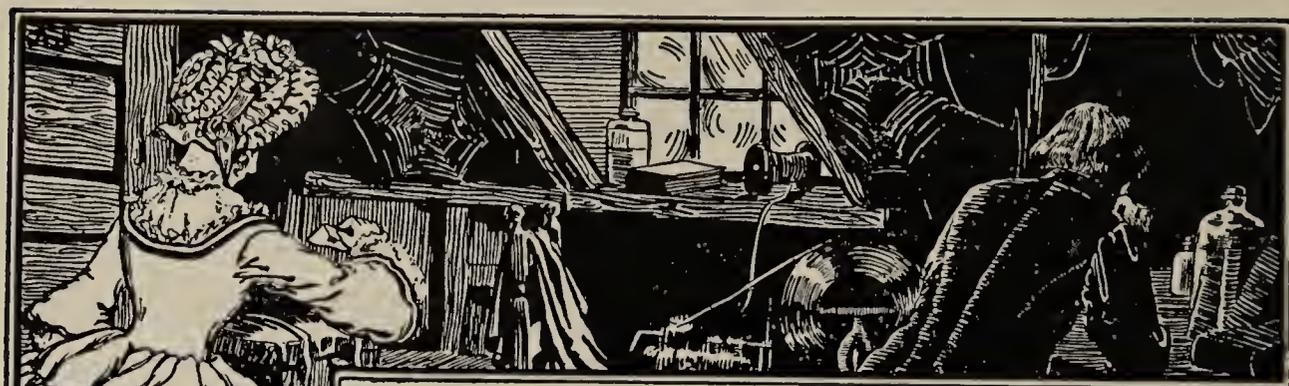
UPON one occasion a number of passengers on board a vessel returning from Europe to America were discussing electricity. In the company was Samuel F. B. Morse, a painter, who had been abroad studying art. One of the company remarked, "I have heard that a current of electricity passes over a very long wire almost instantaneously." This set Morse to thinking and to planning how an electric current might be used to make signals, and by means of wires to carry messages over long distances.

Morse worked on the drawings of an instrument and wrote an alphabet of dots and dashes. Before the ship reached New York he had practically invented the telegraph as we know it at the present day. He became so interested in the idea that he painted no more pictures, but gave himself up to making a telegraph instrument. He worked day and night in an attic room in New York, leaving his bench only to get a little food. He was very poor, and his friends thought it a great pity for so fine an artist to be wasting his time on so foolish an idea.

At last the instrument was made and his friends were invited to see it work. He showed them a large coil of wire, with an instrument at one end for sending a message, and a receiver at the other end for taking it. Some of the guests whispered messages to Morse. He sent the words over the wire, which were received in dots and dashes on a piece of paper at the other end of the wire. The messages were then read by some one

Morse works
on his inven-
tion

Testing the
telegraph



“I COME TO CONGRATULATE YOU”

who understood the Morse alphabet. The guests were greatly astonished and delighted.

Morse was too poor to build a telegraph line without assistance, and so he applied to Congress for thirty thousand dollars to test his invention. Some of the members made great sport of the idea and had many jokes at Morse's expense. The hour of adjournment of Congress approached and Morse saw no chance of getting the appropriation. He left the hall and went home in great discouragement. Early next morning a young lady, a friend of the inventor, came to him and said, “Your bill was passed by Congress at the last moment, and I come to congratulate you.” Morse was greatly delighted, and told the young lady that she should send the first message over the wires when the line was completed.

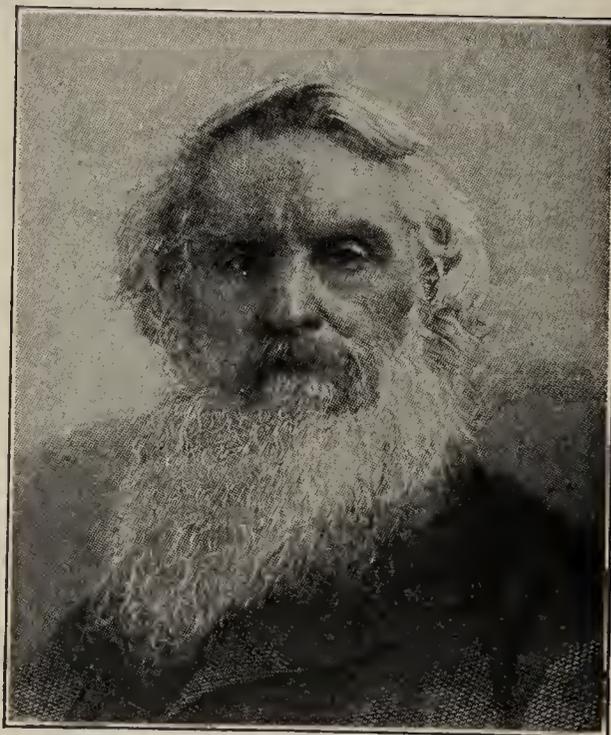
Congress
makes an
appropriation

Morse began to build a line between Washington and Baltimore. At first the wires were put in tubes and buried in the ground, but that did not work well. They were then put on poles, as we see them at the present day.

When twenty-two miles had been finished from Washington toward Baltimore, Morse decided to give the people a surprise. A convention held in Baltimore had nominated a candidate for President. When the convention had acted, a train started with the news to Washington. When the train reached the telegraph wire the news was promptly sent on to Washington ahead of the train. The passengers were much astonished on reaching the city to find that the news was already one or two hours old.

The first news by telegraph, 1844

When the line was finished to Baltimore and the day came to make the test, Morse asked the young lady who had brought him word that Congress had granted him the



SAMUEL F. B. MORSE

The first message, 1844

money, to send the first message. She wrote the words from the Bible "What hath God wrought!"

Other messages were sent over the wires and the great electric telegraph was declared a success.

Many years afterwards Cyrus W. Field decided to lay an electric cable under the Atlantic Ocean, so that messages could be sent between Europe and America. The Atlantic The wires were protected by gutta percha and cable, 1866 laid along the ocean bed. Several attempts were made

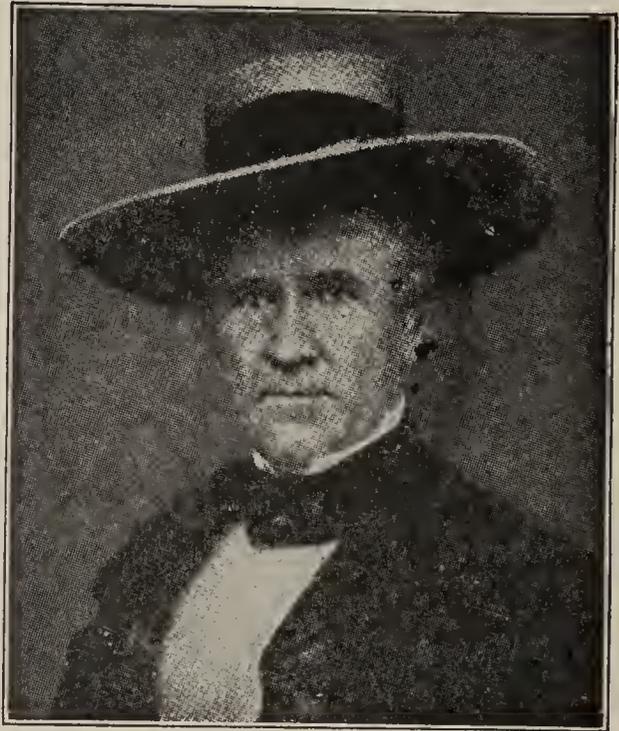
before a successful cable was laid. At the present day millions of miles of telegraph and cable wire connect all cities and countries, and the events of each day in all parts of the earth are flashed over the wires and are printed in the papers. Much of our business depends on the telegraph, and we can have the satisfaction of hearing from our relatives and friends from any part of the earth in a few hours.

In late years Marconi, an Italian, invented an instrument for sending messages without the use of wires. This **Wireless telegraphy** is known as wireless telegraphy. At first the messages were sent only short distances. Ships were equipped with wireless telegraphic instruments, improvements were made, and the power was increased until messages could be sent and received hundreds of miles from land. In this way many lives have been saved by distressed ships calling for aid. Wireless stations of great power are built along the coasts and in the large cities of the world, so that at the present day messages are easily sent across the seas and to distant parts of the earth.

14. TEXAS BECOMES A PART OF THE UNITED STATES

THE hero of the independence of Texas was Sam Houston. He was born in Virginia and moved to Tennessee when he was thirteen years old. His brothers placed him in a trader's store as clerk, but he did not like his tame life and ran away to live with the Cherokee Indians. The chief adopted him as his son, and made him dress in Indian fashion and learn the Indian language.

During the War of 1812 Houston was an officer under General Jackson in the battle of Horseshoe Bend. As he was leading his men against the Creek Indians a barbed arrow struck him in the leg. A friend pulled the arrow from the wound and the blood flowed freely. In spite of this Houston remained in the battle. He was so weakened by wounds and loss of blood that he had to be conveyed to his mother's home on a litter, several hundred miles through the rough country. It took him a long time to regain his health.



SAM HOUSTON

Afterwards Houston began the practice of law in Nashville. He was elected a member of Congress and later on became Governor of Tennessee. While he was a candidate for reelection he suddenly resigned his office and left the

state. He went again to the Cherokee Indians, and found the old chief who had adopted him as a son. He took up
 Abandons the life and habits of the tribe. He dressed
 public life like the Indians, spoke their language, and sat on the floor of the chief's cabin, eating hominy out of the same dish with him and his friends.

After a year he went to Washington to see his friend Andrew Jackson, who was the President of the United States, in order to protest against the way the Indian agents were treating the red men. He declared the agents were swindling the Indians in buying their lands for such trifles as a blanket, a flask of powder, or a bottle of whiskey. After that the swindling agents were removed and the Indians had better treatment.

Houston now left his Cherokee friends and moved to Texas. That great country was a part of Mexico, but
 Houston many of the inhabitants were settlers from the
 moves to United States. The Texans were tired of the
 Texas treatment they received from Mexico, and finally declared themselves free and independent. This brought on war between Texas and Mexico. Sam Houston was elected commander-in-chief of the Texas army.

The most noted event in the war was the capture by a large Mexican force of an old mission near San Antonio
 The Massa- called the Alamo. Inside the fort were
 cre at the fewer than two hundred Texans besieged by a
 Alamo, 1836 thousand or more Mexicans. The brave commander answered the demand for surrender by a cannon shot. He said, "I shall never surrender or retreat." After a

ten days' siege the Mexicans stormed the fort. So great were their numbers that they "tumbled over the walls like sheep." The Texans fought from room to room, using their clubbed rifles and bowie knives, so long as there was one left alive. At last the brave defenders were all slain, not one being spared. After the fort had fallen five Texans who were discovered in hiding were taken out and run through with a bayonet. It was a dreadful massacre, and fired the hearts of the Texans for revenge.

In addition to this outrage, the Mexicans had captured a number of soldiers at Fort Goliad and taken them prisoners of war. After the soldiers had surrendered their arms and were expecting to be sent home on parole, the Mexicans marched them out of the fort and shot them to death.

Santa Anna, the Mexican general, paid dearly for his cruelty. General Houston pursued him and overtook him at the San Jacinto River. The soldiers went into battle crying, "Remember the Alamo! Remember the Alamo!" The Mexicans fled before them and were cut down with great slaughter. Santa Anna was captured, over six hundred of his men killed, and the independence of Texas was secured.

Texas became known as the "Lone Star Republic," because it had a flag with one star. Sam Houston was the first President after its independence had been recognized. Texas applied for admission into the Union. There were at that time twenty-six states in the Union, evenly divided between slave states and free states. The free states opposed the admission of Texas

Battle of San
Jacinto, 1836

The admis-
sion of
Texas, 1845

on the ground that it increased the number of slave states, and already there was bitter opposition to the extension of slavery. After eight years of controversy Texas was admitted to the Union in 1845. It is the largest state in the Union, and covers more territory than the New England states.

15. WE ACQUIRE THE PACIFIC SLOPE

MEXICO had never yielded her claim to Texas. When that state became a part of the United States, Mexico took offence, and the relations between the two countries were by no means friendly. The southern part of Texas was disputed territory and the Mexican troops there soon came into conflict with the American troops. This brought on war between the two countries.

The war with Mexico lasted nearly two years. General Zachary Taylor drove the

Mexicans out of the lower part of Texas and held that territory for the United States. General Winfield Scott marched from Vera Cruz to the City of Mexico, defeating the Mexican army in every engagement and finally capturing the city itself.

During the war the Mexicans did not win a single battle.

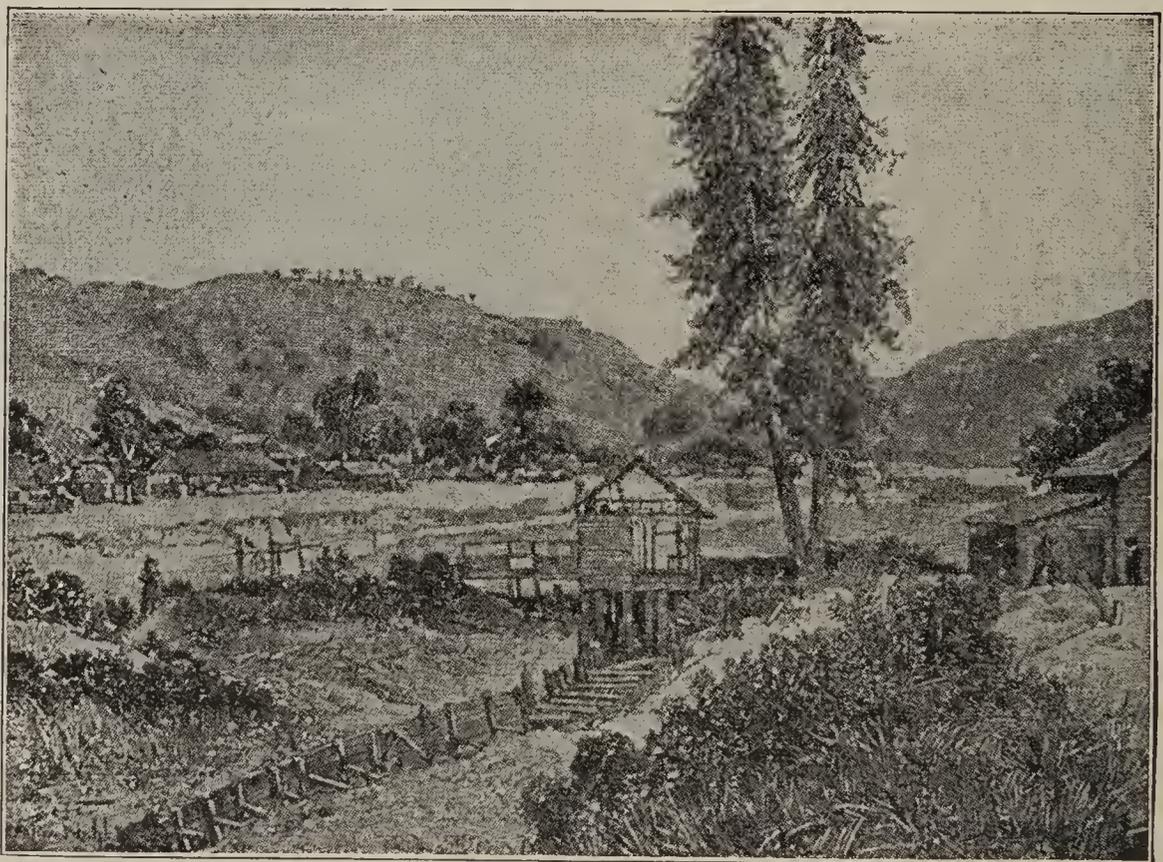
A treaty of peace was signed by which Mexico gave the United States a vast tract of land extending to the Pacific Ocean, out of which have been made California and a number of other Western states. The Rio Grande was recognized as the southern boundary of Texas. The United States paid Mexico \$15,000,000 and agreed to settle \$3,500,000 worth of Mexican debts due to American citizens.



GEN. WINFIELD SCOTT

War with
Mexico,
1846-1847

In the meantime a treaty had been made with England (1846) by which the Oregon territory was divided between that country and the United States. Thus by the treaties with Mexico and with England our territory was extended from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. The new territory covered an area of about a million and a quarter square miles.



SUTTER'S MILL AND RACE

Nine days before the signing of the treaty with Mexico, gold was discovered in California. Captain Sutter had built a fort where the city of Sacramento now stands. Fifty miles above it on a branch of the American River he was having a sawmill built. One of the men, while watching the water in the mill race, observed shining particles in the sand. It

Discovery of
gold in Cali-
fornia, 1848

occurred to him that they might be gold. Hastily gathering as many of the particles as he could, he mounted a horse and rode to Sutter's fort. Here he and Sutter examined the particles and found that they really were gold.



CROSSING THE GREAT PLAINS

In a short time the fact became known. News was carried to the seacoast and thence to all parts of the world. Gold had been discovered in California! A wild rush to the gold fields ensued. Everybody began digging for gold and stories were told of fortunes made in a week. Gold-hunters and settlers hurried overland and by sea into California. In a little over a year as many as a hundred thousand people moved to the Pacific slope. From a place of a few cabins and stores, San Francisco sprang into a city of twenty thousand inhabitants.

The rush to
the gold
fields, 1849

Gold was discovered in other places in the West, and crowds of immigrants poured into its vast and fertile plains. Long wagon trains crossed the prairies, the women and the children riding in the great covered wagons that contained the household goods, the men walking and keeping a sharp lookout for Indians and wild beasts. Some of these immigrants came from the South, bringing ideas of slavery, and some came from the North, bringing ideas of freedom. Therefore, in some of the states of the West, when they applied for admission to the Union, there were strife and bloodshed over the question of slavery.

16. THE PROGRESS OF THE COUNTRY

IN 1850 the census showed that the population of the United States was twenty-three million people. In one year three hundred thousand foreigners came over to find homes and occupation in the North and West. Few of the foreign immigrants went South, because free labor did not desire to compete with slave labor, and the slaveholders themselves did not encourage foreigners to settle among them.

Immigration

New York now had a half million people; Philadelphia had over four hundred thousand, while Baltimore, Boston, and New Orleans had over a hundred thousand each. The cities in the West were showing rapid growth. In 1830 Chicago was a frontier settlement, but by 1850 it was a city of thirty thousand inhabitants. Milwaukee was now a growing city, and other settlements in the West were being formed which in a few years became well known and prosperous cities.

Growth of cities

Many of those cities began to take on the splendid appearance they have at the present day. The streets were paved and lighted by gas, waterworks and sewerage were installed, fire engines were used, horse cars were introduced, theaters, churches, and tall buildings were erected, and parks were laid out, all of which showed the increasing wealth and prosperity of the country.

Manufacturing was the main industry of the Northern and Eastern states. Shipbuilding and commerce were growing rapidly, so that American-built clipper ships were now seen in nearly every port of the world. In the

West the industry was mainly agricultural, where great crops of wheat and corn and hay were being raised, showing that that section was one day to become the main dependence of the country for its supply of food.

Industries of
the people

In the South cotton-raising was almost the only industry of the people. The mills of New England and Europe were eagerly demanding an unlimited amount of cotton, and the Southern planters were as eager to supply it. In 1850 the cotton crop amounted to two and a half million bales, and cotton exports were worth more than all other exports combined.

The progress of the country made its demand upon the inventive genius of the people. In 1832 Cyrus McCormick, a native of Virginia, invented a harvesting machine to take the place of the scythe and rake. Up to that time one man could hardly cut and rake up an acre of grain in a day.

Cyrus
McCormick
and the har-
vesting
machine

By the harvesting machine, the same work could be done in a half hour. The threshing machine followed shortly after, by which as much grain could be threshed from the hulls in an hour as a man could do by flails in a week. Improved machinery for plowing and cultivating the soil simplified the labors of the farmer and added to the size of his crops.

Another invention of the period was the sewing machine patented by Elias Howe in 1846, which greatly lightened the burden of making clothing and buttonholes, stitching leather and carpet strips, binding books, and the hundreds of

other industries in which sewing was used. In 1839 Charles Goodyear discovered the process of vulcanizing rubber so that it was not subject to the changes of the weather. By this discovery the making of over-
shoes, rubber coats, and automobile tires, and
other articles of rubber goods were made possible.

Other
inventions

All of these inventions were protected by patents in the patent office at Washington, so that the inventors alone could enjoy the profit from the sales of their products. By 1840 there were forty thousand patents issued, and the number was increasing at more than a thousand a year. At the present time over a million patents have been issued.

QUESTIONS

1. What was the condition of the country at the end of the Revolution? How had the colonies been bound together through the war? What was now needed? When and where was the Constitution of the United States framed? What is the Constitution? What are the duties of the President? What is the duty of Congress? What are the duties of the courts? Name the three departments of the government. Who was the first President of the United States? When did Washington become the capital city?

2. How was manufacturing done in early days? Why was machinery for manufacturing necessary? What is known as the Industrial Revolution? To what did the Americans resort? What can you say of Samuel Slater? For what was there now a great demand? What can you say of cotton-raising in the South at this time? Who was Eli Whitney? How did he become interested in inventing the cotton gin? When was it invented? What was the effect of the invention?

3. What can you say of Jefferson as a young man? What were some of his accomplishments? What great document did he write? What reforms did he introduce into Virginia? Of what was he founder? What was the name of his home in Virginia? Of what political party was he the leader? In what did he firmly believe? Describe the simplicity of his manners.

4. What can you say of the pirates of Tripoli? How did the pirates treat American prisoners and vessels? How did the ruler of Tripoli insult an American officer? What accident befell the *Philadelphia*? Relate the exploit of Stephen Decatur.

5. What was the boundary of our country when Jefferson was elected President? When was Louisiana purchased, and for how much? What can you say of the unknown West? What two men were sent to explore our new possession? Describe the beginning of their explorations. Describe some of their exploits. When did they return?

6. What was known as "Fulton's Folly"? What can you say of Fulton's inventive genius? What was the name of Fulton's boat? Describe the boat. Describe his voyage up the Hudson. What other boats were put in use? When was the first voyage of a steamship across the Atlantic? What can you say of ocean voyages at the present time?

7. What was the cause of the War of 1812? When was war declared? How long did it last? Describe the battle between the *Constitution* and the *Guerrière*. What was the *Constitution* called? Describe the battle between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*. What were the last words of Captain Lawrence? What was the most famous naval battle of the War of 1812? Describe the burning of Washington by the British. Describe the writing of the "Star Spangled Banner."

8. Tell some incident of the young Andrew Jackson. Describe his early life in Tennessee. Describe his campaign against the Creeks in Alabama. What can you say of Tecumseh? What name did Andrew Jackson receive? Describe the battle of New

Orleans. What was the result? When and where was the treaty of peace signed?

9. What is known as the Monroe Doctrine? What can you say of the Erie Canal? How many people were in the United States in 1825? What was the longest and most important of the early railroads in America? Describe the early railroads. Tell some of the trying experiences of the passengers.

10. Describe the early life of Henry Clay. What can you say of his industry and studiousness? How did he train himself to be an orator? What can you say of Clay as a lawyer? What great question was disturbing the country at this time? What is known as the Missouri Compromise? What was Clay called?

11. What can you say of the early life of Daniel Webster? What can you say of his college life? Describe his appearance. Relate the incident at the laying of the Bunker Hill monument. What is a tariff for revenue? What is a tariff for protection? How did the different sections of the country differ on the tariff? Describe the Hayne-Webster debate.

12. Describe the early life of John C. Calhoun. What was Calhoun's advice to the people of South Carolina? What was the Ordinance of Nullification? What did President Jackson resolve to do? What did Henry Clay secure? What did Clay say at the time? Who constituted the "great trio"?

13. Describe the occasion in which Morse invented the electric telegraph. Describe the early struggles of Morse. Describe the testing of the telegraph. What appropriation was made by Congress? Between what cities was the first telegraph line built? What was the first news sent by telegraph? What was the first message? Describe the laying of the Atlantic cable. What can you say of the wireless telegraph?

14. Describe the early life of Samuel Houston. Describe his life with the Indians. How did he show his friendship for the Indians? To what country did Houston move? Describe the massacre at the Alamo. How was it avenged? Describe the battle

of San Jacinto. When was Texas admitted as a state? What controversy arose at the time?

15. What brought on war between the United States and Mexico? How long did it last and what was the result? What were some of the provisions of the treaty of peace? What treaty was made with England in 1846? Describe the discovery of gold in California. Describe the rush to the gold fields.

16. What can you say of immigration? What can you say of the growth of cities? Describe the industries of the people. Describe the industries of the South. Describe the invention of the harvesting machine. Who invented the sewing machine? Who invented the process of vulcanizing rubber? How are all patents protected?

CHAPTER VI

HEROES OF THE CIVIL WAR

1. ABRAHAM LINCOLN

FOR a long time the Northern states and the Southern states had differed on the subject of slaveholding in the South. The people of the South not only desired to keep their slaves, but wished to carry them into the West, as that territory was opened to the settlers. The people of the North were not only opposed to slavery in the Western states, but many of them were openly opposed to slavery anywhere in the Union.

Abolition societies were formed in many places in the North for the purpose of freeing the slaves. Runaway slaves escaping from the South into the North were often kept in hiding and aided to get beyond the reach of their pursuers. When the people of the territory of Kansas were left to settle the question of slavery for themselves, settlers from the North advocating no slavery and settlers from the South determined on slavery moved in. Both sides were fiercely in earnest, and a condition of war existed for several years, during which many persons were killed.

Among the most fanatical of the abolitionists was John Brown. He and his sons had engaged actively in the Kansas

War. Going to Virginia he with a band of twenty followers seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry. He then called John Brown on the slaves to rise and arm themselves. To raid. 1859 his surprise the slaves did not rise, nor did any one come to his aid. Brown was captured and hanged for inciting an insurrection. This incident is known as the "John Brown Raid."



LINCOLN GETTING HIS EDUCATION

It can easily be seen that all this increased the bad feeling between the North and the South. The South insisted that under the Constitution it had a right to hold slaves, and that the North should not interfere with that right

The North insisted that slavery was a great wrong, that it should not spread beyond the limits of the South, and indeed that it ought to be altogether abolished.

During this state of feeling Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, the candidate of the Republican Party, was elected President of the United States.

Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809. When he was seven years of age his parents moved to Indiana. The family was very poor, and Lincoln spent his young life in toil and hard-ship. From a child he had to do the hard work of a farm in the wilderness. From his ability as a young man to swing an axe, clear the forest, and split the logs, he was called "the rail splitter."

Early life

He had but little chance to get an education. He did not go to school more than twelve months in all his life. He learned to read, however, such books as the Bible, Pilgrim's Progress, and Æsop's Fables. These books he borrowed from neighbors, often walking miles to get something to read. After a hard day's work he would sit before the fire and read some book in which he was interested. Upon one occasion the rain soaked a book he had borrowed, and the owner made him work three days to pay for it.

His education

When he was twenty-one years old he moved to Illinois, walking nearly two hundred miles, driving an ox team, often through mud and water.

When he reached Illinois he did any kind of work that he could find. He cut down trees, and so great was his skill

and strength that it was said he could sink an axe deeper into a tree than any other man in Illinois. He split rails and built fences; he worked on a flatboat down the Mississippi River, and then clerked in a store.

He was tall, being six feet four inches high, spare of frame, but muscular and in perfect health. He could outrun, out-jump, and outwrestle anybody in the neighborhood. He was a fine story-teller, and always had a good joke to fit every occasion.

He began to study hard, and soon was well known for his shrewdness and ability. He was noted for his wise sayings, such as, "You may fool all the people some of the time, and some people all of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time."

After a while he began to practice law and was sent to the legislature. He became noted for his plain, common-sense way of speaking, his homely wisdom, and his humor. He was called "Honest Abe," because he always said and did what he thought was right.

At one time he engaged in a great debate with Stephen A. Douglas. Both were candidates for the United States Senate. The two men went from town to town, discussing, before large crowds, the subject of slavery in the territories. Lincoln was defeated, but his speeches were printed in all the papers, were read by everybody, and made him famous.

Lincoln was the candidate of the Republican Party for President, the party whose principles were opposed to slavery. He had expressed his sentiments in these words:

“A house divided against itself cannot stand. I believe this government cannot endure half slave and half free. I do not expect the house to fall, but I do expect it will cease to be divided. It will become all one thing or all the other.”

Lincoln was President during the four years of the Civil War. Freeing the slaves, 1863 During the war he issued his famous proclamation freeing the slaves in the states engaged in war against the Union. He said: “My paramount object is to save the Union. If I could save the Union without freeing any slaves, I would do it. If I could save it by freeing all of the slaves, I would do it. If I could save it by freeing some and leaving others alone, I would also do that.”



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

Lincoln was a man of strong convictions and great firmness, yet he was gentle, sympathetic, and even tender in his dealings with men. He had a melancholy disposition, was deeply oppressed by his responsibilities, and concerned about the welfare of the country.

After the surrender of the Southern army, Lincoln was assassinated in Washington City while seated in a box at a theater. He died the next day. The nation was thrown into great grief over this most deplorable event, for he was admired, honored, and respected by all people from all sections of the country.

Lincoln as-
sassinated,
April 14,
1865

2. JEFFERSON DAVIS

As soon as it became known that Lincoln was elected President of the United States, South Carolina passed an "ordinance of secession," which meant that that state withdrew from the Union. In a short time ten other Southern states also withdrew, making eleven in all. These states united to form a separate government, called "The Confederate States of America." The names of the Confederate States are, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Tennessee, Arkansas, Louisiana, Texas. The first capital of the Confederate States was Montgomery, Alabama, but as soon as the war began the capital was changed to Richmond, Virginia.

The Confed-
erate States
of America

Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was elected President of the Confederate States. He was born in Kentucky, June 3, 1808, not more than a hundred miles from the birthplace of Lincoln. He was eight months older than Lincoln. In early life Davis had moved to Mississippi and had grown up familiar with slaveholding conditions. When he was sixteen years old he went to the West Point Military Academy, and was trained to be a soldier. He was in the Indian wars of the West, and rendered valuable service as a soldier in the war with Mexico. He then left the army and became a planter in Mississippi.

Jefferson
Davis

He was elected a member of Congress from Mississippi, but resigned when the Mexican War broke out, to lead a regiment of Mississippians into Mexico. In this war he was a brave man and a splendid soldier.

In the
Mexican War

At the battle of Buena Vista his regiment was attacked by a large force of the enemy. His ringing command, "Steady, Mississippians! Steady!" held the soldiers in perfect order. Davis drew his troops in shape like the letter V. Their fire in this position was so effective that the Mexicans quickly retreated. This formation of his troops led General Taylor to mention him in his report for "his distinguished coolness and gallantry."

When Franklin Pierce was President, Davis was appointed Secretary of War. In this office he introduced better guns for the soldiers, improved the tactics of the army, and strengthened the defences of the seacoast.

From the cabinet of President Pierce, Davis went in 1857 to the Senate to represent Mississippi. Here he remained for four years during those stormy debates when the fate of the Union hung in the balance. He was an orator of great powers of persuasion and sweetness of temper. He was the champion of the right of the Southern people to hold slaves, and of the extension of slavery to the states and territories of the West if the people there desired to have it.

The great purpose of President Davis was to preserve the rights of the states as guaranteed by the Constitution.

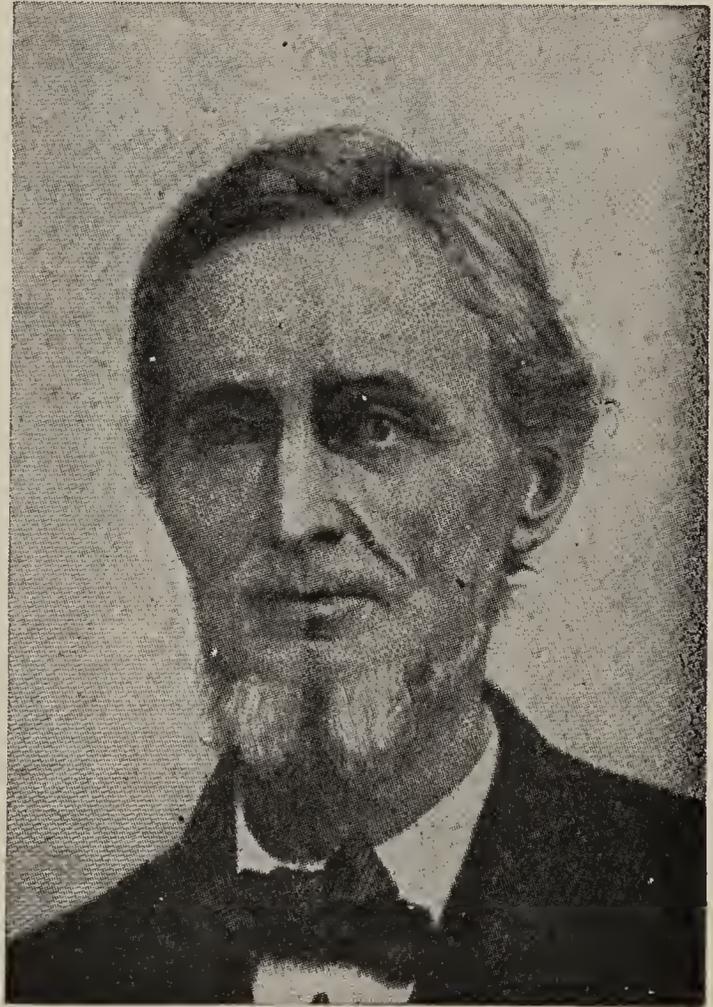
Purpose and opinions of Davis He believed that the Union was an agreement among all the states for certain purposes expressed in the Constitution itself, and that slaveholding was one of the things that each state had the right to decide for itself, and with which the general government had no right to interfere. He maintained that the

rights of the states were more sacred than the Union itself, and that when one section of the country violated the Constitution, the other sections were no longer bound by it.

Davis was President of the Confederate States during the four years of the Civil War, as Lincoln was President

Davis during of the United
the war States. He

lived during these trying years in Richmond, Virginia, the capital of the Confederacy. At the close of the war, and when the last hope of success for the Southern army had gone, and the Northern soldiers were about to capture Richmond, President Davis left the capital and traveled southward. He was arrested in Georgia, held on the charge of treason, and thrown into prison. His case was



JEFFERSON DAVIS

never brought to trial. After two years he was released and retired to his home in Mississippi. Here he spent the remainder of his life in dignified retirement, dying at the age of eighty-one years.

Davis will ever remain dear to the hearts of the South. Great as an orator and statesman, steadfast in the belief that the cause of his people was just, patient and uncomplaining under misfortune and abuse, he will ever have the respect, admiration, and affection of the Southern people.

3. STONEWALL JACKSON

THERE were at this time thirty-four states in the Union, twenty-three Northern states and eleven Southern states. There were twenty-two million people in the North; there were nine million people in the South, of which three and a half million were slaves. In the North there were large mills for supplying everything an army needed, an organized government, an army and a navy, all of which the South was without at the beginning of the war. But the South raised large crops of cotton upon which Northern and foreign mills depended, and was to have the advantage of fighting upon its own soil and in defence of its own cities.

Condition of
the North
and South

The War between the States, or the Civil War, as it is generally called, began by the bombardment of Fort Sumter in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina. This fort held a garrison of Northern soldiers. A Northern vessel had arrived outside the harbor with other troops to add to those already in the fort. This was considered by President Davis an act of hostility. The surrender of the fort was demanded; the demand was refused, and accordingly the fort was fired upon.

The bombardment lasted thirty-four hours until the fort was almost in ruins. After a brave defence the commander surrendered and Fort Sumter fell into the hands of the Confederacy. The news of the bombardment and surrender of Fort Sumter created intense excitement everywhere.

Bombard-
ment of Fort
Sumter,
April 12, 1861

President Lincoln called for seventy-five thousand soldiers

to carry on the war, and President Davis called for volunteers to resist invasion. The war was begun, and both sides prepared in earnest for the deadly conflict.

Virginia was the main battle ground of the war, and the capture of Richmond was one of the main objects of the Northern army. The cry was: "On to Richmond!" A splendid army marched out of Washington with banners and music. Crowds of people went along in wagons and carriages. A Southern army had been gathered to meet the advancing enemy, and the two hosts met at Manassas Junction. Then occurred the first great battle of the war, known as the battle of Manassas or Bull Run. It was a great Confederate victory. The Northern troops were driven back; then they began to run, and finally they broke into a disorderly panic and rout, many of them not stopping until they were safe in Washington City.

At one time in the battle General Thomas J. Jackson had rallied his troops on a hill and was being fiercely attacked. An officer cried out, "General, they are beating us back!" "Then, sir," said Jackson, "we will give them the bayonet." Jackson and his men stood firm. Another Confederate officer pointing to him called out to his own troops, "There stands Jackson like a stone wall!" From that time he was known as Stonewall Jackson.

Jackson was born at Clarksburg, in what is now West Virginia, January 21, 1824. He was brought up on a farm in his native state. When he was eighteen years old,

dressed in a plain homespun suit, and carrying his clothes in a saddlebag, he went to Washington and asked to be made a cadet at West Point. He received the appointment and went at once to the military academy. He was an awkward, ungainly, quiet, good-natured country boy, of whom his companions at first made sport, but whom afterwards they treated with great respect.

Early life

He was very ambitious. He wrote a book of rules for his own guidance in conduct, dress, manners, study, and such things. One of these rules was, "You may be whatsoever you resolve to be."

He served in the war with Mexico, winning distinction and promotion by his bravery. He seemed not to know what fear was, and held any position of danger until ordered to retreat. His great ambition was to do his full duty as a man and a soldier without fear.

He early became a religious man, and was noted for his great piety. He taught in the Sunday school, and even gathered the slaves of his town together every Sunday afternoon and taught them the truths of the Bible. Before going into battle it was his habit always to go off to a quiet place and pray. His servant used to say he could tell the night before there was to be a battle by the length of his master's prayers.

Character and habits

He never used coffee, tobacco, nor intoxicating drinks of any kind. Often he went all winter in the Virginia mountains without an overcoat, saying he "did not wish to give

way to the cold." Once when told by his surgeon that he needed a little brandy, he replied, "I like it too well, that is the reason I never take it. I am more afraid of it than of Federal bullets."

His soldiers were devoted to him, and were willing to follow him into any danger, and cheerfully obeyed his



LAST MEETING OF LEE AND JACKSON

orders. They affectionately gave him the name of "Old Jack." Under his command they did so much marching that they were called "foot cavalry." Jackson always shared the hardships of his men. On one occasion when his brigade was worn out with marching, he said, "Let the poor fellows sleep. I will guard the camp myself." Accordingly he acted as sentinel during the night while his tired men took their rest.

Jackson was one of the greatest soldiers of the war. He was a military genius who inspired his troops with deep affection and confidence. If Jackson was in command they felt sure of victory. At one time during the war when the Northern army was pressing on Richmond, Jackson with fifteen thousand men made a remarkable campaign in the Shenandoah valley. He marched his little army over four hundred miles in forty days, defeated in succession four armies sent against him, came so near Washington as to throw that city into the greatest alarm, and captured or killed seven thousand of the enemy's forces. This is known as Jackson's Valley Campaign, and is considered one of the greatest feats in military history.

The Valley
Campaign,
1862

After the war had been in progress for two years, at the battle of Chancellorsville, Jackson had ridden out in front of his own troops to reconnoiter the position of the enemy. When he returned it was nearly dark. His own men, thinking Jackson's party to be a body of Northern cavalry, fired upon them. Jackson fell from his horse mortally wounded. He died in a few days, saying, "Let us cross over the river and rest under the shade of the trees." When Lee heard that Jackson was dead, he wept and said, "I have indeed lost my right arm."

Death of
Jackson

4. ROBERT E. LEE

THE year after the battle of Manassas the Northern army, under the command of General George B. McClellan, attempted to capture Richmond in the campaign known as the Peninsular Campaign. McClellan came within ten miles of Richmond—near enough to see the smoke from the chimneys—but in a series of battles lasting a week he was compelled to abandon his purpose.



GENERAL GEORGE B.
McCLELLAN

While this campaign was in progress, Robert E. Lee was made commander-in-chief of the Confederate army.

Lee was born in Virginia, January 19, 1807. He was the son of General Henry Lee, a hero of the Revolution, who was known as "Light Horse Harry." When he was eighteen years old he went to West Point, where he stayed for four years. During all that time he received no bad marks or demerits. His clothes were always in order, his gun bright, his lessons well prepared. So faithful was he in his duties as a student that he graduated second in his class.

During the Mexican War Lee served as an engineer under General Scott. It was his business to build bridges, lay out roads, construct fortifications, and perform other duties of that sort. General Scott said that Lee was the best soldier he ever saw, and that a large part of his own success in

Mexico was due to Lee's skill as an engineer. In after years General Scott said of him, "If I knew that a battle was to be fought for my country, and the President were to say to me, 'Scott, who shall be commander?' I would say, 'Robert E. Lee; nobody but Robert E. Lee.'"

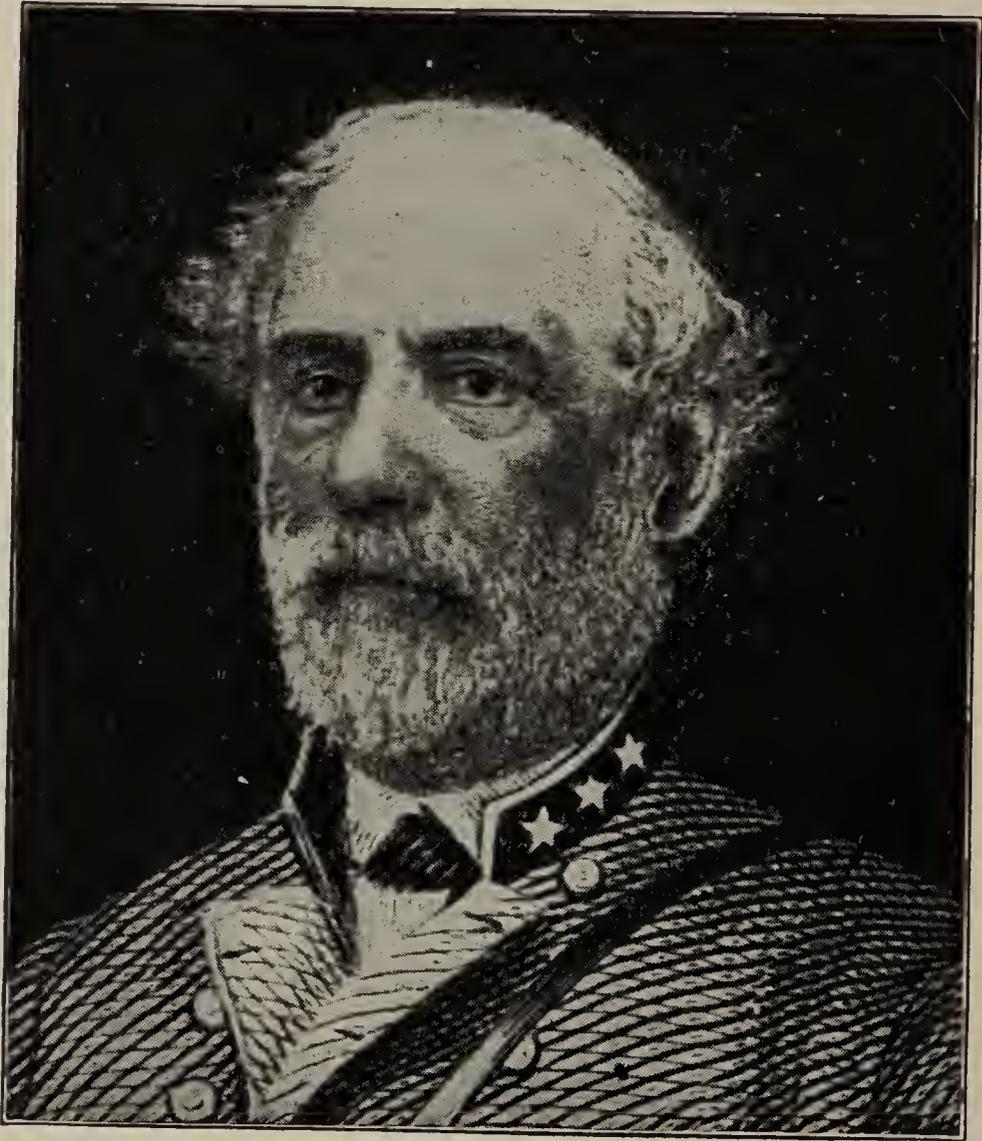
When the war came on, Lee was a colonel in the United States army. He was offered the chief command of the Union armies. To this offer he replied, "If I owned the four million slaves in the South, I would give them all up to save the Union; but how can I draw my sword upon Virginia, my native state?" Accordingly Lee, like a great many other men, went with his state.

He was a major-general of the Virginia troops before he took command of the entire Southern army.

General Lee was now fifty-four years old. He was a grave, dignified, and noble-looking man, of military bearing. His hair and beard were turning gray. He was erect and vigorous, and rode his famous white horse "Traveler" with grace and ease. He was the idol of his soldiers, who affectionately called him "Marse Robert." From the time he assumed command of the Southern army he showed such a mastery of the details of war, such a genius for handling troops and using them effectively in battle, that he is recognized as one of the world's greatest generals.

Lee, like many other great men, was gentle, generous, and good. It was a saying of his that duty was the sublimest word in the language. He never used tobacco nor any intoxicating liquors. He felt kindly towards the Union

army, and spoke generously of their valor as soldiers. He rebuked one of his officers who said he wished to kill all the enemy, by remarking, "I would rather they go home and



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE

leave us to do the same." He told a Southern mother after the war, "Do not train up your children to be foes of the United States Government. We are one country now. Bring them up Americans."

When Lee took command of the Southern army he showed his military genius by using his smaller forces to hold in check the great armies sent against him. General John Pope was defeated in the second battle of Manassas, and Lee invaded Maryland. A great battle was fought near Sharpsburg, on Antietam Creek, which was so undecided that Lee returned to Virginia. General A. E. Burnside was next sent out with an army, which Lee completely routed at Fredericksburg. General Joseph Hooker likewise met defeat at the battle of Chancellorsville. Lee had proved himself more than a match for the Northern generals.

Defeats the
Northern
armies

After the war had been going on for two years the great battle of Gettysburg was fought. It was the greatest battle of the Civil War, and was the turning point of the fortunes of the Southern army in the East. The battle was fought three days in succession. On the last day occurred the famous charge of General Pickett against the Northern breastworks. The Southern troops—veterans by this time—moved across a valley a mile wide, charged a hill where the enemy was established, and with desperate courage tried to capture their guns. The slaughter of men was dreadful. The roar of cannon, the rattle of musketry, the smoke of battle, and the cries of wounded men made a scene long to be remembered.

The battle of
Gettysburg,
July, 1863

In spite of these heroic efforts the Confederate troops were defeated, and Lee retired across the Potomac into Virginia. The army was worn out with much fighting.

There were no more troops to take the places of the dead. Nearly every man in the South who could bear arms had been enlisted for the war. Supplies of all kinds were scarce. The soldiers were poorly paid and badly clothed. From this time it was a question of wearing out in face of a great army whose ranks could easily be filled, and who were supplied with everything needed for successful warfare.

The Northern war vessels blockaded the Southern ports, so that no supplies could be brought from foreign countries. This brought on a scarcity of medicine, salt, ammunition, guns, and army supplies. The Southern people bravely endured their hardships. The women knitted socks for the soldiers, cut up their curtains, and wove their carpets into supplies for the army.

5. ULYSSES S. GRANT

THE war plan of the North was first to capture Richmond and drive the Confederates out of Virginia; second, to get control of the Mississippi River; third, to march an army through the heart of the South and completely enfold the Confederacy within the toils of two great armies.

Accordingly, while the war was going on in Virginia, a campaign was also in progress in the West. Early in the

**Campaigns
in the West** war the Northern army captured Fort Henry, on the Tennessee River, and Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River. Thus Kentucky and Tennessee fell into the hands of the Northern army. Then followed the great battle of Shiloh on the line between Mississippi and Tennessee in which the Confederate general, Albert Sidney Johnston, was killed, and the Southern army was driven back into Mississippi. Shortly after-



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

ADMIRAL D. G. FARRAGUT

wards New Orleans was captured by a Northern fleet under command of Admiral Farragut. Later on Farragut entered Mobile Bay and closed that port. In a campaign of a few months the Northern army had gained control of the Mississippi with the exception of Port Hudson and Vicksburg.

General Ulysses S. Grant was placed in command of the Union forces in the West. He set vigorously to work to

besiege Vicksburg. The city was bombarded with shells until the terrified inhabitants were driven to caves in the hillsides and into the cellars of houses for protection. Food gave out and starvation drove the people to eating mule meat at a dollar a pound. Finally Vicksburg surrendered on the day that Lee began his retreat from Gettysburg.

The surrender of Vicksburg was the turning point of the war in the West. The Mississippi was now entirely under control of the North, and all supplies from the West were completely cut off from the Southern army.

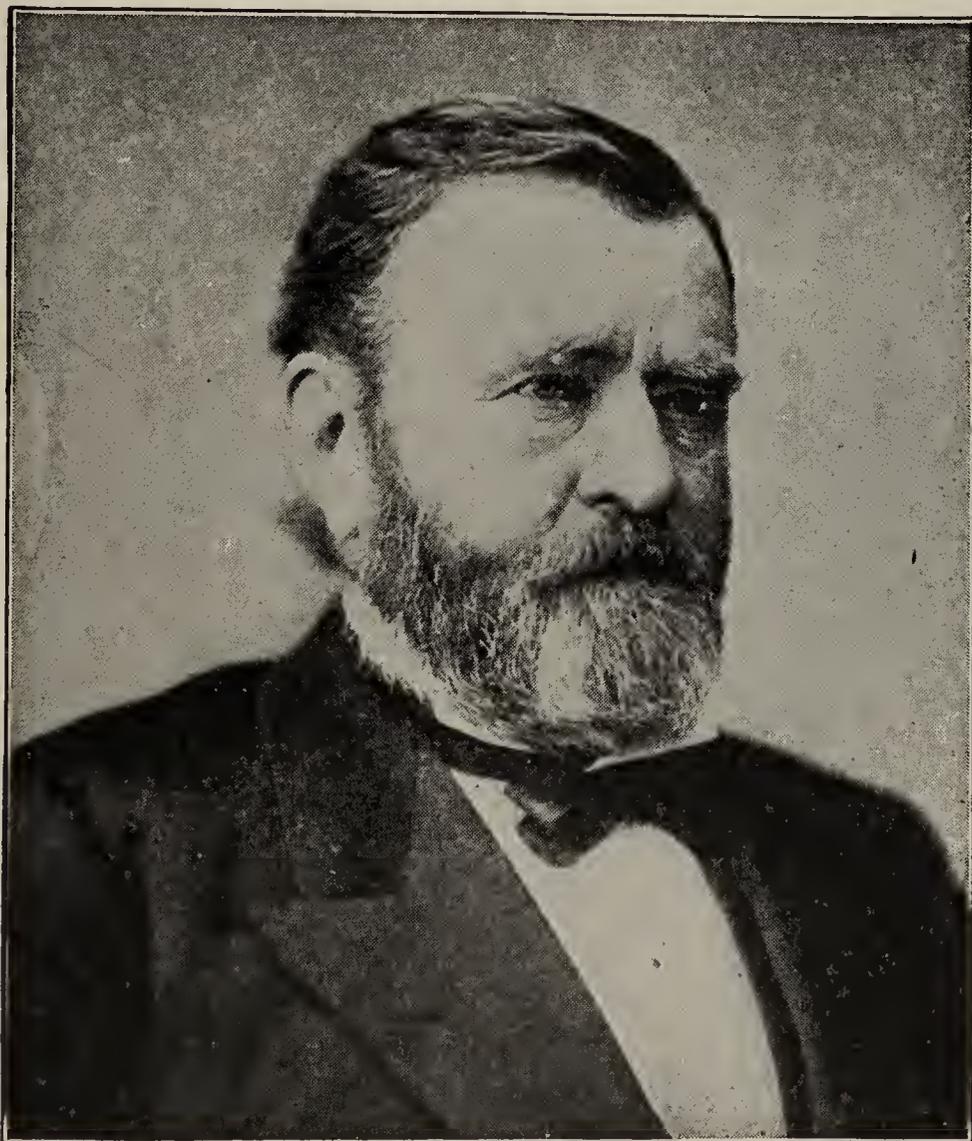
In March, 1864, Grant was made commander-in-chief of all the forces of the United States, with the rank of lieutenant-general.

He was born in a log cabin, April 27, 1822, at Point Pleasant, Ohio. His father was a tanner as well as a farmer. Grant worked on the farm up to the time he was seventeen years of age, going to school a part of the year. His father desired him to be a soldier, and sent him to the West Point Military Academy, but Grant had no taste for military life, and spent most of his time in reading. He did well in mathematics, however. He was considered the best horseman in the Academy. Soon after he graduated, the war with Mexico broke out. Grant went to the field of action. In all the engagements during that war, he behaved with gallantry, showing himself to be a brave man and an able soldier.

Four years after the Mexican War, Grant, now thirty-two years old, left the army and began to farm in Missouri. He

worked very hard, never losing a day on account of the weather. He even loaded the wagons with wood which he took to town for sale. He gave up farming after a few years' struggle against bad health and poor crops. During all the time he kept up his courage,

Hardships
and failures



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

GENERAL ULYSSES S. GRANT

however, and showed the strength of his character by hard work and unfailing cheerfulness.

He next went into the real estate business, but with no greater success than had attended his farming. In 1860

he moved to Galena, Illinois, and took a position as clerk in his father's leather store. Here the opening of the war found him.

When President Lincoln called for volunteers to enter the service of the Union, Grant enlisted and was soon made a brigadier-general. He was thirty-eight years of age when he entered upon the great career that was to bring him fame and honors.

General Grant was a brave and determined leader. He was patient in waiting and courageous in endurance. He never counted the cost, nor considered any obstacle too great to be overcome. He matured his plans carefully, and carried them out by weight of numbers. He believed in sheer strength of men and arms. This made him in the end a successful leader.

He had all the fine qualities of a soldier. He was noble-minded and generous. His fame as the great leader of the Federal armies to their final victory is as enduring as the history of the war itself.

Grant took active charge of the campaign in Virginia. Here he faced Lee in many hard-fought battles. With an army of 120,000 men he forced Lee back in spite of the loss of thousands of men. He said he "intended to fight it out on this line if it took all summer." General Lee's army grew smaller and weaker, and Grant's troops pressed him nearer and nearer to Richmond. The end of the war was not far off. In the meantime the third part of the war plan of the North was being carried out in the South, of which we shall study in the next lesson.

6. THE END OF THE WAR

WE are now to see how the war was brought to a close. After the surrender of Vicksburg the Northern army marched across Tennessee. The Southern army retired to Chattanooga. At Chickamauga a desperate battle was fought, after which the Southern army withdrew into Georgia. General William T. Sherman took command of the Northern army in the West. General Grant, in Virginia, directed him to march into Georgia and capture Atlanta.

With an army of a hundred thousand men he started on his campaign through the Confederacy, carrying out the third part of the war plan of the North. Sherman was opposed by Joseph E. Johnston, the Confederate general. From Chattanooga to Atlanta there was fighting constantly for two months. At last Sherman reached Atlanta, captured that city, and almost destroyed it by fire.

In the meantime General Hood had succeeded Johnston in command of the Southern army. Hood took his forces into Tennessee, where his army was broken in pieces in the battles around Nashville. This left Sherman without

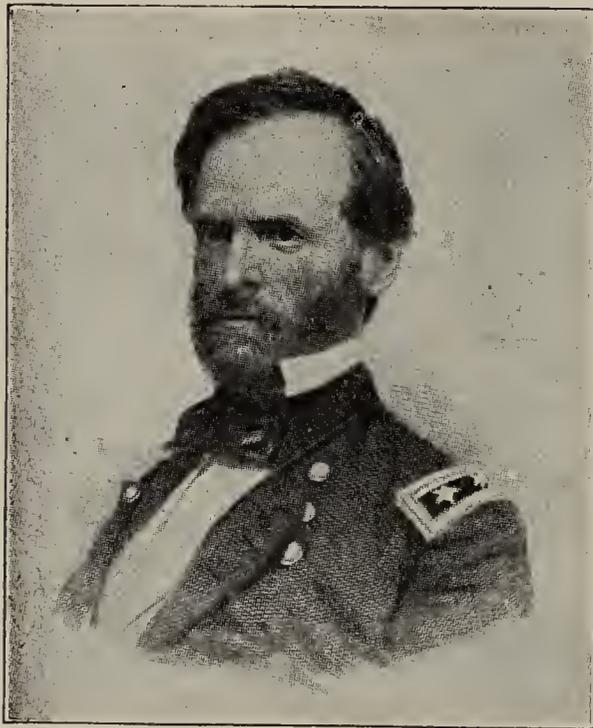


GEN. JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON

opposition to continue his "March to the Sea." With an army of sixty thousand men he started for Savannah, his "The March to the Sea" troops living on the country as they moved. They tore up the railroads in their path, burning the ties and wrapping the heated rails around the trunks of trees. They burned gin houses and cotton crops, killed cows, hogs, sheep, and, in fact, made a track of desolation

forty miles wide through the heart of Georgia.

Savannah was captured, and Sherman turned northward, marching through South Carolina and North Carolina on his way to unite his forces with Grant in Virginia. The city of Columbia in South Carolina was burned by Northern soldiers and by "bummers" who followed the army in great numbers.



GEN. WILLIAM T. SHERMAN

In the meantime General Grant had forced General Lee

back upon Richmond. The Southern army was reduced to a mere handful of ragged and starved men, and Richmond

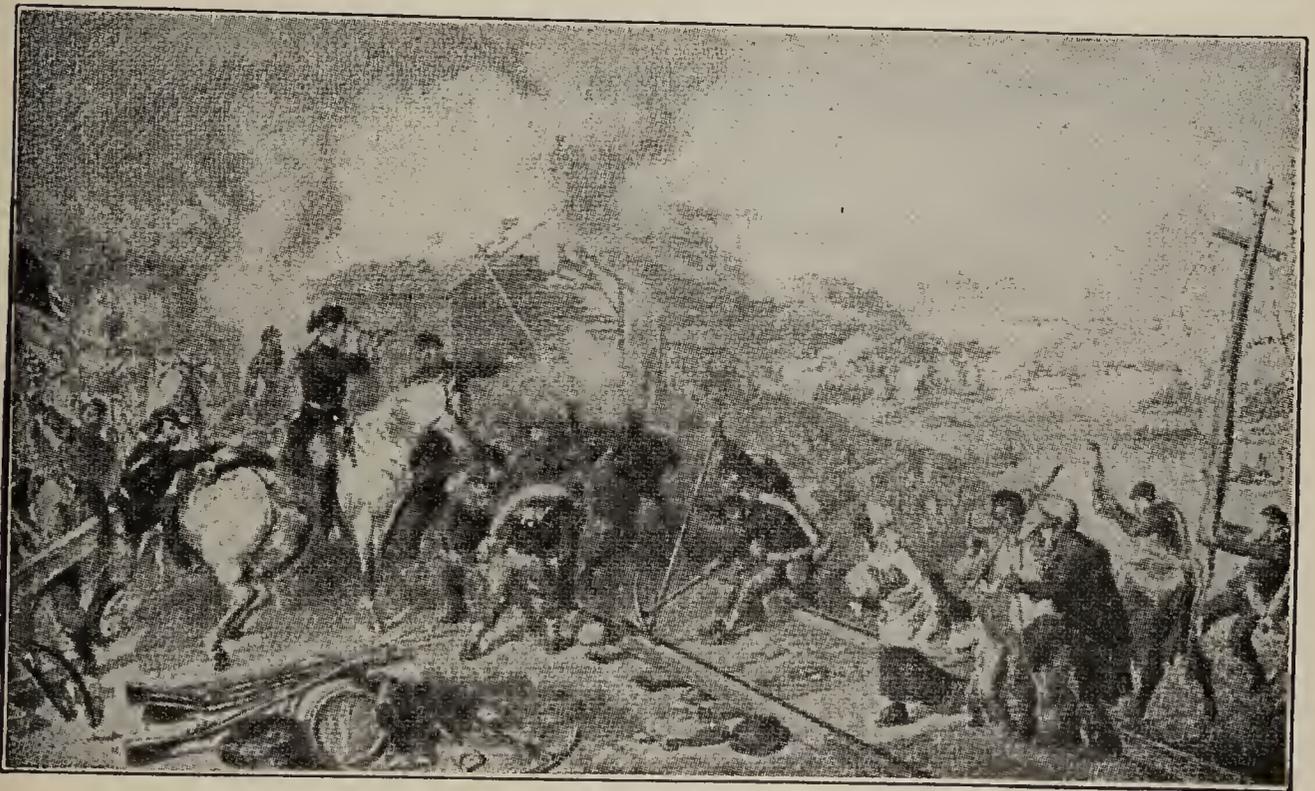
The surrender of General Lee, April 9, 1865

could not be defended longer. Lee's lines were broken, and President Davis and his cabinet left Richmond. It was useless to continue the struggle. Grant and Lee met by appointment

at a farmhouse near Appomattox Court House and agreed on terms of surrender. Lee's soldiers laid down their

arms and agreed not to take them up again during the war.

General Grant was a generous and manly foe. He ordered the Confederate soldiers to be supplied with food from his own stores, and gave each man his horse or mule to take home with him to use in the "spring plowing." When his own soldiers desired to fire a salute in honor of the surrender



SHERMAN MARCHING THROUGH GEORGIA

he stopped them, saying it was not right to exult in the downfall of an enemy.

After a few weeks all the Southern armies surrendered, and the great war was over. The soldiers on both sides returned to their homes and engaged in peaceful pursuits. Everybody was glad that the struggle was ended and the killing of brave men would go on no longer. The war had cost vast sums of money, at one time rising on the

Northern side to three million dollars a day. Over six hundred thousand men had been killed in battle or had died of wounds and disease in hospitals.

The war settled the question of secession. Our country is to be an unbroken union of states. We shall remain ^{What the} one nation, under one government, and be a ^{war settled} united people henceforth. The war also settled the question of slavery. The negroes were free. They have taken their places as citizens of our common country, and are gradually coming to an understanding of their opportunities and responsibilities.

QUESTIONS

1. How did the people of the North and the South differ on the subject of slaveholding? What can you say of abolition societies? What were the conditions in Kansas? Describe the John Brown raid. Describe the early life of Abraham Lincoln. What education did he receive? Describe the debate between Lincoln and Douglas. What office did Lincoln hold during the Civil War? What did he say about freeing the slaves? When and where was Lincoln assassinated?

2. Name the Confederate States of America. Who was President of the Confederate States? Describe the early life of Jefferson Davis. Describe his part in the Mexican War. What can you say of his political life before the war? Of what was he the champion? In what did President Davis believe? Describe his life during the war. Describe his last days.

3. What was the difference between the North and the South at the beginning of the war? How did the War between the States begin? Describe the bombardment of Fort Sumter. Describe the first battle of Manassas. How did Stonewall Jackson get his

name? Describe the early life of Stonewall Jackson. What can you say of his character and habits? How did he treat his soldiers? Describe the death of Jackson.

4. Who was made commander-in-chief of the Confederate army? Describe the early life of General Lee. What part did he play in the Mexican War? What did General Scott say of him? Why did he go with Virginia? What can you say of his character and habits? In what great battles was he engaged? Describe the battle of Gettysburg. Describe the sufferings of the Southern army.

5. What was the war plan of the North? What was the result of the campaigns in the West? Describe the siege and surrender of Vicksburg. Who was made commander-in-chief of all the forces of the United States? Describe the early life and education of General Grant. Describe his hardships and failures. Describe his character as a soldier. Describe the campaigns of Grant and Lee in Virginia.

6. What campaign did General Sherman undertake? What was the fate of Atlanta? Describe the "March to the Sea." When and where did General Lee surrender? How did General Grant show his generosity? What questions were settled by the war?

CHAPTER VII

A REUNITED PEOPLE

1. AFTER THE WAR

Now that the war was over the general government set about reconstructing the Southern states. Each state before it was allowed to reënter the Union was required to ratify certain amendments to the Constitution. The thirteenth amendment abolished slavery in all the states and territories. The fourteenth amendment made the negroes citizens and gave them the protection of the law. The fifteenth amendment gave the negroes the right to vote. It was several years before all the Southern states agreed to these amendments, but finally they all agreed to them, and the union of the states was restored.

The era of reconstruction of the South was a sad one. The states that were out of the Union were placed under military rule, and many of the best white people in the South were not allowed to vote or hold office. Adventurers called "carpetbaggers" flocked into the South, deceived the negroes with all kinds of promises, and aided worthless and dishonest persons to secure office. Even the negroes, who a few years before were working in the fields, were made judges and members of

the legislature, chosen for such offices because they could be used as tools by the carpetbaggers.

To protect themselves against evil white men and negroes there was organized in the South a secret society known as the Ku-Klux Klan. When the Ku-Klux rode the members were masked, and they spread terror among the negroes. The fear of this society held the vicious negroes in check, and drove many evil-doers out of the South.

While this condition of things lasted, a bitter quarrel was going on between Andrew Johnson, President of the United States, and Congress. President Johnson and Congress had very different ideas about reconstructing the Southern states. The quarrel finally led to the impeachment of the President and his trial by the Senate. It was the first time in the history of our country that a President had been impeached, and the trial, which lasted two months, excited deep interest. On the day the votes were counted it was found that Johnson, by a majority of one vote, was declared not guilty.

Impeach-
ment of
President
Johnson,
1868

After the Southern states had been restored to the Union, the people of the South set bravely to work to build up their wasted fortunes.

Under free labor, which the South has found to be better than slave labor, the farms are not so large, but they are cultivated with more intelligence and with less waste. The cotton crop is now twelve to fourteen million bales a year, which is about three-fourths of all the cotton grown in the world. The

Progress of
the South

mills of New England and of all foreign countries depend largely upon the cotton crop of the South.

Before the war there were few if any cotton mills in the South; nearly all cotton manufacturing was done in the North. Of late years, however, there has been a rapid increase in the number of cotton mills, until now there are hundreds of such mills and every year adds to the number.



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

SCENE IN A COTTON FIELD

The coal fields of the South have become very valuable. Great deposits of soft coal lie in Alabama and Tennessee Coal fields of and the neighboring states, enough to supply the South the world for hundreds of years. The iron industry has also grown rapidly, especially near the coal fields. Iron mines in Alabama produce great quantities of

ore, and the foundries turn it into pig iron, which is sent to all parts of the world, to be made into finished products.

Crude oil has been found in Texas and Louisiana in such quantity that the country is largely dependent upon the oil wells of these states. New fields are being Crude oil opened constantly, even in other states, and and lumber great fortunes are being made out of this new industry. There are fifty million acres of hardwood and one hundred and fifty million acres of pine forests in the South that call for sawmills, and lumber mills, and other industries. The South has about one-third the forest area of the entire country.

In addition to raising cotton the people of the South are turning their attention to the cultivation of fruits and vegetables. The peach orchards of Geor- Fruits and gia and other Southern states cover thousands vegetables of acres, bearing the finest fruits, which are carried in refrigerator cars to all the markets of the North and West. The production of oranges, melons, and vegetables is increasing rapidly, so that the fruit and vegetable crop of the South is beginning to rival in value the cotton crop itself.

2. PROGRESS OF THE COUNTRY

OUR country has made great progress since the close of the Civil War. While Andrew Johnson was President the territory of Alaska was purchased from Russia for \$7,200,000. It was not considered a bargain at the time, for the land was thought to be only a dreary, ice-bound region where no one could be comfortable and where nothing was produced. Since then the gold of the Klondike and the seal fisheries have made Alaska a very valuable addition to our territory. Alaska is twice the size of Texas, and about one-sixth as large as the rest of the United States.

Purchase of
Alaska, 1867

Our Western states and cities have grown wonderfully in population and wealth. Chicago, which began as a frontier fort in 1830, and remained for ten years a small town, has grown into a great city of over two million inhabitants. Kansas City, which was not even begun in 1850, now has nearly four hundred thousand people. Denver was a mining camp when the Civil War began, but now it has about three hundred thousand inhabitants. Many places that were not known fifty years ago are now large and flourishing cities.

At one time the mail was carried across the prairies by the "pony express," and passengers went by stagecoach, but since the building of the great Pacific railroads hundreds of thousands passengers travel to the West with every comfort. Vast fields of wheat and corn are planted; great herds of cattle, sheep, and hogs are raised on the ranches, and the regions that were once the homes of the Indians and

the range of the buffalo are now the abode of a prosperous people.

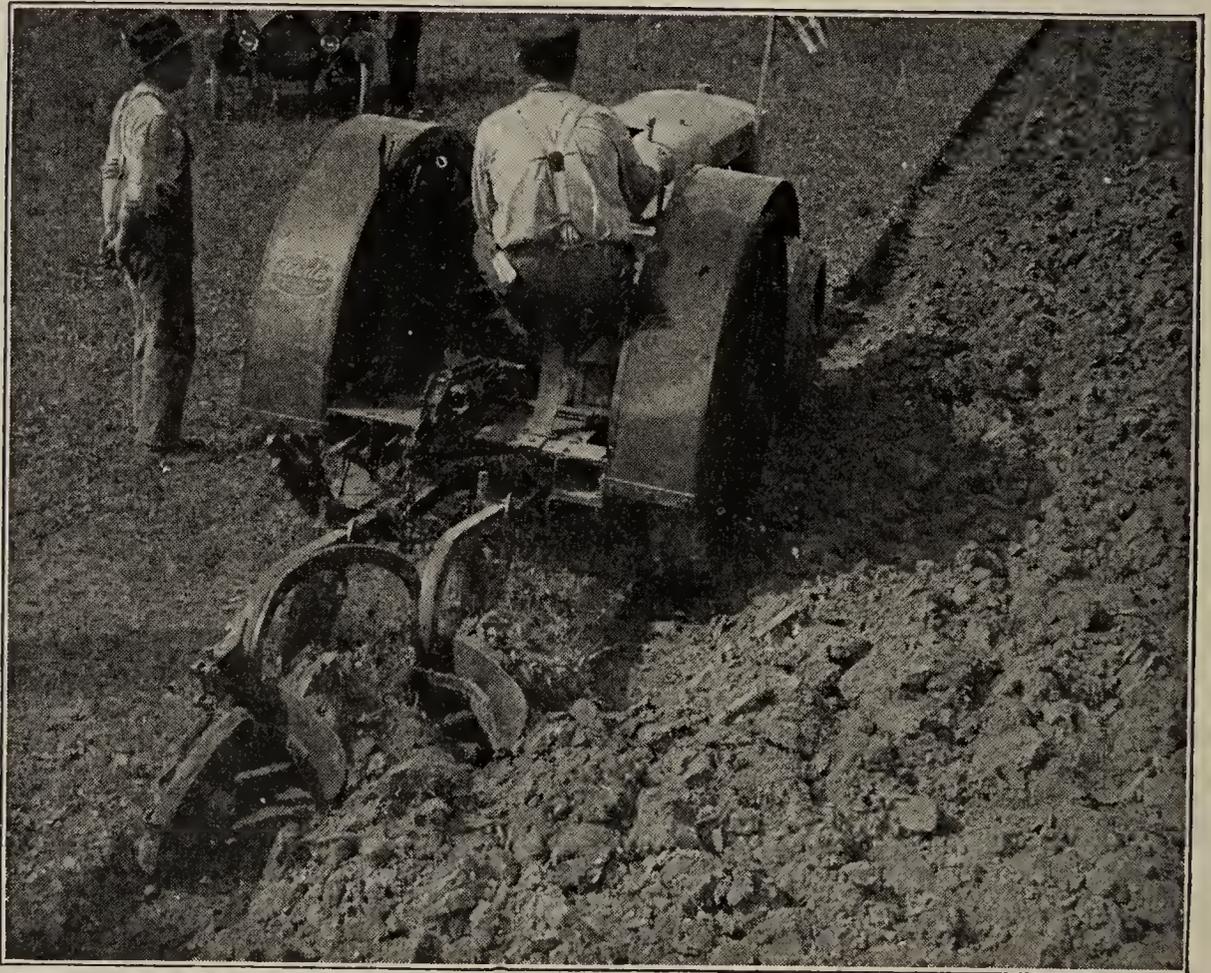
The Indians have given way to the advance of civilization. Once they ranged the plains free and wild as the buffaloes themselves, but now they are confined to a special territory where they are under the protection and care of the government. There are now about two hundred and fifty thousand Indians living on reservations, where they dwell peaceably in their own houses and attend quietly to their own affairs.

Inventions have kept pace with our industries. We have already seen that America contributed the cotton gin, the steamboat, and the electric telegraph to human progress. In addition to these we might mention the iron-clad war vessel invented by Ericsson, the reaper and harvester invented by McCormick, the sewing machine invented by Howe, the sleeping car invented by Pullman, as well as such inventions as the revolving printing press, the typewriter, and hundreds of others.

Thomas A. Edison is probably the greatest of all living inventors. It is to him we owe the electric light, the electric car, the phonograph, the moving-picture machine, and many other electrical and mechanical inventions.

One day when Edison was a young man he entered a telegraph office in Boston to begin work. He was poorly dressed and looked as if he knew nothing about his business. The operators smiled at his appearance, but he was told to take a seat and receive a message that was coming in from New York. Edison took

his place and began to write the message. For four hours and a half the message continued. The operator in New York sent it faster and faster, but Edison never complained of the speed. At the end of the message the operator asked over the wire, "Who are you?" The answer was, "Thomas

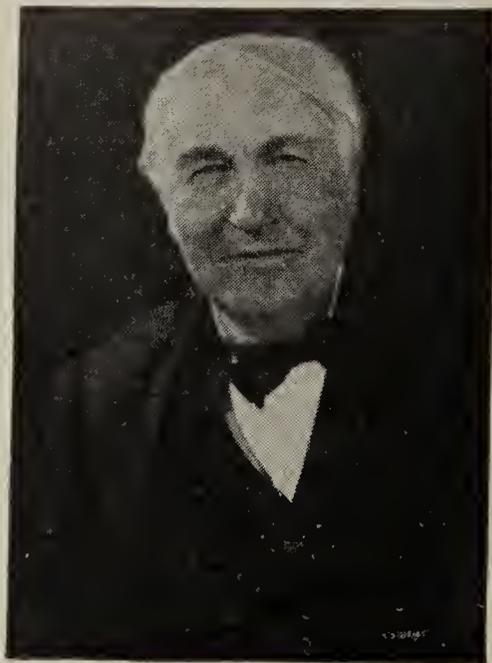


Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

TRACTION PLOWING

Edison." The operator said, "You are the first man that could ever take me at my fastest, and the only one I ever met that could sit at the other end of my wire for more than two hours and a half. I am proud to know you."

Edison has been a tireless worker. It is said that at one time he worked sixty hours on an invention without rest of any kind. Often he said that he owed his success to the fact that he "never looked at the clock." He has a splendid laboratory at Menlo Park, New Jersey, in which he has done so many wonderful things that people have come to call him "the wizard of Menlo Park."



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

THOMAS A. EDISON

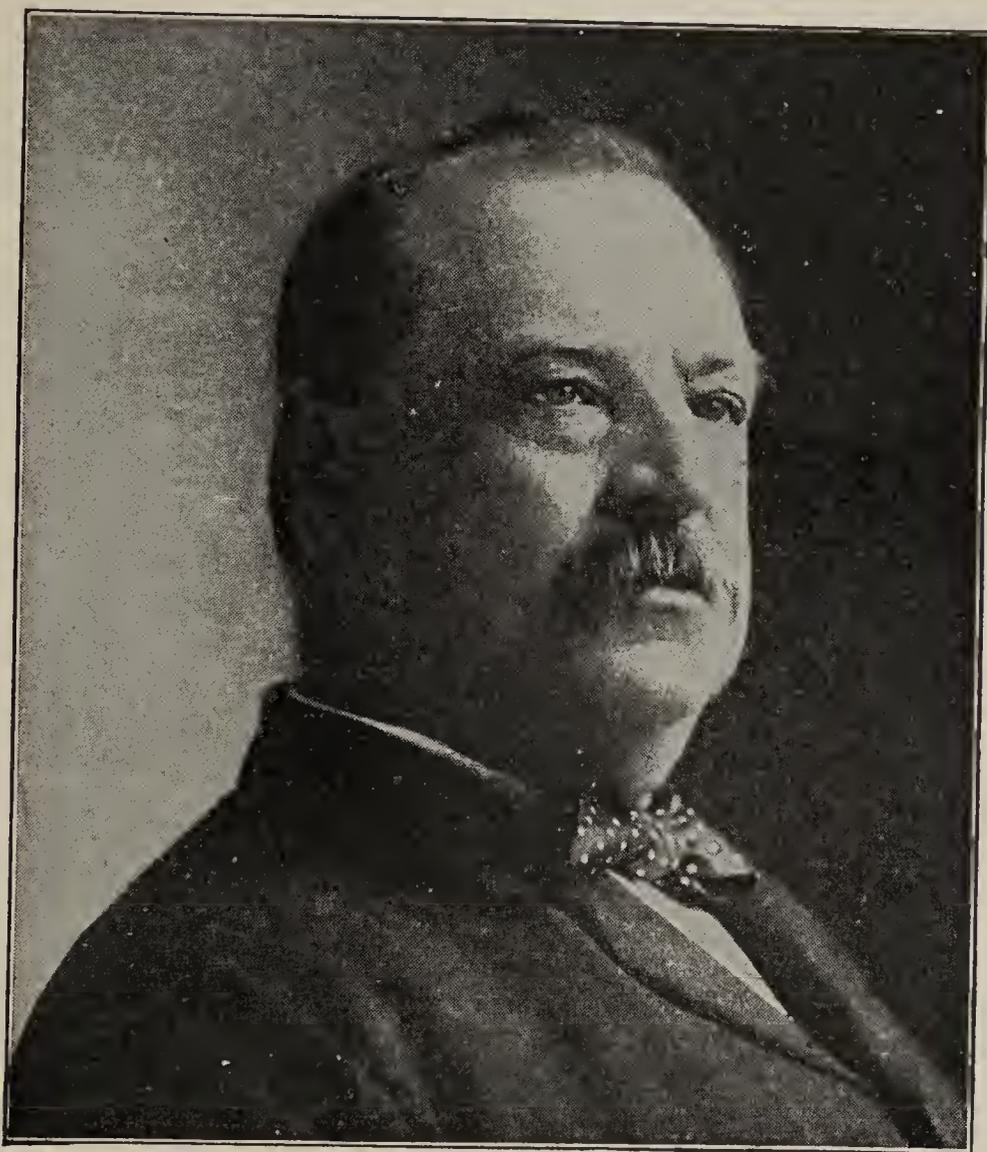
Another great American invention is the telephone. It was invented by Alexander Graham Bell. He was a teacher of the deaf and dumb, and while experimenting with the vibration of sound he unexpectedly discovered how sound could be reproduced by electricity at the end of a long wire. His first instrument was used to reproduce in the attic of his house musical notes made in the cellar. The telephone was first exhibited at the Centennial Exhibition in Philadelphia, where it attracted much attention. Improvements were rapidly made, and the telephone is now widely used in the homes and business houses of the people. Our large cities are connected by long-distance telephones, so that one can talk with his friends hundreds of miles away in distant parts of the country.

The development of the automobile is distinctly an American industry. Thirty-five years ago an automobile was a curiosity. In 1891, in an automobile race in Chicago, over a course of ninety miles, it took the winning car nearly nine hours to make the distance. It had to stop ten times for repairs and fuel, and used ice to keep the engine cool. In 1929, a speed record of 231 miles an hour, or nearly four miles a minute, was made on Daytona Beach, Florida.

In 1893 Henry Ford made his first car and used it on the streets of Detroit. It was so queer in appearance that it caused much amusement. Today the great Ford Motor Company employs thousands of workmen and turns out many hundreds of cars a day that are sold everywhere in the world.

3. THE WAR WITH SPAIN

GENERAL GRANT succeeded Andrew Johnson as President. It was during his term of office that the great fire occurred in Chicago, destroying a large portion of that city, and that

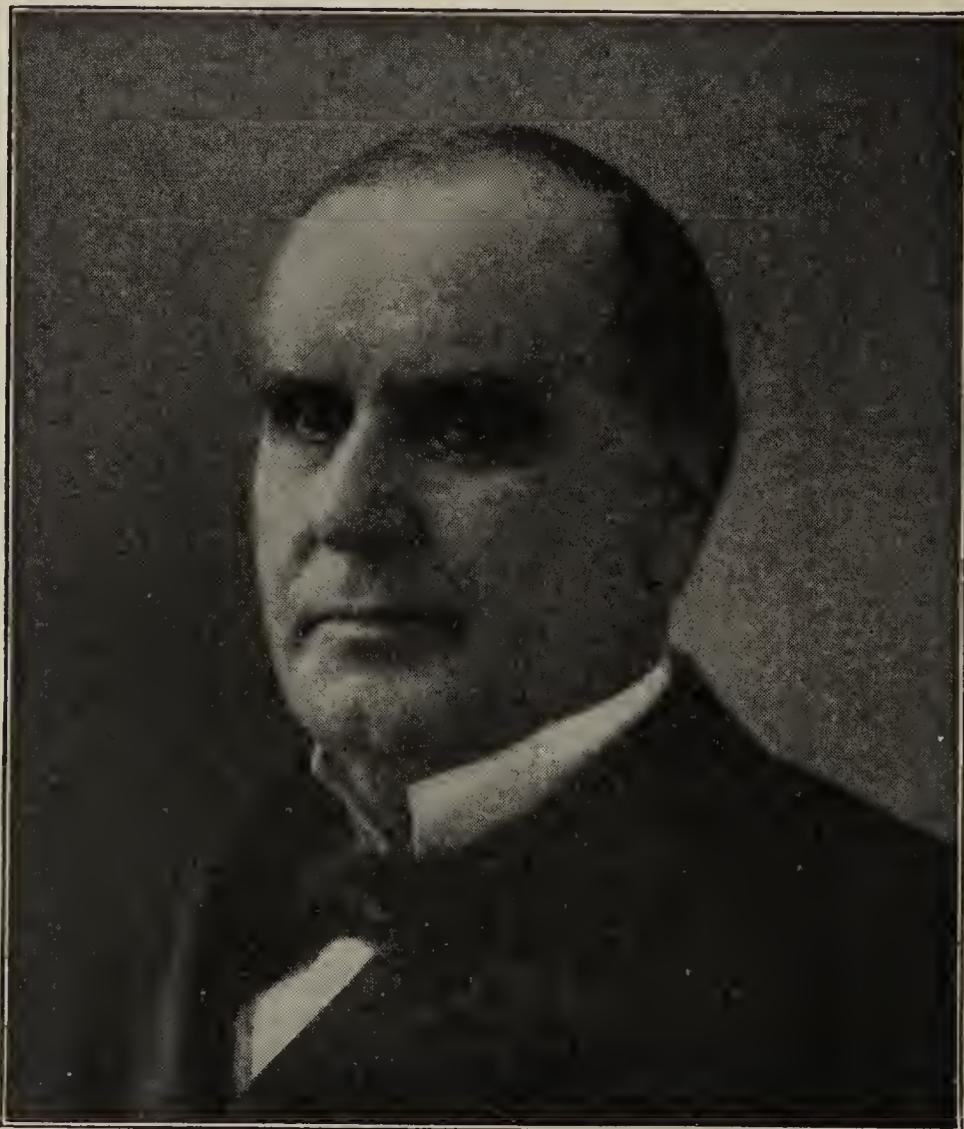


Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

GROVER CLEVELAND

the Centennial Exposition was held at Philadelphia, celebrating the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence.

Grant was succeeded by Rutherford B. Hayes. Then followed James A. Garfield, who was assassinated by a disappointed office-seeker. Chester A. Arthur, the Vice-President, became President. After Arthur came Grover



Copyright by International Film Co., Chicago

WILLIAM MCKINLEY

Cleveland, who was followed by Benjamin Harrison. Cleveland was elected a second time, and then William McKinley became President.

While McKinley was President the war with Spain occurred. The island of Cuba was a Spanish possession and was in rebellion against the hard rule of Spain. Spanish officials oppressed the people of Cuba by heavy taxes, by cruel and unjust treatment, and by general misrule of that beautiful island, which the Cubans themselves were unable to resent on account of their weakness and poverty. Sympathy for Cuba was freely expressed in America and our government looked on impatiently at the growing injustice to the people of that island.

Spanish
misrule in
Cuba

One night in 1898 one of our battleships, the *Maine*, lying in the harbor of Havana was blown up by an explosion and nearly three hundred of those on board lost their lives. It was a terrible disaster, and many persons in the United States thought it had been caused by order of the Spanish government. In a short while the sympathy of the people for the Cubans, as well as the indignation over the destruction of the *Maine*, demanded some action on the part of our government.

Congress passed a resolution authorizing the President to use the army and navy of the United States to compel Spain to give up her authority in Cuba. This was the same as a declaration of war, and President McKinley called for a hundred and twenty-five thousand soldiers to volunteer for the service.

Commodore George Dewey was ordered to attack Manila, the capital of the Philippine Islands, then a Spanish possession. Sailing into the Bay of Manila at night he

slipped past the shore batteries of the enemy, and at day-break began an attack upon the Spanish fleet. The soldiers and sailors raised the cry, "Remember the *Maine!*" The battle lasted for two hours and then the American vessels drew off for breakfast and for a short rest. In a few hours the battle was renewed, and after an hour the ships of the enemy were completely destroyed, or were at the mercy of Dewey and his fleet. Not an American ship was lost, nor was a single American soldier killed in the battle. Manila then fell into the hands of Commodore Dewey and the war in the East was ended.

In the meanwhile an American fleet under Captain Sampson and Commodore Schley was blocking the harbor of Santiago de Cuba. Inside was the Spanish fleet, commanded by Admiral Cervera, seeking for a chance to escape. In order to obstruct the harbor, Lieutenant Hobson, of Alabama, with a few companions, sank a coal ship in the channel. It was a daring deed, especially as the men were in the full face of the enemy's guns. Hobson and his crew escaped to the Spanish vessels and surrendered as prisoners of war.

An army was now landed near Santiago, and the capture of the city was undertaken. After several battles General Shafter, the American general, captured the heights overlooking Santiago, from which he could easily shell the city and the ships in the harbor. Seeing his danger, Admiral Cervera made a dash for liberty. His vessels, however, were easily

Battle of
Manila Bay,
April 30,
1898

Lieutenant
Hobson

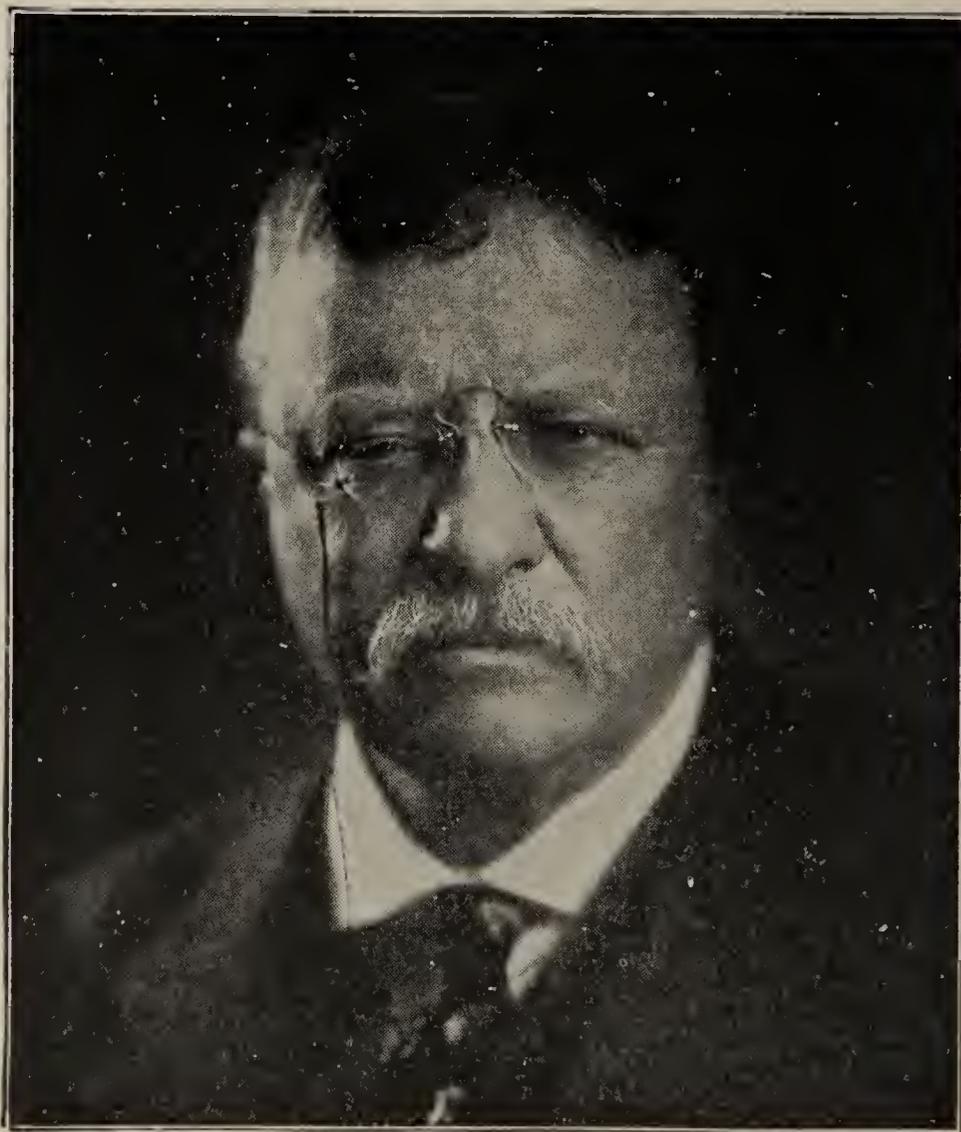
Destruction
of Cervera's
fleet, July 3,
1898

overtaken and destroyed by the American fleet and he himself was made prisoner. Santiago surrendered and the war ended.

By the treaty with Spain we came into possession of the Philippine Islands, Porto Rico, and the island of Guam in the Pacific Ocean, and agreed to pay Spain ^{End of the} twenty million dollars. Cuba was declared ^{war} free and independent, and the Spanish rule in the West Indies came to an end.

4. POLITICAL EVENTS

SOON after the close of the war with Spain President McKinley was assassinated while attending an exposition at Buffalo. He was shaking hands with his friends when an assassin shot him with a revolver concealed in a handkerchief. After lingering a

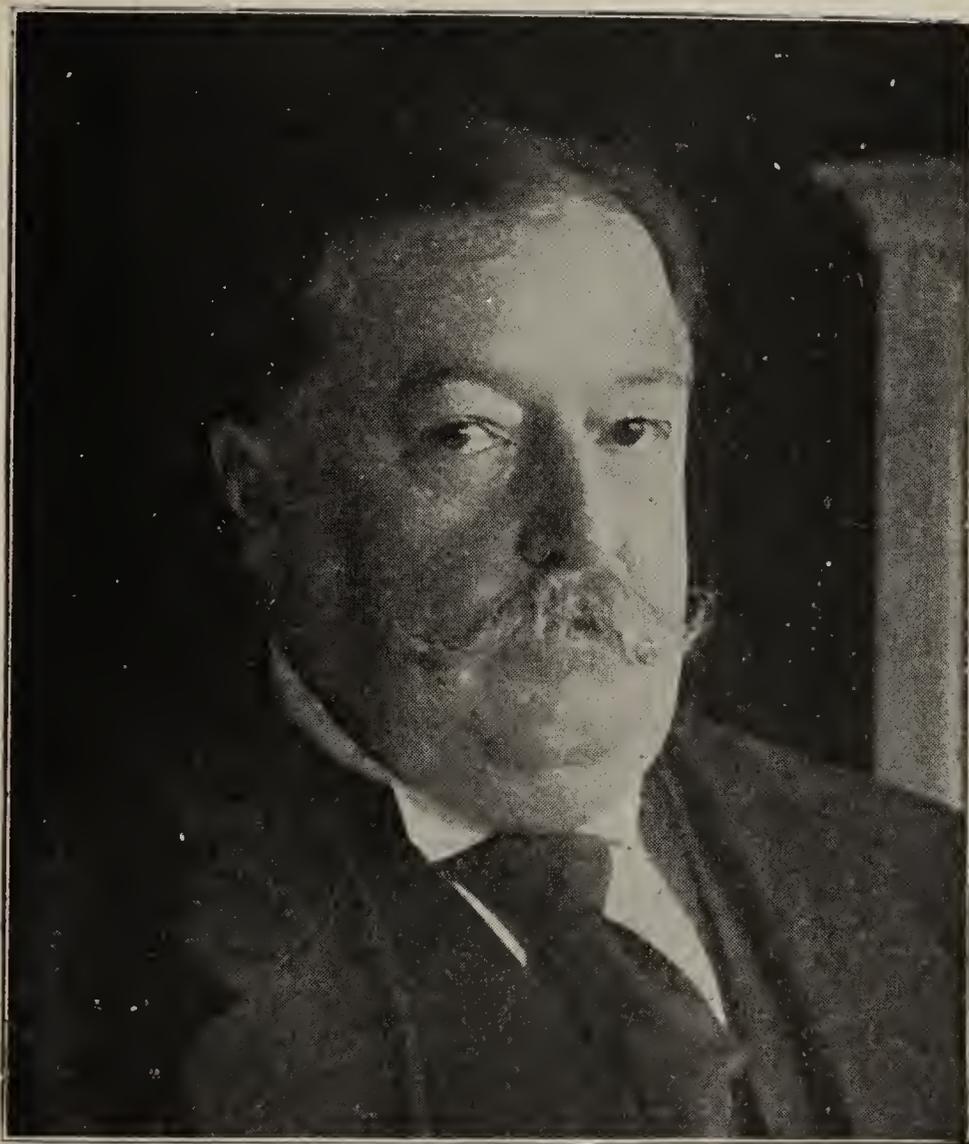


Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT

week, he died, the third martyr President, mourned by the entire nation. He was succeeded by Theodore Roosevelt, the Vice-President.

During Roosevelt's administration occurred the war between Russia and Japan. The war lasted many months,



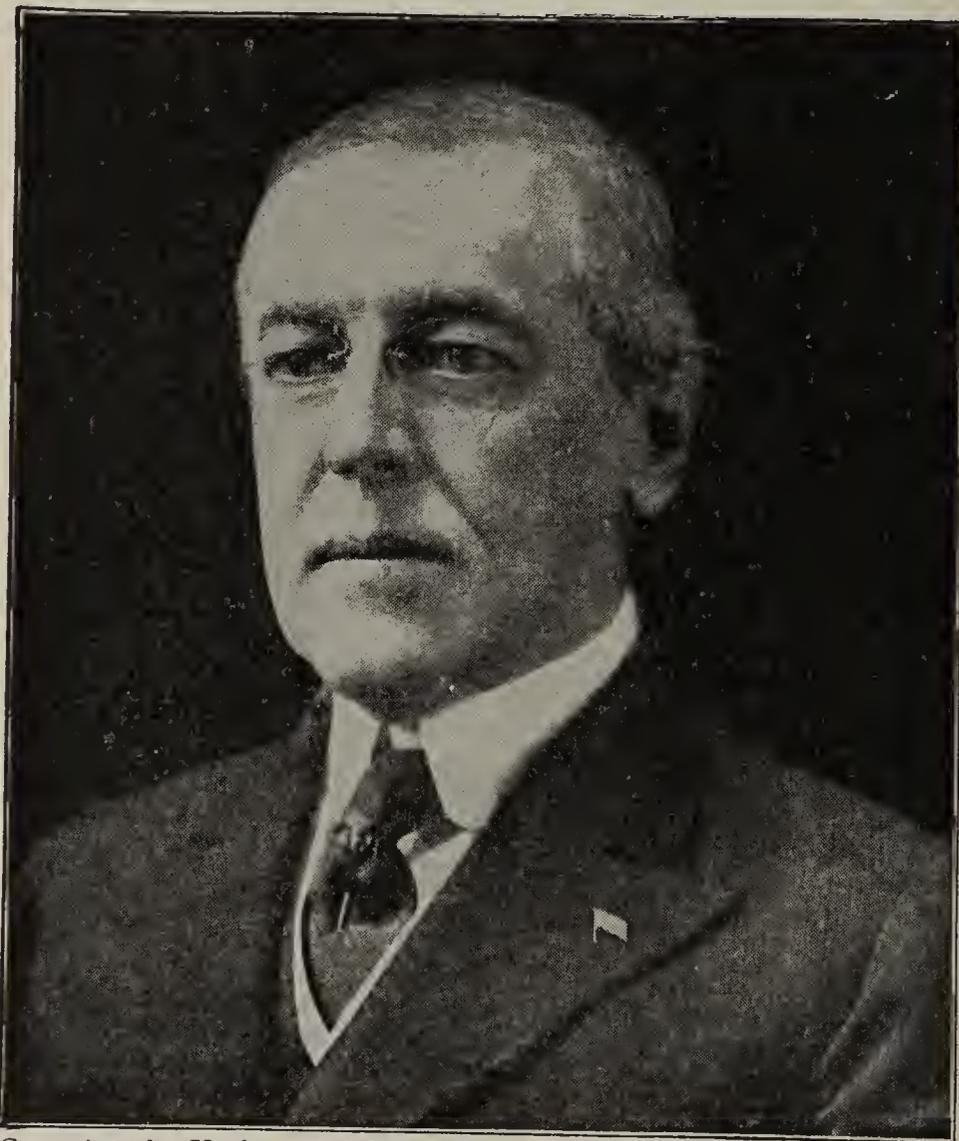
Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

WILLIAM H. TAFT

in which several great battles were fought, many lives were lost, and much property was destroyed. President Roosevelt addressed a note to each of the warring countries offering his services as peacemaker, and suggesting that a conference be held between representatives of the two countries.

War between
Russia and
Japan

Accordingly, the representatives of Russia and Japan met at Portsmouth, New Hampshire, and after deliberating over the terms of peace, finally signed a treaty ending the war.

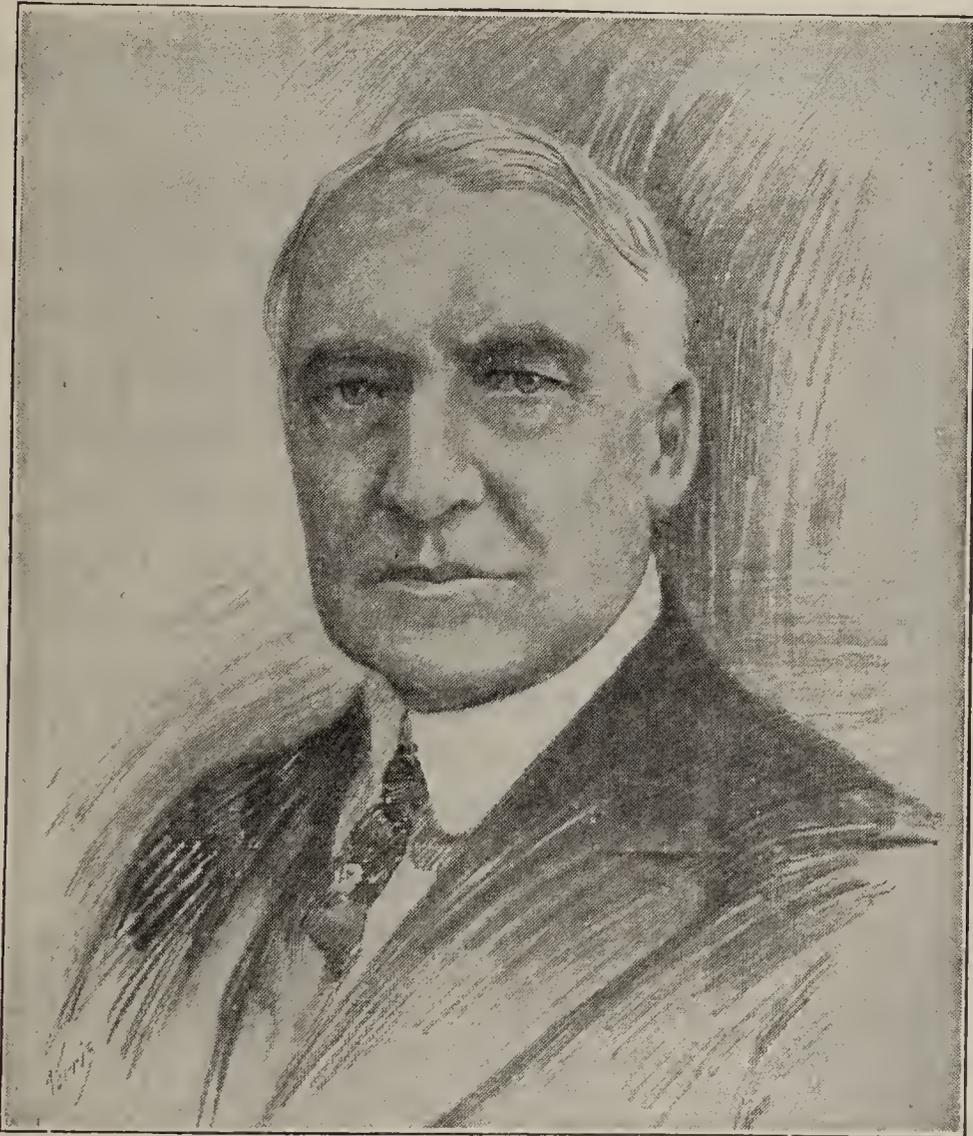


Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

WOODROW WILSON

After President Roosevelt had served the unexpired term of McKinley, he was elected for a term of four years. He was succeeded in 1909 by William H. Taft. In 1912 Woodrow Wilson, the candidate of the Democratic Party, was duly elected President. He was in office for two terms, a period of eight years, during

which the world at large, including the United States, passed through the crisis of the great World War. In 1920 Warren G. Harding, of Ohio, the candidate of the Republican Party, was elected President, and was duly inaugurated March 4, 1921.



WARREN G. HARDING

The greatest enterprise of modern times is the building of the Panama Canal, which was undertaken by the United States in 1902 and completed in 1914. The purpose of the

canal is to save the long and hazardous voyage around Cape Horn for ships passing from ocean to ocean. Ships sailing from New York to San Francisco save six thousand miles. This saving in distance means saving in expense and time, and a more rapid delivery of products from one port to another.

The canal is about forty-nine miles in length, and cost several hundreds of millions of dollars. It goes through a narrow strip of territory ten miles wide, purchased by the United States from Panama and known as the Canal Zone. In the digging of the canal great care was used to drain the swamps, cut down the undergrowth, and construct barracks for the workmen that would protect them from mosquitoes, thereby reducing the danger from malaria and other diseases. By proper sanitary arrangements the death rate in the Canal Zone is no larger than in many cities of the United States.

One of the problems of President Wilson's administration was to avoid involving the United States in foreign wars and revolutions. A revolution in Mexico demanded his attention. In 1914 a number of American sailors were seized at Tampico by the Mexican authorities. The sailors were released, but the American admiral demanded an apology by having the Mexicans fire a salute to the American flag. The Mexicans refused, whereupon President Wilson sent vessels to Mexican ports and threatened war. Happily a conflict was averted by the mediation of several South American countries.

In 1916 Mexican bandits made raids on the border towns

of Texas and New Mexico, threatening the lives and property of American citizens. To punish the marauders President Wilson sent an expeditionary force into Mexico, which after many months and much hardship was withdrawn by agreement with Mexico.

In 1917 Congress submitted to the states an amendment to the Constitution prohibiting the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors anywhere in the United States or its territory. This **Prohibition** amendment was ratified by three-fourths of the states and in January 1920 national prohibition went into effect.

In 1919 another important amendment to the Constitution was offered to the states for ratification, which granted women the right of citizenship, with the **Woman** power to vote and hold office. This amend- **suffrage** ment was also ratified by the legislature of three-fourths of the states and became a law of the land.

QUESTIONS

1. What three amendments to the Constitution were ratified by the Southern states? What can you say of carpetbaggers in the South? What can you say of the Ku-Klux Klan? What was the result of the impeachment of President Johnson? Describe the progress of the South since the war. What can you say of cotton mills in the South? What can you say of the coal fields of the South? What can you say of crude oil and lumber? What can you say of the raising of fruit and vegetables?

2. Where, for how much, and from whom was Alaska purchased? What can you say of Alaska? What can you say of the progress of the West? What can you say of the Indians of the

present day? Name some American inventions. Give an incident in the early life of Edison. Describe the invention of the telephone. Describe the automobile industry. To what two brothers do we owe the success of the flying machine?

3. What war occurred when McKinley was President? Describe the Spanish misrule in Cuba. Describe the sinking of the *Maine*. Describe the battle of Manila Bay. What was the exploit of Lieutenant Hobson? Describe the destruction of Cervera's fleet. What were the provisions of the treaty of peace?

4. Describe the assassination of McKinley. How was the war between Russia and Japan brought to an end? Name some Presidents of recent years. What is the greatest enterprise of modern times? How long is the Panama Canal? What difficulties were encountered? What troubles arose in Mexico during Wilson's administration? When did national prohibition go into effect? What can you say of woman suffrage?

CHAPTER VIII

THE WORLD WAR

1. HOW THE WAR BEGAN

FOR many years Germany had been building up a great military system. She compelled every able-bodied man to be a trained soldier, and collected vast quantities of ammunition, guns, and war supplies. She built warships and erected forts on all frontiers. Germany was making all these preparations to get ready for a war which she knew would come, because she herself was ambitious for more territory, more trade, and more power, and desired to humble the pride and destroy the influence of England, her great rival.

Other nations in Europe were obliged to keep up with Germany in their military preparation. They also organized armies, collected stores, built ships and fortifications, and prepared for a great war. Europe thus became an armed camp. The people were burdened with taxation and oppressed by a militarism that bore heavily upon all classes. It now needed but little provocation to bring on a conflict that would involve all Europe. We shall soon see that when it came it involved the whole world.

The nations now began to make alliances. Germany made an alliance with Austria-Hungary and also with Italy,

known as the Triple Alliance. This alliance was for defensive purposes and pledged its members to defend one another against invasion in case of attack.

Alliances Great Britain, France, and Russia met this move by making an agreement known as the Triple Entente. In this way the six great nations of Europe were lined up, and any war that might occur would almost certainly involve them all.

The event which brought on the war was the assassination of the Archduke Francis Ferdinand of Austria, June 28, 1914, who with his wife was on a visit to Sarajevo, a town in Bosnia, which was an Austrian province.

Assassination of the Archduke Ferdinand It was charged by Austria that citizens of Serbia had instigated the mad deed, and that the Serbian government was in some way responsible. Therefore Austria made the most humiliating demands of Serbia, not all of which she could meet. Austria then declared war on Serbia, July 28, 1914.

This was enough to inflame the European situation. Russia, an ally of Serbia, threatened to invade Austria, and began moving troops to the Austrian frontier.

Germany declares war Germany, an ally of Austria, entered the field and sent word to Russia to stop moving troops to the Austrian border. Germany also sent a demand to France to know if she would be neutral in case of war. Russia paid no heed to the German demands and the answer of France was evasive. Therefore Germany at once declared war on Russia and France.

Germany desired to bring the war to a quick finish by

vigorous measures. In order to reach the territory of France to strike a decisive blow, it was necessary to avoid the mountainous regions of the French frontier, which were heavily fortified. Germany decided to march across Luxemburg and the level fields of Belgium whether she had the right to do so or not. Luxemburg was a helpless little country and powerless in the hands of Germany. King Albert of Belgium sent word that his country was a nation and not a thoroughfare and for the Germans to keep out.

In spite of treaties of the most solemn kind by which several great powers, including Germany, had agreed to preserve the neutrality of Belgium, the German army was dispatched across Luxemburg and entered the territory of Belgium on its way to France. This was invasion of neutral territory and in violation of her treaties, but Germany declared it was a military necessity and that any treaty to the contrary was "a scrap of paper."

**Invasion of
Belgium**

England demanded that Germany change her plan of invasion and withdraw her troops from Belgium. Germany paid no heed to this demand and England declared war against Germany on the ground that she was bound to protect the neutrality of Belgium. In one week Great Britain, France, and Russia, commonly called the Allies, were at war with Germany and Austria, commonly called the Central Powers. Japan as the ally of England also entered the war about the same time.

**England
enters the
war**

As the German army advanced they met opposition by

the brave little Belgian army. The French were busy collecting their forces to meet the invaders and the English were hurrying troops across the Channel. There was a fever of preparation to defend Paris and a hurried advance of the German hosts.

The German army finally reached the French territory on their way to Paris. Nothing seemed to stop the wave of invasion. The Germans came within twenty miles of Paris, and that city seemed doomed. However, General Joffre made a stand on the Marne River, September 6, 1914, and fought the first battle of the Marne. The French knew the fate of their country hung upon the issues of that day. It was a terrific struggle, but also a great victory for France. The Germans were thrown back a distance of fifty miles and Paris was safe. Germany's hopes of conquest in a short campaign had vanished.

2. PROGRESS OF THE WAR

THE armies on the western front dug trenches and threw up fortifications that practically remained unchanged until the end of the war. These trenches were really the battle lines of the two armies and extended for four hundred miles from the North Sea to the Swiss border. Each side had its own trenches, in some places a mile or more apart and



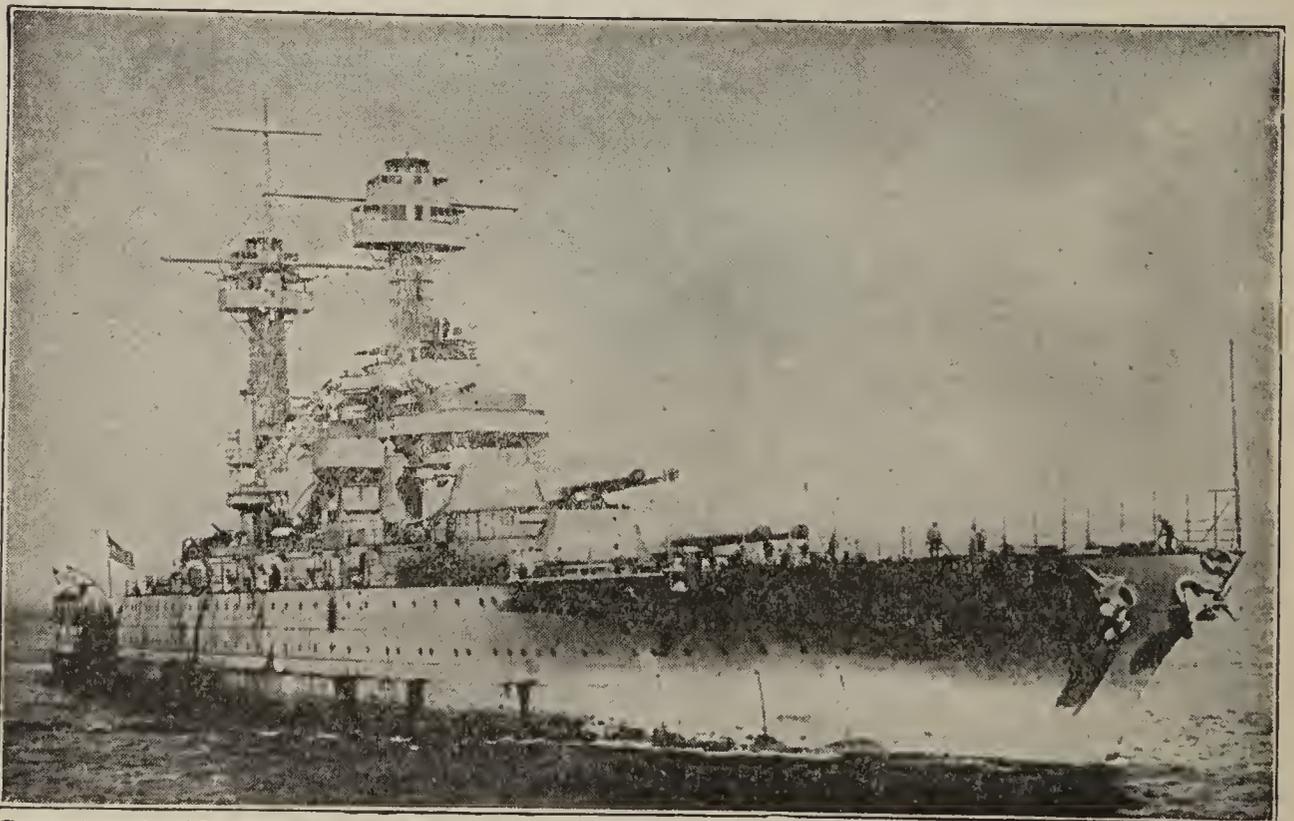
TRENCHES ON THE WESTERN FRONT

elsewhere only a few hundred feet. Between the trenches lay a strip of "No Man's Land," for it belonged to whichever side captured it.

Inside these trenches the men hid themselves from the terrible fire of the enemy. Here they lay ready at a moment's notice to seize gun and hand grenade and clamber "over the top" and climb over and cut through barbed-wire

entanglements, rush across "No Man's Land," drop into the enemy trenches, and pursue the conflict by hand-to-hand battle. Besides the trenches there were dugouts, often forty feet deep, where the men ate, slept, stored ammunition, and protected themselves from the awful artillery fire. Even in good weather life in the trenches was hard, but in winter or when it rained, and the trenches were full of snow or mud, the soldiers suffered a great deal.

The ports of Germany were all blockaded by the Allied fleet so that her supplies from foreign countries were almost entirely cut off. She still seemed able, however, to carry on a vigorous war



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

A MODERN BATTLESHIP

In 1915 the Germans began to use poison gas as a means of warfare. Some British troops noticed a yellow mist rolling on the ground and slowly coming towards them, borne by the wind. On breathing it, the men were almost overcome by the deadly fumes. Both sides finally resorted to poison gas, but the danger was greatly reduced by the use of masks which covered the face completely and which communicated with a container holding chemicals to neutralize the effect of the poison.

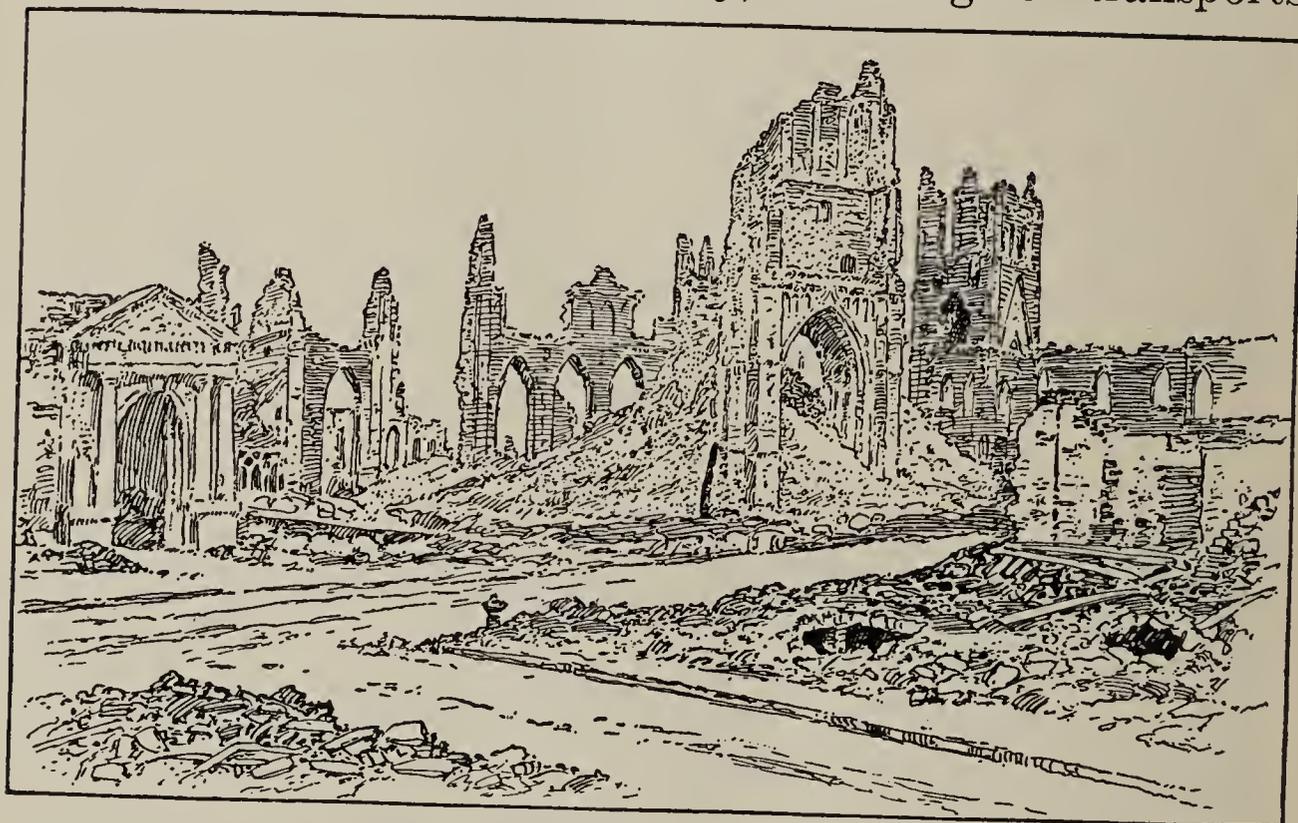
In the meantime the war continued on the eastern frontier with but little success to the Allies. Russia was held in check and Turkey entered the war on the side of the Central Powers. The Allied campaign against Constantinople was a failure. Poland was overrun by the Germans, and Serbia had been invaded.

The devastation of Belgium and Northern France by the Germans is one of the saddest records of the war. Louvain, a city of 45,000 people, suffered severely. The cathedral and one-third of the town were destroyed. The Germans plundered the factories, the houses, and the stores of the people, robbed them of their food supplies, their cattle, their horses, and their farm implements. As many as two hundred thousand able-bodied persons were compelled to leave their homes and work in German factories or fields. The remaining population would have starved if it had not been for the assistance of America and the Allies.

Devastation
of Belgium
and Northern
France

Germany now began an active submarine warfare. A war zone was declared around the British Isles, and vessels

of all nations were warned to keep out of these waters or run the risk of being sunk by torpedoes. These submarine vessels could cruise a long distance and stay abroad for several weeks. The largest size could even cross the ocean. They lay in wait or slowly cruised in the enemy's territory, watching for transports



BELGIAN CITY RUINED BY GERMANS

carrying troops, merchant vessels carrying supplies, or war vessels seeking an enemy. Through the periscope the officers could see the enemy's craft and estimate the distance. Then a torpedo was launched which made a long straight flight on the water and struck with a frightful explosion. In most cases its victim was a helpless wreck and sank to the bottom, often without a trace being left on the surface of the sea.

In May, 1915, the great British liner, the *Lusitania*, was sunk without warning, off the coast of Ireland, as it was making a voyage between New York and Liverpool. Before



THE "LUSITANIA"

its departure, notice had been given in the New York papers, warning all persons of the danger of sailing in the war zone. But the *Lusitania* departed with a large passenger list, and in a few days was sighted in the war zone and sunk by a German torpedo. There were 1152 lives lost, of whom 114 were known to be American citizens. It was a frightful disaster and aroused the indignation of the world at large and particularly of the people of the United States. A declaration of war with Germany was narrowly averted.

3. THE UNITED STATES ENTERS THE WAR

GERMANY prepared to carry out her threat to destroy all vessels of any nation if they were found in the war zone, and she so informed the United States. President Wilson replied by handing the German minister his passports, and by recalling our minister from Berlin. April 2, 1917, President Wilson delivered a war message to Congress, in which he advised that body "to declare the recent course of the Imperial German government to be in fact nothing less than war against the government and people of the United States." Taking his advice, Congress declared, April 6, 1917, that a state of war existed between the United States and Germany.



THE MAP OF THE WORLD BLACKENED BY WAR

Other nations followed the action of the United States, declaring war or breaking off diplomatic relations. Altogether twenty-eight nations, large and small, comprising

eleven-twelfths of the world population, were engaged. The map of the world was blackened by war.

Vast sums of money were appropriated by Congress to carry on the war. It was decided to raise an army on the principle of the selective draft, and to choose the best men in the country for the arduous duty of foreign service. The first draft called for all men between the ages of 21 and 31 years. The second draft, about a year later, called for men between the ages of 18 and 45 years, not included in the first draft. These two drafts enrolled about twenty-three million men, from which a great army of five or six million men was to be selected.

All America sprang eagerly into the war and to the support of the Allies. The resources of the country were poured out without regard to cost, for speed was necessary and the Allies were urging America to make ready as soon as possible. Training camps for the soldiers were built with great rapidity. In a few months, places that were dense forests or open fields became the comfortable quarters of thousands of soldiers. Skilled officers of the regular army, and others specially trained for the emergency, began to train the men as they arrived in camp. It was not long before America had men ready for overseas service. The world marveled at the way the American people made ready for war, and at the enthusiasm the American soldiers displayed in preparing for service.

The industries of the country were turned to supplying war material for our own soldiers and those of the Allies. The powder plants, the gun and shell factories, the mills

for making clothing, blankets, and tents, and indeed all the manufacturing plants were set to work to do their part in carrying on the war. Two and a half million rifles were made, a quarter of a million machine guns, eight million coats, and many million blankets, and food products without limit were prepared for our men.

The government took control of the seven hundred railroads of the country as a war measure, and used them for transporting troops, equipment, and supplies. After the war was over the railroads were returned to their former owners. Great sums of money were raised by the sale of Liberty Bonds, and War Savings Stamps, as well as by a tax on incomes, luxuries, amusements, and the unusual profits in business arising from war conditions.

When the war was at its height it cost the United States alone two million dollars an hour. The total cost of the war to this country was more than it had cost to run the government for the previous one hundred years, and was nearly equal in value to the world's output of gold for over four hundred years. The universal expense of the war was so staggering that the world could not long survive the terrible strain.

The movement of American troops abroad was well under way by the end of 1917. The President had appointed General John J. Pershing commander of the American forces in Europe. Our armies at first operated under General Pershing's sole command, though separate units were at times brigaded with French or English divisions for

training. The appearance of the American soldiers abroad was greeted with great enthusiasm.

Great transports carried the soldiers over at the rate of about two hundred thousand a month. In spite of the danger of submarines very few lives were lost, ^{Transporting} because the transports were convoyed by small ^{the troops} and speedy naval vessels called destroyers. Upon their arrival the men were transferred rapidly to the front lines to take part in the great battles. Before the close of hostilities America had two million men in Europe and had provided them with every means of effective warfare.

4. THE END OF THE WAR

A GREAT and final offensive movement by the Germans was begun in the spring of 1918. Many of their troops had been withdrawn from the east since Russia had been completely broken and was practically out of the war. Germany desired to crush France and England before the United States could get an army in the field.

The great battle line extended for four hundred miles, from Ostend on the North Sea to the Swiss border. More than three million men were engaged. The German offensive movement Germans pushed forward gradually in their various offensive movements until they came within forty-four miles of Paris. Their advance was checked at Chateau-Thierry by the French troops assisted by the American marines and infantry.

Every method of modern warfare was resorted to. Smoke screens were used to conceal the movements of troops. Airplanes hovered over the battle lines, tanks like armored land cruisers crushed through all obstacles to attack the enemy's trenches, long range guns carried their deadly explosive charges. Germany was delivering her final and desperate charge and placing her dependence upon the issue of her offensive movements.

The Allies decided upon the policy of appointing a commander-in-chief of all Allied forces, and Marshal Foch, the great French general was chosen to supreme command. Shortly after his selection he decided to take the offensive and to drive the Germans out of the invaded territory. July 18, 1918, Marshal Foch began

The Allies
counter attack

his great counter attack. Incessantly the blows fell day by day, and slowly the German lines began to crumble and their defences to give way. Germany was doomed.

At the end of four years, the power of her adversaries, coupled with the exhaustion of her resources and internal disorder, brought Germany to the end of her strength. Bulgaria, Turkey, and Austria, completely overcome, abandoned the war and begged for peace on any terms. The Kaiser, fearing the consequences of defeat, fled into Holland, leaving his country to make terms with the Allies. Germany had already asked for cessation of hostilities, and two days after the flight of the Kaiser an armistice was signed, November 11, 1918.

By the terms of the armistice Germany laid down her arms, surrendered the greater part of her fleet, delivered up large stores of war material and supplies, withdrew from all invaded territory, and agreed to the occupation of her territory west of the river Rhine.

To settle definitely the terms of peace, a Peace Conference from all the nations at war with Germany and her allies was held at Versailles near Paris, 1919. President Wilson attended this conference in person, as the leading delegate from the United States. After several months of deliberation an agreement was reached, known as the Treaty of Versailles, and signed July 28, 1919, by all the delegates. This treaty made changes in the boundaries of many European nations and compelled the payment by Germany of immense sums of money as indemnity for the destruction she had caused by the war.

QUESTIONS

1. What can you say of militarism in Europe? What great political alliances were made between the nations? What occurrence brought on the World War? With what nations did Germany first declare war? How did Germany plan to reach French territory? Describe the invasion of Belgium. Why did England enter the war? How was the German invasion stopped?

2. Describe the trenches and trench warfare. How and when was poison gas used as a means of warfare? Describe the devastation of Belgium. Describe submarine warfare. Tell the story of the sinking of the *Lusitania*. How many American citizens were lost?

3. Why and when did the United States enter the war? How many nations finally became involved? Describe the selective drafts. Describe the training camps. What can you say of the industrial energy of the United States? How was money raised for carrying on the war? What can you say of the expenses of the war? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces? Describe the transporting of the troops.

4. When did the Germans begin their final offensive movement? How long was the battle line and how many men were engaged? Where was the forward movement checked? What methods of warfare were used? Describe the Allies' counter attack. What was the result? When was the armistice signed? Describe the Treaty of Versailles. What were its provisions?

CHAPTER IX

AFTER THE WAR

1. MEASURES FOR PERMANENT PEACE

THE terrible calamity of the war brought the nations together with the purpose of making permanent peace and of making further warfare as difficult as possible. The League of Nations was organized. With this in view, a League of Nations was organized. Nearly all the nations of the world are members. Those who joined have agreed to submit their disputes to arbitration, and not to go to war until they have done this. However, if any nation broke its agreement and went to war, the other nations agreed not to trade with that nation, thereby cutting off from it supplies of all kinds. In extreme cases, the League members are to send troops into the war area in order to prevent any aggressive movement against an unoffending member.

The League has other purposes also, such as the study of problems relating to immigration, piracy, and the freedom of the seas; health problems; the protection of women and children; and the study of many other problems affecting the welfare of the world.

The first meeting of the League was held in November, 1920, at Geneva, Switzerland. Forty-two countries were represented, and their delegates signed the covenant.

Since that time other nations have joined, including Germany, until by 1927 there were fifty-six members in all, twice as many nations as were engaged in the World War.

President Wilson had much to do with organizing the League of Nations. He wrote many of its provisions, and was a firm believer in its power to bring the nations into a better understanding with one another and to prevent war. In the main avenue of the city of Geneva, in front of a building belonging to the League, there is a tablet bearing the inscription: "To the Memory of Woodrow Wilson, the Founder of the League of Nations."

President Wilson came back to the United States, and threw his whole energy into a campaign to make this nation a member of the League. He met much opposition from those who were opposed to his policy, and the Senate failed to ratify the treaty he had proposed. Up to this time (1929) the United States has not become a member of the League of Nations.

During the campaign and while he was on one of his tours of speaking in favor of the League, President Wilson was stricken with paralysis, from which he never entirely recovered. He died February 3, 1924, nearly three years after his term of office had expired.

Although the United States has not joined the League of Nations, yet we have coöperated with many of its activities.

The United States and the League We have shown in many ways that we are in favor of world peace and are opposed to war.

Many Americans are employed in the offices of the League. Many unofficial observers attend the meetings,

and the departments of our government lend their aid whenever possible to secure world peace and the good-will of the nations.

In April, 1927, Aristide Briand, the Minister of Foreign Affairs of France, announced through the papers that France was ready to make a treaty of perpetual peace and to renounce war entirely between that country and the United States. This announcement was followed in June by a formal note to Secretary of State Frank Kellogg, proposing such a treaty between the two countries. In December, Secretary Kellogg returned an answer, proposing that the treaty be made not only between France and the United States, but among the principal powers of the world, open to the signature of all nations, condemning war and renouncing it as an instrument of national policy. This is called a multilateral treaty, because it took in all nations and did not confine it only to France and the United States.

A great deal of correspondence followed on the subject among the principal powers, until at last an agreement was reached among fifteen leading nations to sign **The Pact of** such a treaty. August 27, 1928, delegates from **Paris** these nations met in Paris and signed the treaty outlawing war and agreeing among themselves. The words of the treaty are as follows :

“ARTICLE 1. The High Contracting Parties solemnly declare in the name of their respective peoples, that they condemn recourse to war for the solution of international controversies, and renounce it as an instrument of national policy in their relations with one another.

“ARTICLE 2. The High Contracting Parties agree that the settlement or solution of all disputes of whatever nature or of whatever origin they may be, which may arise among them, shall never be sought except by pacific means.”

It was understood that every nation reserved the right of self-defense in case of attack, for that right was a natural one which no nation could abandon. It was also
Reservations agreed that if any nation signing the treaty should violate it, the other nations were relieved of their obligations toward such a nation.

This treaty was submitted to all the nations of the world, and was ratified or signed by nearly all of them, including our own, so that now the nations of practically the entire world have agreed to settle their disputes by peaceful methods.

It is the great hope of the advocates of peace treaties and agreements that the armies and the navies of the world can be reduced in size and cost, that the burden of preparedness for war will be relieved, and that suspicion and distrust and fear will forever be put aside.

2. PROGRESS IN AVIATION

THE first successful flight in an airplane was made by Orville Wright and his brother Wilbur at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina, December 17, 1903. In 1904 they made a flight of three miles; in 1905, a flight of 24 miles; in 1908, a flight of 95 miles. They had solved the problem of navigating the air, and their success was proclaimed everywhere as remarkable.

Rapid progress was made in the type of the engines and the character of the planes, and records were rapidly made by daring flyers. In June, 1919, two British aviators made the first nonstop flight across the Atlantic Ocean, starting from Newfoundland and landing in Ireland. They flew 1900 miles in 16 hours and 12 minutes, through fog and mist, sometimes only a few feet from the water, and then again as high as two miles.

In October, 1919, a transcontinental race between New York and San Francisco was undertaken by sixty-three flyers. Forty-eight started from New York and fifteen started from San Francisco. The fastest time going west was 25 hours and 11 minutes. Going east the time was 21 hours and 51 minutes.

May 9, 1926, Commander Richard E. Byrd with Floyd Bennett flew in an airplane from King's Bay, Spitzbergen, over the North Pole and back again. Their flying time was $15\frac{1}{2}$ hours, and the distance covered was 1360 miles. They made the flight in the daytime, with a complete absence of fog, so that the condition of the ice fields was visible all the way. They were the first

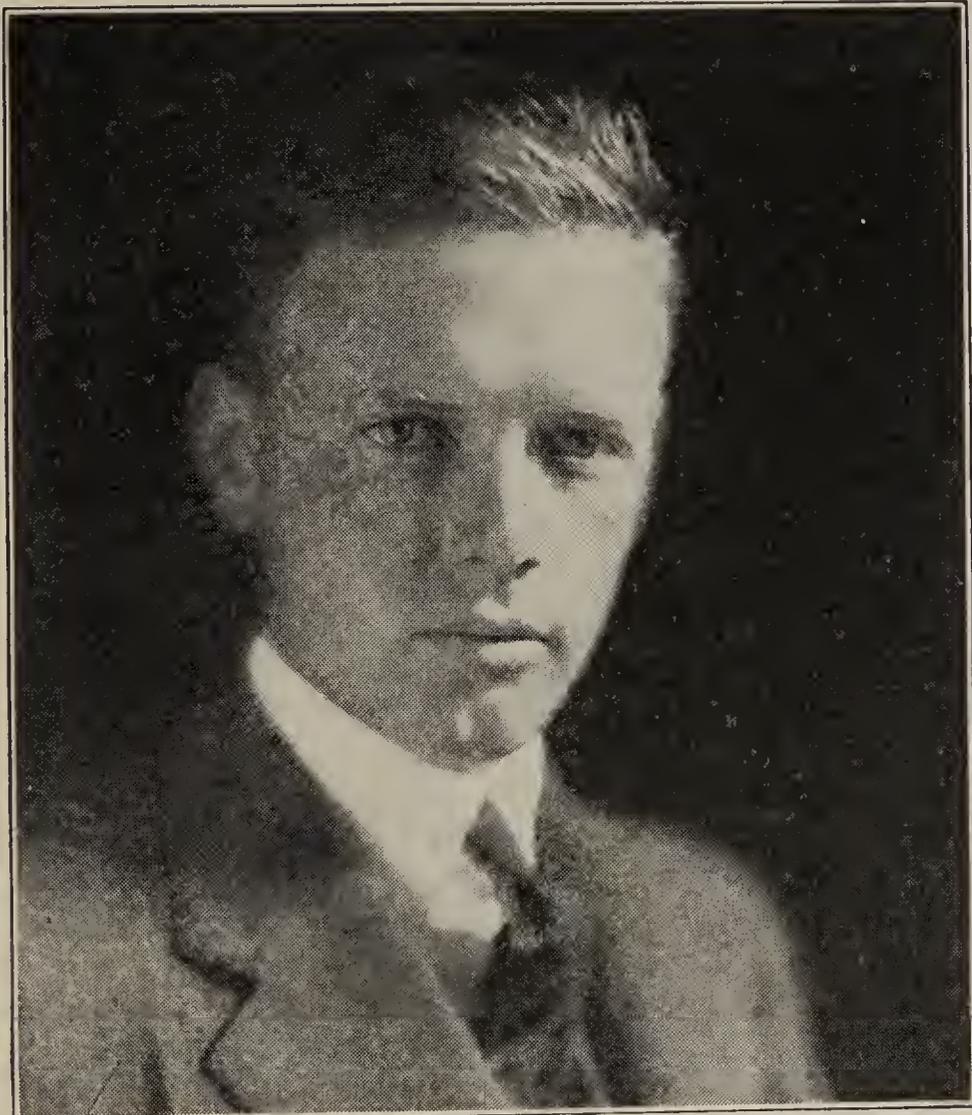
persons in history to fly over the North Pole, and the world had the news by radio an hour after they returned.

In the winter of 1928, Commander Byrd led an expedition by ship and airplane to penetrate the secrets of the Antarctic Ocean and the South Pole. It was the most elaborate expedition ever planned for Polar research. More than a million dollars were spent in equipping four ships with necessary supplies. Besides the crew there were 82 scientists, engineers, aviators, radio-experts, and others. They carried four airplanes, besides snow motors, caterpillar tractors, 79 dogs, and a vast quantity of food and oil. The expedition was planned for a two years' study of the South Polar regions.

One of the most notable airplane flights ever made was that of Charles A. Lindbergh, who on May 20 and 21, 1926, flew alone from New York to Paris in $33\frac{1}{2}$ hours, a distance of 3600 miles. His plane was called *The Spirit of St. Louis*. He flew at an average speed of $107\frac{1}{2}$ miles an hour, through darkness, snow, and sleet. The night was passed over the ocean. At daybreak Lindbergh saw a fishing boat and swooped down to inquire where he was, but the fishermen were too astonished to reply. Shortly after, he passed over Ireland on a true course to France, and by the time he had arrived at the flying field near Paris a great crowd of 20,000 people had gathered to meet him. He was only 24 years old at the time. He had eaten nothing but a ham sandwich since he left New York.

The crowd was excited and enthusiastic. The people broke down all barriers to welcome the young flyer, who did

not think he had done anything unusual. The world thought otherwise, however, and in a few hours thousands of



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

CHARLES A. LINDBERGH

telegrams and cablegrams were received congratulating him upon his achievement. He was received with great honors throughout Europe.

Upon his return to the United States he was given receptions in New York, Washington, St. Louis, and other

places. He made a circuit of the flying fields, visited every state, and was received in eighty-two cities. He attended many public dinners, and was in more than 1000 miles of parades in his honor. He made over 150 speeches by radio to millions of people, urging more flying fields and better training of pilots.

Since that time Colonel Lindbergh has made a nonstop flight from St. Louis to Mexico City, a distance of 2100 miles, and was received with enthusiasm by over 200,000 Mexican people. He made a good-will tour through the countries of South America in 1928, and was afterwards engaged in laying out and perfecting air-mail routes.

Other flyers have also made notable records. In June, 1927, Clarence D. Chamberlin, with C. A. Levine as passenger, flew from New York to Eisleben, Germany, a distance of 3911 miles, in 42 hours and 11 minutes. This was the world record for distance and time until it was surpassed in July, 1928, by two Italian flyers, who flew from Rome, Italy, to Brazil, a distance of 4448 miles. These flyers had already made the record of sustained flight without refueling of $58\frac{1}{2}$ hours in the air.

In June, 1927, Lieutenants Maitland and Hegenberger, of the United States Army Air Corps, flew from Oakland, California, to Honolulu, a distance of 2407 miles, in 25 hours and 50 minutes. In the same month Commander Byrd, with three companions, started an airplane from New York to France. They reached the other side, but becoming confused in a fog, flew blindly over the country and at last came down in

the English Channel 200 yards from the shore. The plane was damaged, but the passengers escaped without injury.

In October, 1928, a new giant dirigible airship from Germany made a successful trip across the ocean from that country to the United States and return. It **The Graf** was called the *Graf Zeppelin*. The airship was **Zeppelin** 776 feet long and 98 feet in diameter. It had a cruising radius of 6000 miles, and a speed of 65 to 70 miles an hour. It cost more than a million dollars to build. In its flight to America it carried 35 members of the crew, besides 20 passengers. It was big as a hotel and was luxuriously prepared for comfort. It was in the air for 111 hours and 46 minutes, and, having been blown off its course, had traveled 6630 miles. The return trip to Germany was made in 68 hours and 46 minutes, a distance of 4450 miles.

New records are being made almost every month by the daring explorers of the air. At the end of 1928 the longest distance that had been covered in a single flight **Record** by airplane without refueling was 4763 miles, **flights** made by the two Italian flyers. The longest sustained flight without refueling was made by two Germans in 65 hours and 25 minutes. The highest altitude, 38,418 feet, or more than seven miles, was made by an American flyer. The fastest sustained flight was made by an Italian, who flew $318\frac{1}{2}$ miles an hour.

3. RECENT EVENTS

IN September, 1926, a violent and destructive hurricane swept the east coast of Florida, doing a great deal of damage.

The Florida hurricane There were 372 persons killed, and over 6000 injured. Over 5000 houses were blown down and 18,000 families were made homeless. The loss in Florida was estimated at 80 millions of dollars.

The disaster came at a time when thousands of men were flocking to Florida, by rail and automobile, buying property, building hotels, developing farms and industries. The state has now settled down into a steady progress, still offering homes for the industrious.

In April and May, 1927, the Mississippi River rose to flood heights in what has been called "the greatest peacetime calamity in the history of the country." The

**The Missis-
sippi flood** whole lower valley of the Mississippi was covered with water. The flooded area was 20,000 square miles, equal to the states of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Jersey combined. The damage done was chiefly in the states of Arkansas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Missouri, Tennessee, and Kentucky. The rising water drove 700,000

Damages persons from their homes. The government and the Red Cross came to their relief and over 600,000 people were cared for. It was estimated that the property damage amounted to 270 millions of dollars, chiefly in the farms and smaller towns. The larger cities of St. Louis, Vicksburg, Memphis, and New Orleans did not suffer to any great extent.

The flood was caused by long and heavy rainfall in the

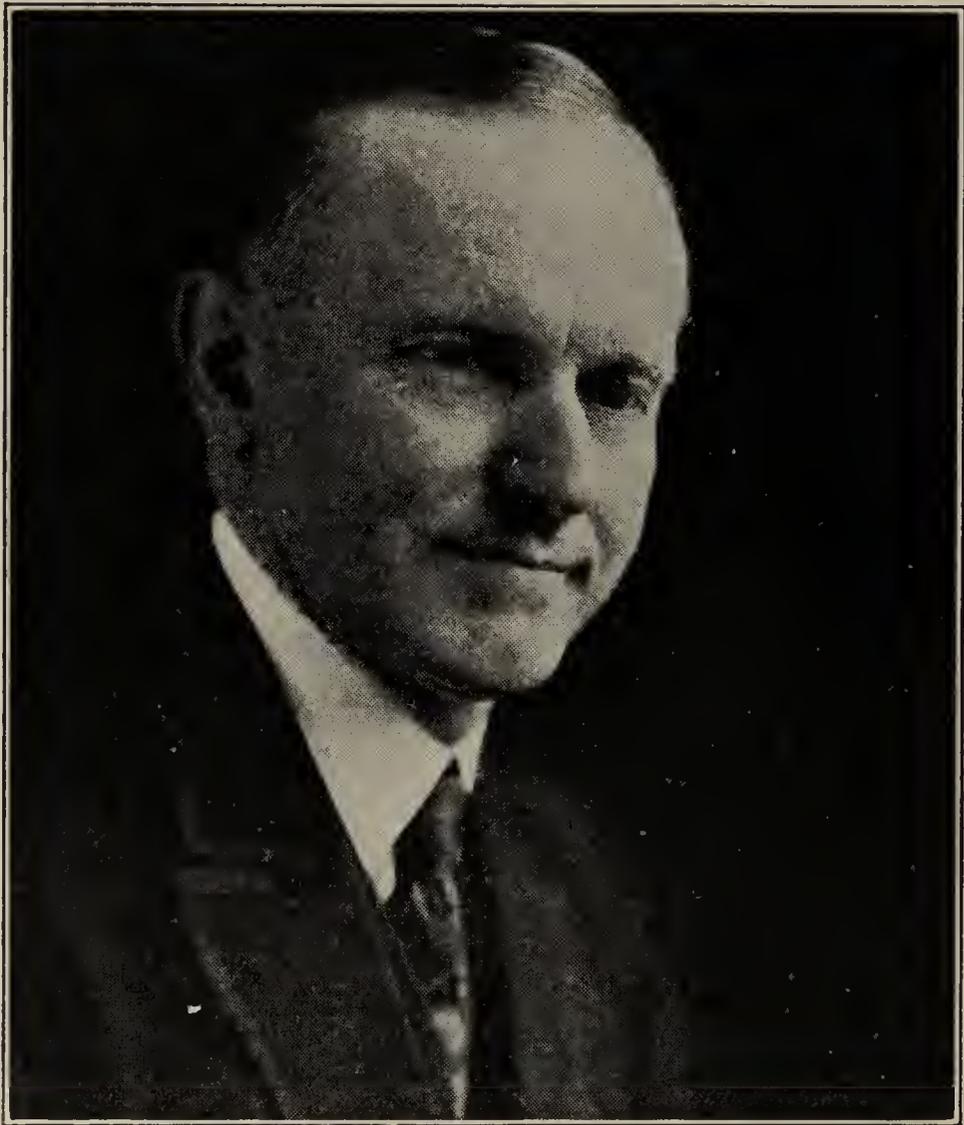
great basin of the Mississippi River, which covers about two-fifths of the area of the United States. Everywhere there were long-continued rains. Every watershed had a deluge, in some places beyond any known record. The rivers rose and poured their waters into the Mississippi.

The great river could not hold the volume that was poured into it. By the middle of May, 1927, the banks and levees began to break, all the way from Cairo to Natchez. Northern Louisiana became an inland sea, a hundred miles wide and three hundred miles long. People fled for their lives to high ground. Many were rescued in boats. Some were drowned, and all abandoned everything they had.

Plans for relief were put in the hands of Herbert Hoover, Secretary of Commerce. He was an expert engineer and had wartime experience in relieving distress. **Work of** Eighty camps were established to shelter and **relief** feed the destitute people. Over 340,000 persons were thus provided for. They were given clothes, were vaccinated, and were provided for until they could return to their homes. It was not until June that the water receded, so that the people could begin to reclaim their wasted land. The flooded area left a desolate region, and a great problem of restoration and protection.

The President submitted to Congress, in 1927, a report on the damage done, the area that was flooded, and the cost that was necessary to protect the states from **Flood pro-** further floods. It was estimated that 300 **tection** million dollars would be needed to build levees, deepen channels, provide wasteways, so that another such flood

could be controlled. It still remains one of the engineering problems to be solved.



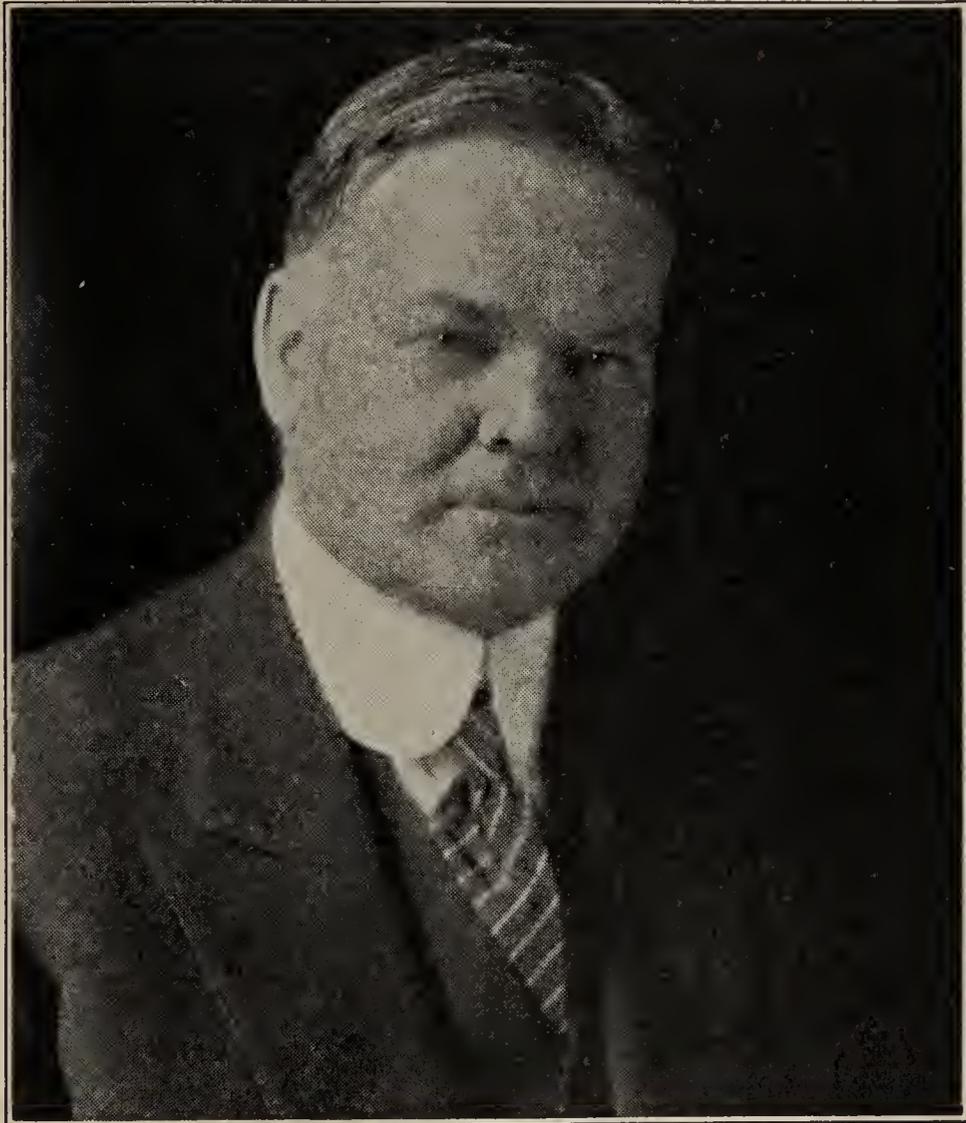
Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N.Y.

CALVIN COOLIDGE

President Harding, who succeeded Woodrow Wilson, died in office August 2, 1923, and was succeeded by Vice-President Calvin Coolidge, of Massachusetts. In the election of 1924, President Coolidge was elected for four years, beginning March 4, 1925.

Calvin
Coolidge,
President

At the expiration of his term of office President Coolidge declined to have his name used as a candidate for reelection.



Copyright by Underwood & Underwood, N.Y.

HERBERT HOOVER

The Republican party named Herbert Hoover as their candidate. The Democratic party nominated Alfred E. Smith, Governor of New York. The campaign resulted in the election of Herbert Hoover, who was duly inaugurated March 4, 1929.

Of recent years there has been great improvement in the telephone and radio service of the world. In 1927 telephone connection, with the radio, was established between New York and London. This has been extended to include some countries on the continent of Europe, and even to one point in Africa. The human voice is now heard not only across the continent, but across the ocean as well, a distance of over 4000 miles.

The radio has had remarkable development. Hotels, dwellings, and public offices are now equipped with radio, so that public meetings, concerts, addresses and all kinds of information, are broadcast to millions of people. There are now about 700 broadcasting stations in the United States. The rest of the world has 450 stations. It has been estimated that there are 10 million receivers now in use in the United States, giving service to approximately 60 million listeners, over half the population of the United States. It was estimated that 10 million people listened to a concert in Chicago, where there were only 4000 persons in the hall. In a campaign for the presidency the voices of both candidates were heard by millions of people.

Not only the human voice can be heard, but the human face can be seen over the wires. In April, 1927, Walter S. Gifford, president of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company, sat at a telephone in New York City and not only talked with Herbert Hoover, Secretary of Commerce, at Washington, but saw him as well. Secretary Hoover's face appeared in a small aperture about two inches square. This is known as television,

which means seeing from afar. Later experiments have succeeded in showing on a screen the faces and forms of persons at a distance.

The vast wealth of the United States, the number of its factories, foundries and industries, its manufactured products for sale in all the markets of the world, its water power, its paved highways, and the rapid development of its mineral and agricultural resources, make our country one of the most powerful nations on earth. We should face this great responsibility with patriotism and with good will toward all the nations of the world.

QUESTIONS

1. What is the purpose of the League of Nations? To what do the members agree? In case any member goes to war what will the other members do? What other purposes has the League? How many members has the League? Describe its meetings. What can you say of Wilson and the League? What can you say of the United States and the League? What treaty did Aristide Briand propose? What did Secretary Kellogg answer? What agreement is known as the pact of Paris? What are the provisions of Article 1? What are the provisions of Article 2? What will be the effect of this Treaty?

2. Describe the first flight of the Wright brothers. Describe the first nonstop flight across the Atlantic. Who first flew over the North Pole, and when? Describe Byrd's Antarctic expedition. Describe Lindbergh's flight from New York to Paris. How was Lindbergh received in Europe? How was he received on his return? What very notable tours has Colonel Lindbergh made? Describe the notable flight of Chamberlin and Levine. Describe the flight of Maitland and Hegenberger. What can you

say of the *Graf Zeppelin*? What is the longest distance in a single flight? The longest sustained flight? The highest altitude? The best sustained flight?

3. What damage was done by the Florida hurricane? How much area did the Mississippi flood cover? How much damage was done by the flood? How was the flood caused? Describe the work of relief. What will flood protection cost? When did President Harding die? Who succeeded him? Who became President in 1929? What can you say of telephone and radio service between New York and Europe? What is television? When was it first tried? What can you say of radio service in America?

REVIEW QUESTIONS

When and where was Columbus born? Who aided him in his desire to sail around the world? For what was he seeking? Where did he land? How did the Indians get their name? How many voyages did Columbus make? How did America get its name? What Spaniard first saw the waters of the Pacific Ocean? What explorer named the Pacific Ocean, and what was he trying to do? What explorer named Florida and for what was he seeking? Who discovered the Mississippi River? Who explored the plains of the West?

Who founded the lost colony of Roanoke? Where was the first permanent English colony in America established? Who was the hero of Jamestown? Relate the story of John Smith and Pocahontas. What was the starving time? Where and how was slavery introduced into Virginia? How were the colonists at Jamestown supplied with wives? What young lawyer rebelled against the tyranny of Berkeley? Who settled Plymouth? Who was the hero of the Plymouth Colony? What can you say of Samoset? Of Squanto? Of Canonicus?

What can you say of Roger Williams? Of Mrs. Anne Hutchinson? Of Thomas Hooker? Who was John Eliot? What was the fate of King Philip? Who discovered the Hudson River? Who settled New York? What can you say of Peter Stuyvesant? Who settled Maryland? Who was William Penn? How did Penn acquire a grant in America? Describe Penn's treaty with the Indians. What philosopher drew up a plan of government for the Carolinas? Who settled Georgia? What can you say of Oglethorpe?

What Frenchman explored the Mississippi? By whom was the claim of France to the Mississippi Valley made? What young soldier took a message to the French in the Ohio Valley? Describe

the journey of this messenger. How was Braddock defeated? Who captured Quebec and by what strategy? Describe the settlers' cabins. How was Sunday observed in the colonies? Describe the pillory and the stocks. What can you say of the witchcraft craze? Describe a journey by stagecoach. Tell why slavery took such a strong hold in the Southern colonies.

What were some of the causes of the Revolution? What great orator made a speech in Virginia against the Stamp Act? Describe the Boston Massacre. What can you say of Samuel Adams? Describe the Boston Tea Party. Describe Paul Revere's ride. What was the result of the battle of Lexington? Who was made commander-in-chief of the American army? What was the result of the battle of Bunker Hill? Who wrote the Declaration of Independence? Describe the victory at Trenton. What can you say of the sufferings at Valley Forge? What can you say of Lafayette? Describe the exploits of Francis Marion; of Thomas Sumter. Describe the battle of King's Mountain. Where did Cornwallis surrender?

Relate some incident in the life of Benjamin Franklin. Who settled Kentucky? Relate some incident in the life of Daniel Boone. What adventures did George Rogers Clark have? What places did he capture? What territory did Robertson and Sevier explore and settle? What can you say of Sevier?

Who was the first President of the United States? What cities have been the capital of the United States? Who invented the cotton gin? What political party was founded by Thomas Jefferson? Who punished the pirates of the Barbary States? By whom was the Louisiana territory purchased? By what two young men was it explored? Who perfected the steamboat? What was the first steamship to cross the ocean? What was the cause of the War of 1812? What was the most famous battle of this war? Who was the hero of the battle of New Orleans?

What is the Monroe Doctrine? What waters does the Erie Canal connect? Who was called the Mill Boy of the Slashes? What

was the Missouri Compromise? What name was given Henry Clay and why? Between what two senators occurred a great debate on the tariff? What state passed an ordinance of nullification? Who invented the telegraph? Between what two cities was the first telegraph line built? What was the first message? Describe the massacre at the Alamo. At what battle was the independence of Texas assured? What territory did we acquire by the treaty with Mexico? How was gold discovered in California?

Upon what question did the Northern and Southern states differ? What was the John Brown raid? Who was President of the United States during the Civil War? How did Stonewall Jackson get his name? What can you say of the "Valley Campaign?" What were the circumstances of the death of Stonewall Jackson? Who was the commander-in-chief of the Southern army? Who became commander-in-chief of the Northern army? What were the three parts of the war plan of the North? Describe Sherman's march to the sea. Describe the surrender of Lee.

What three amendments to the Constitution were made after the war? What did each require? What can you say of the Reconstruction Era in the South? Describe the Ku-Klux Klan. Which President was impeached and why? For how much was Alaska purchased, and from what country? Name some American inventions. Tell something about Thomas A. Edison. Who invented the telephone? What caused the war with Spain? Who won the battle of Manila Bay? What became of the Spanish fleet in the harbor of Santiago? Describe the exploit of Hobson. What did we acquire by the treaty with Spain? What can you say of the Panama Canal?

What nations formed the Triple Alliance? What nations formed the Triple Entente? What occurrence brought on the World War? Why did Germany invade Belgium? Tell the story of the sinking of the *Lusitania*. Why and when did the United States enter the war? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces in Europe? When was the armistice signed?

What is the main purpose of the League of Nations? How does the League propose to prevent war? How many nations are members of the League? What can you say of Wilson and the League? Is the United States a member of the League? What is the agreement of the Pact of Paris? What are its reservations?

Who made the first successful airplane flight? When and where? Who flew over the North Pole, and when? Describe the flight of Lindbergh. Describe the flight of Chamberlin and Levine; of Maitland and Hegenberger; of the *Graf Zeppelin*. Name the record flights.

What damage was done by the Florida hurricane? By the Mississippi flood? What will flood protection in the Mississippi Valley cost? Who is now President of the United States? What is television? What can you say of the radio?

PRONUNCIATION INDEX

Alamo,	ä'lä mō	La Salle,	lä säl
André,	än drā'	Magellan,	ma jě' lan
Antietam,	än tē' tam	Marquette,	mär kět'
Armistice,	ar' mīs tis	Montcalm,	mon kām'
Bahamas,	ba hā' maz	Narvaez,	när' va ěth
Berkeley,	běrk lī	Niña,	nē' ny ä
Bienville,	bē än' vėl	Palos	pä' lōs
Burgoyne,	bur-goin	Pinta,	pēn' ta
Cabeza de Vaca,	cä-bā' thā dē vä' kä	Rio Grande,	rēo grän' dā
Cabot,	căb' öt	Roosevelt,	rō' zě velt
Cartier,	căr tī ā'	Salzburghers,	söltz' burg ers
Cervera,	thār vā' ra	San Jacinto,	sän hä thın'tō
Champlain,	shăm plān'	Santa Maria,	sän tä märe'a
Chateau-Thierry,	shăt' ō tē rī	Santiago,	sän te ä' gō
Du Quesne,	doo-kān	Schley,	slī
Entente,	ön tōnt	Sevier,	sěv ēr
Foch,	fōsh	Stuyvesant,	stī' vě sant
Genoa,	jěn ō a	Tampico,	tām pē' cō
Guam,	gwām	Tripoli,	trīp' o lī
Haiti,	hā' tī	Verazzano,	věr' ätz ä no
Houston,	hū' ston	Versailles,	věr sä ē
Iberville,	ē' ber vėl	Vespucius,	vēs pū' shūs
Joffre,	zhöfr	Vincennes,	vīn sěn'z
Joliet,	zhō'-lyā		

LIST OF PRESIDENTS

No.	PRESIDENT	STATE	BORN	DIED
1	George Washington..	Virginia.....	Feb. 22, 1732	Dec. 14, 1799
2	John Adams.....	Massachusetts..	Oct. 30, 1735	July 4, 1826
3	Thomas Jefferson...	Virginia.....	April 13, 1743	July 4, 1826
4	James Madison.....	Virginia.....	Mar. 16, 1751	June 28, 1836
5	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	April 28, 1758	July 4, 1831
6	John Quincy Adams.	Massachusetts..	July 11, 1767	Feb. 23, 1848
7	Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	Mar. 15, 1767	June 8, 1845
8	Martin Van Buren..	New York.....	Dec. 5, 1782	July 24, 1862
9	William H. Harrison.	Ohio.....	Feb. 9, 1773	April 4, 1841
10	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	Mar. 29, 1770	Jan. 18, 1862
11	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee.....	Nov. 2, 1795	June 15, 1849
12	Zachary Taylor.....	Louisiana.....	Sept. 24, 1784	July 9, 1850
13	Millard Fillmore....	New York.....	Feb. 7, 1800	Mar. 8, 1874
14	Franklin Pierce.....	New Hampshire.	Nov. 23, 1804	Oct. 8, 1869
15	James Buchanan....	Pennsylvania...	April 22, 1791	June 1, 1868
16	Abraham Lincoln....	Illinois.....	Feb. 12, 1809	April 15, 1865
17	Andrew Johnson....	Tennessee.....	Dec. 29, 1808	July 31, 1875
18	Ulysses S. Grant....	Illinois.....	April 27, 1822	July 23, 1885
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio.....	Oct. 4, 1822	Jan. 17, 1893
20	James A. Garfield...	Ohio.....	Nov. 19, 1831	Sept. 19, 1887
21	Chester A. Arthur...	New York.....	Oct. 5, 1830	Nov. 18, 1886
22	Grover Cleveland....	New York.....	Mar. 18, 1837	June 24, 1908
23	Benjamin Harrison..	Indiana.....	Aug. 20, 1833	Mar. 13, 1901
24	Grover Cleveland....	New York.....	Mar. 18, 1837	June 24, 1908
25	William McKinley...	Ohio.....	Jan. 29, 1843	Sept. 14, 1901
26	Theodore Roosevelt..	New York.....	Oct. 27, 1858	Jan. 6, 1919
27	William H. Taft....	Ohio.....	Sept. 15, 1857	
28	Woodrow Wilson ...	New Jersey.....	Dec. 28, 1856	Feb. 3, 1924
29	Warren G. Harding .	Ohio.....	Nov. 2, 1865	Aug. 2, 1923
30	Calvin Coolidge	Massachusetts ..	July 4, 1872	
31	Herbert Hoover	California	Aug. 10, 1874	

INDEX

- Abraham, Plains of, 127.
 Adams, John Quincy, 223.
 Adams, Samuel, 147-149.
 Airships, 227.
 Alabama, De Soto in, 33.
 Alamo, 244.
 Alaska purchased, 290.
 Albemarle Sound, 95.
 Alexander, 75.
 Alliance, Triple, 308.
 Amendments to Constitution, 286.
 America named, 19.
 André, Major, 170.
 Antietam (Sharpsburg), battle of, 275.
 Apostle to Indians, 72.
 Appomattox Court House, 283.
 Arizona crossed by Coronado, 35.
 Armistice, 321.
 Arnold, Benedict, 170.
 Arthur, Chester A., 296.
 Atlanta captured, 281.
 Atlantic cable, 241.
 Automobiles, 294.
 Aviation, 327.

 Bacon, Nathaniel, 56, 58.
 Bahamas, The, 11.
 Balboa, 20, 21.
 Baltimore, Lord, 86.
 Baltimore founded, 88.
 Barbary pirates, 202.
 Battle of:
 Antietam (Sharpsburg), 275.
 Bloody Marsh, 101.
 Braddock's Defeat, 124.
 Brandywine, 164.
 Bunker Hill, 154.
 Chancellorsville, 271.
 Chickamauga, 281.
 Fredericksburg, 275.
 Gettysburg, 275.
 Great Meadows, 122.
 Horseshoe Bend, 221.
 King's Mountain, 172.
 Lake Erie, 216.
 Lexington, 150-153.
 Manassas, 268.
 Manila Bay, 298.
 Marne, 310.
 New Orleans, 222.
 Princeton, 163.
 San Jacinto, 245.
 Saratoga, 163.
 Shiloh, 277.
 Trenton, 162.
 Belgium, 309.
 Bell, Alexander Graham, 293.
 Berkeley, William, 56-58.
 Bienville, 116.
 Biloxi Bay, 116.
 Blockhouse forts, 73, 130.
 Bloody Marsh, battle of, 101.

 Boone, Daniel, 178-180.
 Boonesborough founded, 178.
 Boston,
 founded, 66.
 Massacre, 147.
 Tea Party, 149
 Braddock, General, 123, 124.
 Bradford, Wm., 64.
 Brandywine, battle of, 164.
 Briand peace proposal, 325.
 Brown, John, 257.
 Bull Run, battle of, 268.
 Bunker Hill, 154, 233.
 Burgoyne, General, 163.
 Burnside, Gen. A. E., 275.
 Byrd, Richard E., 327.

 Cabeza de Vaca, 29.
 Cabins, settlers', 129.
 Cable, Atlantic, 241.
 Cabot, John, 18.
 California, gold in, 248.
 Calhoun, John C., 236-238.
 Nullification advice, 236.
 Calvert, Cecil, 86.
 Calvert, George, 86.
 Canal, Erie, 223.
 Panama, 303, 304.
 Canary Islands, the, 9.
 Canonicus, 64.
 Cape Fear River, 95.
 Carolina, colonies in, 95-97.
 Carpetbaggers, 286.
 Cartier, Jacques, 37.
 Carver, John, 60.
 Centennial Exposition, 295.
 Cervera, Admiral, 298.
 Chamberlin and Levine, 330.
 Champlain, 37.
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 271.
 Charleston, founded, 96.
 attack on, 157.
 Chateau-Thierry, 320.
 Chicago, 251, 290.
 Chickamauga, battle of, 281.
 China, search for, 2
 Church, colonial, 132.
 Cibola, seven cities of, 35.
 Clarendon Colony, 96.
 Clark and Lewis, expedition of, 206.
 Clark, George Rogers, 182-184.
 Clay, Henry, 228-231.
Clermont, the, 209.
 Cleveland, Grover, 296.
 Coal Fields, 288.
 Columbia burned, 283.
 Columbia River, 208.
 Columbus, his early life, 1.
 helped by Isabella, 5, 6, 7.
 death of, 17.
 Compromise, Missouri, 231.
 Concord, troops in, 153.

- Confederate States, 263.
 Constitution of United States, 191.
Constitution, the, 215.
 Continental Congress, 157.
 Coolidge, Calvin, 334.
 Cornwallis, General, 163, 167.
 surrender of, 173.
 Coronado, 35, 36.
 Cortez in Mexico, 26.
 Cotton, 195, 287.
 Cotton gin invented, 194-197.
 Croatan, 44.
 Cuba, Columbus at, 14.
 Cuba, 297, 299.
 Customs in the colonies, 132-134.
- Dare, Virginia, 43.
 Darien, Isthmus of, 20.
 Darrah, Lydia, 164.
 Davis, Jefferson,
 early life, 263.
 purpose of, 264.
 during Civil War, 265.
 Deatur, Stephen, 202.
 Declaration of Independence, 158.
 Delaware Indians, treaty with, 92-93.
 Delaware, Lord, 53.
 De Soto, march of, 30-34.
 discovers Mississippi, 34.
 death and burial, 34.
 Dewey, George, 297.
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 120.
 Douglas, Stephen A., 260.
Dove and Ark, 87.
 Dustin, Hannah, 117.
 DuQuesne, Fort, 122, 125.
 Dutch in New York, 78-81.
- Edison, Thomas A., 291.
 Eliot, John, 72.
 Elizabeth, Queen, 41.
 Emancipation proclamation, 261.
 England enters World War, 309.
 Entente, Triple, 305.
 Erie Canal, 223.
- Fairfax, Lord, 120.
 Faneuil Hall, 156.
 Farragut, Admiral, 277.
 Ferdinand, of Spain, 5.
 Ferguson, 172.
 Field, Cyrus W., 241.
 Florida, named, 23.
 hurricane, 332.
 Flying machine, 227.
 Foeh, Marshal, 320.
 Ford, Henry, 294.
 Fort, French, 120.
 Donelson, 277.
 DuQuesne, 122, 123.
 Henry, 277.
 Mims, 212.
 Moultrie, 157.
 Pitt, 125.
 Sumter, 267.
 Franklin, Benjamin, 159, 174-179.
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 275.
- French, in Canada, 37.
 rangers, 109.
 claim Louisiana, 114.
 in Ohio Valley, 120.
 sell Louisiana, 205.
 surrender territory, 128.
 Fulton, Robert, 209-212.
- Gage, General, 150.
 Garfield, Jas. A., 296.
 Gas, poison, 313.
 Gates, Sir Thomas, 52.
 George III, 144.
 Georgia settled, 98-100.
 Germany, 308-322.
 Gin, cotton, invented, 194-197.
 Gold discovered in California, 248.
 rush to fields, 249.
 Goliad Massacre, 245.
 Goodyear, Charles, 253.
Graf Zeppelin, 331.
 Grant, Gen. U. S., 277, 280, 295.
 Great Meadows, battle of, 122.
 Greene, Gen. Nathanael, 172.
 Greene, Mrs. Nathanael, 195.
 Guam, 299.
 Guerilla warfare, 168.
- Haiti, island of, 14, 15, 16.
Half Moon, the, 78.
 Hamilton, Governor, 183, 184.
 Haneoek, John, 150, 159.
 Harding, Warren G., 303, 322.
 Harrison, Benjamin, 290.
 Hart, Naney, 168.
 Hartford founded, 71.
 Harvard College, 137.
 Haverhill, 117, 118.
 Hayes, Rutherford B., 296.
 Hayne-Webster debate, 234.
 Hayne, Robert Y., 234.
 Henry, Patrick, 143.
 Hobson, Lieutenant, 298.
 Hood, General, 281.
 Hooker, Thomas, 71.
 Hooker, Gen. Joseph, 275.
 Hoover, Herbert, 335.
 Hospitality to travelers, 136.
 Houses, first, 129.
 Houston, Sam, 243.
 Howe, General, 156.
 Howe, inventor, 252.
 Hudson, Henry, 78-81.
 Hudson River explored, 78.
 the *Clermont* on, 209.
 Hutchinson, Anne, 71.
- Iberville, 115.
 Impeachment of Johnson, 287.
 Impressment of seamen, 213.
 Independence, Hall, 158.
 Declaration of, 158.
 India, seaway to, 2, 3.
 Indians, named, 12.
 John Eliot with, 72-74.
 in the West, 291.

- Inventions, 291.
 Isabella helps Columbus, 5-7.
- Jackson, Andrew, youth of, 218.
 at New Orleans, 222.
 President, 236.
 Nullification orders, 237.
- Jackson, Stonewall, 267-271.
- Jamestown, settled, 45-47, 52-55.
 burning of, 58.
- Jasper, Sergeant, 157.
- Jefferson, Thomas, 158.
 as a student, 198.
 becomes President, 201.
- Joffre, General, 310.
- John of Portugal, 5.
- Johnson, Andrew, 287.
- Johnston, Albert Sidney, 277.
- Johnston, Joseph E., 281.
- Joliet, 110.
- Kansas, Coronado in, 35.
- Kaskaskia, 182.
- Kentucky settled, 178.
- Key, Francis S., 217.
- King's Mountain, battle of, 172, 186.
- Ku-Klux Klan, 287.
- Lafayette, Marquis de, 163.
- La Salle, 114, 115.
- League of Nations, 323.
- Lee, Richard Henry, 158.
- Lee, Robert E., 272-276.
- Lewis and Clark expedition, 206.
- Lexington, battle of, 150-153.
- Life in the Colonies, 129.
- Lincoln, Abraham, 259-263.
- Lindbergh, Charles A., 329.
- Livingston, Robert, 209.
- Locke, John, 96.
- Locomotive, the first, 224.
 modern, 226.
- London Company, 45.
- Lost colony, the, 41.
- Louisiana, claimed by the French, 114.
 purchased and explored, 205-208.
- Louvain, 313.
- Lusitania*, 315.
- McClellan, Gen. G. B., 272.
- McCormick, 252.
- McKinley, William, 296, 300.
- Madagascar, 97.
- Madison, James, 213.
- Magellan, 22.
- Mail and postage, 136.
- Maine*, destruction of, 297.
- Maitland and Hegcnberger, 330.
- Manassas, first battle of, 268.
- Manhattan Island, 81.
- Manila Bay, battle of, 298.
- March to the sea, 282.
- Marconi, 242.
- Marion, Gen. Francis, 167.
- Marquette, Father, 109.
 death of, 113.
- Maryland settled, 86, 87.
- Mason and Dixon's line, 93.
- Massacre, Boston, 147.
 Alamo, 244.
 Goliad, 245.
- Massasoit, 63.
- Marilla, 33.
- Mather, Cotton, 67.
- Mayflower*, 60.
- Mecklenburg County, people of, 153.
- Mexico, Cortez in, 26, 27.
 war with, 247.
 trouble with, 304.
- Militarism, 307.
- Mills, cotton in the South, 288.
- Mississippi, discovered, 34.
 explored, 111.
 flood, 332.
- Missouri Compromise, 231.
- Model, the Grand, 96.
- Monroe Doctrine, 223.
- Monroe, James, 223.
- Montcalm, Marquis de, 126-128.
- Montezuma, 27.
- Montreal, 37.
- Morse invents the telegraph, 239-242.
- Moultrie, Fort, 157.
- Mount Vernon, 192.
- Narragansett Indians, 68, 74.
- Narvaez, adventures of, 28.
- Nashville, founded, 185.
- New Amsterdam, 81, 82.
- New Jersey, retreat across, 161.
- New Netherland, 81.
- New Orleans, founded, 116.
 purchased, 205.
 battle of, 222.
- Newport founded, 71.
- New York, beginning of, 81.
 named, 85.
 attacked by British, 161.
- Nina*, the, 3.
- Nolichucky Jack, 186.
- North Carolina, beginning of, 96.
- Northwest Territory, 184.
- Nullification, in South Carolina, 237.
- Oglethorpe, James, 98, 101, 102.
- Oil fields, 289.
- "Old Ironsides," 215.
- Omaha, 207.
- Oregon Territory, 248.
- Original Thirteen Colonies, 103.
- Pacific Ocean, Balboa's sight of, 20.
 Magellan on, 22.
- Pact of Paris, 325.
- Palos, 8.
- Panama Canal, 303, 304.
- Parker, Captain John, 152.
- Parsons Case, 144.
- Patent Office, 253.
- Pawtucket, 195.
- Penn, William, 89.
 and Charles, 90.
 treaty with Indians, 90-92.
- Pennsylvania, granted, 90.
- Perry, Oliver H., 216.

- Pershing, John J., 319.
Philadelphia, the, 203.
 Philadelphia, founded, 91.
 captured, 164.
 Philip, King, 75-76.
 Philippine Islands, Magellan discovers, 22.
 ceded to United States, 299.
 Pilgrims, landing of, 60.
 Pillory and stocks, 133.
 Pirates, Barbary, 202.
 Pitcairn, Major, 152.
 Pitcher, Molly, 166.
 Plymouth Company, 45.
 Plymouth, settlement of, 59-62.
 Pocahontas, 48-51.
 Ponce de Leon names Florida, 23.
 Pony Express, 290.
 Porto Rico, 23.
 ceded to United States, 299.
 Portsmouth, founded, 71.
 Potato, use of, 42.
 Powhatan, 49.
 Prohibition, 305.
 Providence, founded, 70.
 Punishments, colonial, 132.
 Puritans at Plymouth, 59.
 Putnam, Israel, 153.
- Quebec, founded, 37.
 captured, 126-128.
- Radio, 336.
 Raid, John Brown, 258.
 Railroads, 224, 225.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 41.
 Rall, British officer, 162.
 Rebeeca, Lady, 51.
 Reconstruction of Southern States, 286.
 Revere, Paul, 150.
 Revolution, industrial, 194.
 Rhode Island, beginning of, 71.
 Rice, in Carolina, 97.
 Roanoke Island, 42.
 Robertson, James, 185.
 Rolfe, John, 51.
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 300.
- St. Augustine, 36, 101.
 St. Lawrence River, 37.
 St. Louis, 206, 208.
 St. Mary's, 87.
 Salem, founded, 66.
 witchcraft, 134.
 Salzburghers, 100.
 Samoset, 63.
 Sampson, Captain, 298.
 San Jacinto, battle of, 245.
 San Salvador, island of, 11.
 Santa Anna, 245.
 Santa Fé, 36.
Santa Maria, the, 8
 Santiago de Cuba, 298.
 Saratoga, battle of, 163.
Savannah, the, 211.
Savannah founded, 99.
 captured by Sherman, 282.
 Senley, Commodore, 298.
- Schools, Colleges, 137.
 Scott, Gen. Winfield, 247.
 Serbia, 308.
 Settlers, life of, 130.
 Sevier, John, 185-187.
 Shafter, General, 298.
 Sherman, Gen. W. T., 281.
 Sherrill, Kate, 185, 186.
 Slater, Samuel, 194.
 Slavery, introduction of, 54.
 in New England, 138.
 in the South, 140.
 settled by war, 284.
 Smith, Captain John, 47-52.
 South, progress of, 282.
 South Carolina, beginning of, 96.
 Nullification ordinance, 237.
 secedes, 263.
 Spain, war with, 297, 298.
 Spaniards, purpose in America, 36.
 invade Georgia, 101-102.
 Sports of colonists, 130.
 Squanto, 63.
 Stagecoach, 136.
 Stamp Act, 143.
 Standish, Miles, 60-62.
 "Star Spangled Banner," 217.
 Starving time, the, 52.
 Steamboat, 209.
 Stuyvesant, Peter, 82-85.
 Submarines, 314.
 Sumter, Fort, 267.
 Sumter, Gen. Thomas, 168.
 Sunday in the colonies, 132.
 Surrender of Lee, 283.
 Sutter, Captain, 248.
 "Swamp Fox," the, 167.
 Swansea attacked, 75.
- Taft, Wm. H., 302.
 Tariff, for revenue, 233.
 for protection, 234.
 Taxation without representation, 143.
 Taylor, Gen. Zachary, 247.
 Tea Party, Boston, 149.
 Tea, tax on, 148.
 Teeumsch, 220.
 Telegraph invented, 239-242.
 wireless, 242.
 Telephone, 293.
 Television, 336.
 Texas, independence of, 245.
 admitted to Union, 246.
 Thanksgiving, the first, 65.
 Tobacco, 42-53.
 Traveling, colonial times, 135.
 Treaty, Penn's, 92-94.
 Briand-Kellogg, 325.
 England and America, 173, 222.
 with Mexico, 247.
 Oregon territory, 248.
 Portsmouth, 302.
 Spain, 299.
 Versailles, 321.
 Trenton, battle of, 161.
 Washington at, 192.
 Tripoli, war with, 203.

- Valley Campaign, 271.
Valley Forge, 164.
Verrazano, 37.
Vespucius, Americus, 18, 19.
Vicksburg, siege of, 277.
Vincennes, 183.
Virginia, named, 42.
 life in, 131.
- Wampanoags, 74.
War, King Philip's, 75-77.
 French and Indian, 122.
 French and English, 117.
 Revolution, 143.
 with Tripoli, 203.
 of 1812, 213-217.
 with Mexico, 247.
 Civil, 257-285.
 Russia and Japan, 301.
 Spanish, 297, 298.
 World, 307-322.
- Washington City, 193.
 captured by British, 217.
Washington, George, 119, 121. |
- Braddock's aide, 123.
 commander-in-chief, 154.
 before Boston, 155.
 the first President, 192.
 death of, 193.
- Watauga settlement, 185.
Webster, Daniel, 232-235.
West, growth of, 290.
White, John, 42-44.
Whitney, Eli, 194.
William and Mary College, 137
Williams, Roger, 68-70.
Williamsburg, 58.
Wilson, Woodrow, 302.
Winslow, Edward, 63.
Winthrop, John, 66.
Wireless Telegraph, 242.
Witchcraft, belief in, 134.
Wives for colonists, 54, 55.
Wolfe, James, 126.
Woman's Suffrage, 305.
- Yamacraw Indians, 95.
Yorktown, 173.

